

ARTEP 71-2-MTP

MISSION TRAINING PLAN

FOR THE

TANK AND MECHANIZED INFANTRY
BATTALION

TASK FORCE

AUGUST 2004

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

HEADQUARTERS
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY

**This publication is available at
Army Knowledge Online
www.us.army.mil**

MISSION TRAINING PLAN

Mission Training Plan for the Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force

TABLE OF CONTENTS

| | Page |
|--|--------------|
| Table of Contents | i |
| Preface | ii |
| Chapter 1. Unit Training | 1-1 |
| Chapter 2. Training Matrixes | 2-1 |
| Chapter 3. Training Plans | 3-1 |
| Chapter 4. Training Exercises | 4-1 |
| Chapter 5. Training and Evaluation Outlines | 5-1 |
| Chapter 6. External Evaluation | 6-1 |
| Appendix A. Description of Combined Arms Training Strategy | A-1 |
| Appendix B. Exercise Operation Orders | B-1 |
| Appendix C. Enemy Analysis | C-1 |
| Appendix D. Digital Supplement | D-1 |
| Glossary | Glossary-1 |
| Supporting References | References-1 |
| DA Form 7507 (ARTEP Mission Training Plan User Feedback) | |

Distribution Restriction: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

*This publication supersedes ARTEP 71-2-MTP, 27 November 2001.

Preface

This mission training plan (MTP) is designed for the tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force. It describes for Active and Reserve Component commanders and staff a mission-oriented training program. They can use this program to train their Infantry battalions to perform their critical wartime missions. Although the units' missions and deployment assignments influence the commanders' final sets of training priorities, the tasks (T&EOs) in this MTP are the main ones that the units must execute with proficiency. At a minimum, commanders must train their units to the standards herein. Although they may *increase* the difficulty of the standards trained, they may *not* reduce them.

This mission training plan (MTP) is a tactical training and evaluation program for the battalion task force. That is, it provides the tools that the commander needs to plan, prepare, and train the task force logically and efficiently. In so doing, it identifies the key missions to train and how to train them.

For simplicity, the battalion task force is referred to throughout the MTP as "BN/TF" or just "TF."

The proponent for this publication is HQ, TRADOC. The preparing agency is the US Army Infantry School. Submit recommendations for improving this publication on DA Form 7507 (ARTEP Mission Training Plan User Feedback, blank copy provided at the back of this book). Send it by US mail to Commandant, US Army Infantry School, ATTN: ATSH-ATD, Fort Benning, GA 31905-5007; or e-mail it to doctrine@benning.army.mil.

NOTE: ASAT content changes--constantly. Therefore, by the time this hard copy is printed, the ASAT version might no longer match it.

Unless otherwise stated, masculine nouns and pronouns refer to both genders.

CHAPTER 1

Unit Training

- 1-1. **General.** This chapter summarizes procedures and considerations for each step in the TF ARTEP. Training program details depend on many factors, including--
- Unit's mission essential tasks list.
 - Training directives and guidance established by the chain of command.
 - Training priorities for the task force.
 - Training resources and areas available.
- 1-2. **Supporting Material.** The TF training program fits into the spectrum of activities that also encompasses brigade-level, company-level, platoon-level, leader, and individual training programs. Each MTP contains the following:
- a. Training information.
 - b. Training matrixes.
 - c. Mission outlines (company and below). Training plans (battalion level and higher).
 - d. Example training exercise examples.
 - e. Comprehensive detailed training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs).
 - f. Evaluation information.
 - g. Appendixes describing combined arms training strategy (CATS) (for battalion level and higher), sample operations order with threat statement, and other proponent specific information as appropriate.

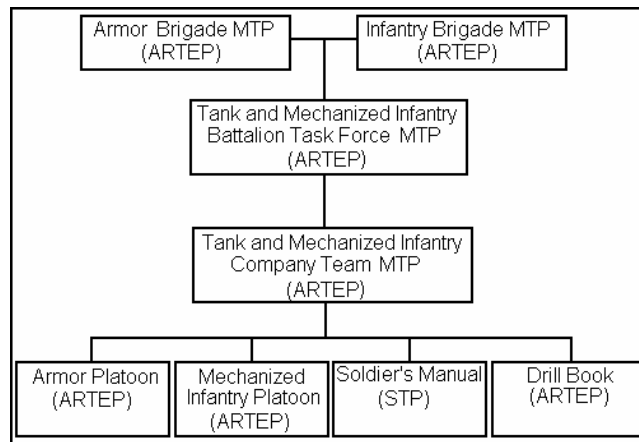


Figure 1-1. Echelon relationship of mission training plan.

- 1-3. **Contents.** This MTP consists of the following:
- a. **Chapter 1, Unit Training.** Provides the explanation and organization of this MTP.
 - b. **Chapter 2, Training Matrixes.** Presents the relationship between missions and tasks.
 - c. **Chapter 3, Training Plans.** Presents a graphic portrayal of the relationship between critical wartime missions and subtasks inherent to those operations.
 - d. **Chapter 4, Training Exercises.** Provides information on developing training exercises. It provides sample field training exercises (FTXs) and situational training exercises (STXs) to be used by leaders in developing training exercises for their unit.
 - e. **Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines.** Provides the training criteria for tasks that the TF must master to perform critical wartime operations. These training criteria orient on the levels of collective training executed by the TF. Each training and evaluation outline (T&EO) can apply to one or more operations. In various combinations, the T&EOs comprise larger training exercises such as the FTXs and STXs.

- f. **Chapter 6, External Evaluation.** Provides instructions for the planning, preparation, and execution of an external evaluation.
- g. **Appendix A, Description of Combined Arms Training Strategy.**
- h. **Appendix B, Exercise Operation Orders.**
- i. **Appendix C, Enemy Analysis.**
- j. **Appendix D, Digital Supplement.**
- k. **DA Form 7507 (ARTEP Mission Training Plan User Feedback).** This form gives the target audience a standard way to suggest improvements to this and other MTPs.

- 1-4. **Missions And Tasks.** Full spectrum operations include offensive operations, defensive operations, stability operations, and support operations. Each operation includes major tasks that the TF must execute to accomplish that mission. It also includes the tasks that each company; platoon, squad, and Soldier must perform. Each of these tasks requires training.
- a. **Collective Tasks.** Collective tasks are trained based on guidelines and procedures outlined in FM 7-0 (25-100) and FM 7-10 (25-101) and in Chapters 4, 5, and 6 of the applicable MTP. Collective tasks may be trained separately or, like collective tasks or supporting tasks, may be grouped together. Collective tasks can also be combined with collective tasks of other operational levels to form more complex training exercises. (Chapter 4 provides example FTXs and STXs.) Commanders and leaders select the applicable tasks using procedures outlined in FM 7-0 (25-100) and in Chapters 3 and 6 of this MTP.
 - b. **Leader Tasks.** Leader tasks are trained using Soldier's manuals (SMs). Selected leader tasks should support the TF's critical wartime operations. Leaders can be trained using the full range of training exercises established by the Army such as map exercises [MAPEXs], tactical exercises without troops [TEWTs], command post exercises [CPXs], and FTXs.
- 1-5. **Principles of Training.** This MTP is based on the training principles in FM 7-0 (25-100):
- a. **Train as a Combined Arms and Service Team.** Army doctrine places a premium on teamwork. When committed to battle, each unit must be prepared to execute combined arms and services operations without additional training or lengthy adjustment periods. Combined arms proficiency develops when teams train together. Leaders must regularly practice cross-attachments with the full wartime spectrum of combat, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) units.
 - b. **Train As You Fight.** Conversely, units fight as they have been trained. Soldiers remember the last way they performed a task (right or wrong). To ensure success in combat, Soldiers and units must perform to established standards which in turn must be rigidly enforced by leaders. Because it is impossible to predict the type of weather and terrain a unit will face when executing a combat mission, training should be conducted under varying conditions that are both realistic and progressively more challenging.
 - c. **Use Appropriate Doctrine.** Soldiers have no time to learn nonstandard procedures. Their units, therefore, must train by performing tasks to the standards specified in MTPs, drill books, STPs, Army regulations, and other training and doctrinal publications. This MTP conforms with doctrine published in source documents, FMs 3-91.2 (71-2) and 3-91.3 (71-3) as well as ARTEP 3-91.3 (71-3)-MTP.
 - d. **Use Performance-Oriented Training.** Soldiers sharpen their skills by performing hands-on training as often as possible which makes practice the key factor in training. TFs and their subordinate elements repeatedly practice the tasks and the missions to achieve proficiency.
 - e. **Train to Challenge.** The best training is tough, realistic, and both intellectually and physically challenging. It motivates Soldiers and inspires excellence by fostering initiative, enthusiasm, and eagerness to learn.
 - f. **Train to Sustain Proficiency.** Soldiers sustain the skills they learn only by practicing them. When developing a training plan, always allow time to practice the tasks and the missions covered in earlier training. Use this MTP as a guide in developing a plan that allows the TF to achieve and sustain collective and individual proficiency.
 - g. **Train Using Multi-echelon Techniques.** This is the most efficient way to train and sustain a diverse range of mission-essential tasks while compensating for limited training resources and time. Training should involve Soldiers, leaders, and subordinate elements at all levels of the unit simultaneously.

- h. **Train to Maintain.** Maintenance is a vital part of every training program. Keeping equipment ready for the fight is as important as training Soldiers to be proficient in its use. Soldiers and leaders are responsible for maintaining all assigned equipment in a high state of readiness in preparation for training or combat employment.
- i. **Make Commanders the Primary Trainers.** Commanders are responsible for the training and performance of their Soldiers and units. They are the primary training managers and trainers for their organizations.

- 1-6. **Training Strategy.** The training program developed and executed by the infantry unit to train to standards in its critical wartime missions is a component of the Army's CATS. (See Appendix A for a description of CATS.) The following should be considered when developing a unit training strategy:
- a. **Descriptive Strategies.** The unit training strategies central to CATS provide the commander with descriptive lists for training. These strategies reflect an optimal way to train to standard. However, all units in the Army probably do not have the same resources required to execute an optimal training strategy.
 - b. **Role of the Brigade.** In large measure, the success of the TF's training strategy depends on the development of an effective training plan for the parent brigade and on guidance and supervision provided by the brigade commander and his subordinate leaders. The TF's training strategy provides a means for training the TF to standard by listing required training events, critical training gates, training event frequencies, and training resources. The commander selects those tasks required to train the mission-essential task list (METL) from the MTP. Training strategies provide the means whereby those tasks can be trained through a focused and integrated training plan.
 - c. **Role of the Task Force.** The TF training strategy consists of three separate training strategies. When integrated with the training tasks found in the MTP, they form a comprehensive and focused training strategy that allows the TF to train to standard. The elements of the TF's training strategy are *maneuver*, *gunnery*, and *Soldiers*.
 - (1) **Maneuver Strategy.** The maneuver strategy provides a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in a unit and depicts those resources that are required to support the training events.
 - (2) **Gunnery Strategy.** The gunnery strategy is based on weapons systems in the unit, provides an annual training plan, and depicts resources required to support weapons training. Data for the gunnery strategy come from the STRAC manual or the appropriate field manual. As a subset of the gunnery strategy, a training strategy is developed for each individual and crew-served weapon in the Army inventory.
 - (3) **Soldier Strategy.** The Soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train the Soldier.
 - d. **Training Gates.** A vital element in the unit training strategy is the identification of critical training gates. Critical training gates are defined as training events that must be conducted to standard before advancing to a more complex or resource-intensive training event or task. Training events follow the crawl, walk, and run training strategy. For instance, if the unit training strategy calls for conducting an FTX, and an STX has been identified as a critical training gate for the FTX, the training tasks in the STX must be trained to standard before conducting the FTX. Standards for all tasks must be clearly defined so that the trainer can assess the preparedness of the Soldiers, or units, to move on to more complex training events. The provision for critical training gates recognizes that the unit's METL and the commander's assessment of his unit's training status will determine the selection and timing of the collective training exercises in a specific unit's training strategy.
 - e. **Standard Army Training System.** The SATS provides automated tools for implementing the training management doctrine in FM 7-0 (25-100), *Training the Force*, and related manuals. SATS facilitates the development of METL, training strategies, training plans, and training schedules. SATS also provides commanders a medium through which to coordinate activities, project resources needed for an event, record the actual resources expended on an event, assess the execution of a collective task and METL, and assess operational readiness. CATS data can be consulted at different points in SATS to assist you in developing your training products.

TRAINING NOTE: The SATS database comprises a variety of MTPs and STPs. To access these publications, users need a copy of the SATS software and the CD-ROM containing the data files. To obtain information on the database and hardware requirements or to order the software and CD-ROM, contact the U.S. Army Training Support Center, ATTN: ATISD, Fort Eustis, Virginia 23605-5166. Information is also available by calling DSN 927-4166 or commercial (804) 878-4166.

- 1-7. **Conduct of Training.** Effective training requires the personal time, energy, and guidance of commanders. Commanders must personally observe and assess training at all echelons. They emphasize training one level down and evaluating two levels down. For example, TF commanders train company commanders with their companies, and they evaluate platoon leaders with their platoons. Company commanders train platoon leaders with their platoons and evaluate section, squad, team, and crew leaders with their units. This MTP facilitates planning, preparation, and execution of unit training in a logical and efficient manner. The following discussion summarizes procedures and considerations for each step in the methodology:
- a. **Plan the Training.** Planning links the unit METL and the execution of battle-focused training. It is a centralized process that aligns training priorities with wartime requirements at all levels within the unit. Although there are other training requirements, battle focus allows the leader to narrow his scope of planning to wartime mission essential tasks. As in tactical operations, planning lays the foundation for successfully executing the TF's training plan.
 - (1) Planning for the TF training program involves leaders at all levels of the unit organization.
 - (a) The brigade commander is the primary trainer of all the TFs within the brigade. He is responsible for developing a comprehensive, long-term training strategy encompassing a variety of training events, such as FTXs and STXs. Based on the unit's METL, the commander makes an initial assessment of the entire brigade, including TFs and companies, to identify systemic weaknesses. He then develops a training focus and specifies the individual and collective tasks he wants to train and evaluate.
 - (b) The TF commander focuses on leader training and on collective training, primarily at the platoon and squad levels. TFs should be able to perform all collective tasks according to standards and guidelines provided in this MTP, FM 3-21.20 (7-20), and unit TSOPs. To accomplish this, TFs can plan and execute limited STXs before taking part in brigade training; these exercises can increase the confidence level of companies, platoons and squads and provide valuable operational experience. In addition, the TF commander can use command field exercises (CFXs), command post exercises (CPXs), and operation order (OPORD) drills to ensure that his subordinate leaders basically understand the tasks that they must execute.
 - (2) In developing the unit-training plan, leaders at all levels should follow FM 7-0 (25-100) and FM 7-10 (25-101). These will also help leaders with development:
 - (a) *Chapter 3.* Example training plans help leaders develop individualized training programs that reflect the current METL. Leaders can adjust these plans to tailor the exercises to their needs.
 - (b) *Chapter 4.* Outlines for the FTX and STX also help. Example STXs contain a scenario for both an offensive and a defensive mission.
 - (c) *Chapter 5.* Training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) for collective tasks support critical wartime operations.
 - (d) *Chapter 6.* Information guides leaders in planning and conducting evaluations of TF training exercises.
 - (3) There is never enough time to train all tasks. In developing training plans, leaders must prioritize the tasks that require training, focusing on their units' largest operational challenges and on their most difficult sustainment skills. Before training begins, the TF commander should conduct a training meeting with the leaders of all subordinate units to analyze training requirements and prioritize tasks. This kind of session can also help to identify weak areas that require the attention of trainers and leaders.

- (4) Once unit leaders have identified the tasks to be trained, they must integrate them into a training schedule. The TF commander can use the procedure outlined in the following paragraphs:
 - (a) List the tasks according to priority and how often they need to be trained.
 - (b) Determine the amount of time required and decide how to use multi-echelon training.
 - (c) Determine the site for training.
 - (d) Determine who will be responsible for what. The leader of the element being trained must always be involved.
 - (e) Organize the TF's needs into blocks of time and required training resources, such as ammunition, Multiple-integrated Laser Engagement System (MILES) equipment, and suitable training areas.
 - (5) The TF commander may submit a list of the tasks and related training events he has selected to the brigade commander. The brigade commander in turn develops his own list, but he must review the TF commander's recommendations. Once the brigade commander has approved the list of tasks and related training events, he includes them on the unit-training schedule. He must be sure to allocate sufficient preparation time to the TF.
 - (6) With his recommendations for training events, the TF commander must also submit the list of resources he will need and provide the brigade headquarters with sufficient time for acquisition and coordination. The brigade must coordinate resource requirements with the division.
- b. **Train and Certify Leaders.** This is the most important step of conducting training and covers all trainers, evaluators, and leaders involved in unit training.
- (1) The proficiency and preparedness of the evaluation team will directly affect the quality of training and the proficiency units gain at the training site. Before execution of training, senior leaders must certify all trainers and leaders to ensure their technical and tactical proficiency in relation to the unit they will be training and evaluating. This can be accomplished using a series of officer, noncommissioned officer, and leader professional development sessions followed by certification exercises, TEWTs, or examinations. These can take the form of written examinations or sand table evaluations.

TRAINING NOTE: Trainers should have held the position of the individuals they are selected to evaluate.

- (2) The leaders within the TF must also undergo training before the TF takes part in a collective training exercise. Division and brigade commanders must ensure that the TF commander is able to perform the required leader tasks in support of the team's collective tasks. Consequently, the TF commander is responsible for training his subordinate leaders on the individual tasks required to support the collective tasks.
- c. **Reconnoiter the Site.** After trainers and evaluators are certified, the commander and the evaluation team must make a site reconnaissance of the area where the FTX will be conducted. At this point, they can begin to develop graphic control measures for the exercise. The commander and evaluation team also conduct a terrain analysis to identify all key terrain and the following locations:
- STX lanes.
 - OPFOR positions.
 - Assembly areas.
 - Leader training sites.
 - After-action review (AAR) sites.
 - Logistical support locations.
 - Command post (CP) locations.
 - Retraining areas.
- d. **Issue the Plan.** After planning and coordination are completed and the training event begins, the TF commander receives the OPORD and begins planning. (Planning can be completed prior to the FTX using a separate staff exercise.) While he formulates his plan, the rest of the TF conducts the various activities of the troop-leading process, including company training in

preparation for the exercise. The trainer or brigade commander evaluates the TF commander on his understanding of the OPORD, requiring him to give a confirmation brief on the order. This procedure ensures that the TF commander is ready to issue the OPORD to his staff and company commanders. It will also test his ability to understand oral orders and build his confidence before approaching his subordinate leaders to issue the order.

- e. **Rehearse.** The value of this step should never be underestimated. Rehearsals are a critical part of every training exercise. Units must never bypass rehearsals to save time or resources. Trainers and commanders must plan for TF rehearsals and ensure they are conducted as parts of the TF's troop-leading procedures. A well planned, efficiently run rehearsal will accomplish the following:
 - (1) Reinforce earlier training and increase proficiency in the critical tasks to be evaluated.
 - (2) Reveal weaknesses or problems in the plan.
 - (3) Synchronize the actions of the TF's companies and any other subordinate elements.
 - (4) Confirm coordination between the TF and adjacent units.
 - (5) Improve each leader's understanding of the concept of the operation, the fire plan, anticipated contingencies, and possible actions and reactions for various situations that may arise during the operation.
- f. **Execute.** The TF should initiate a training exercise only when it has a clear understanding of how to execute the mission. The trainer makes this determination at the conclusion of the rehearsals. At that point, he either allows the TF to execute the task or continues with additional rehearsals, focusing on leader training. During the execution phase, the trainer conducts a detailed evaluation for use during the AAR, which is conducted immediately after the exercise. Evaluations are conducted based on the GO or NO-GO criteria described in Chapter 5 of this MTP. Trainers provide the participants with a rating for each task trained during the exercise.
- g. **Conduct the AAR.** At the conclusion of the exercise, the TF receives a complete AAR from the trainer. The AAR, which focuses on the training objectives and standards, is a professional discussion that requires the active participation of those being trained. This structured review process allows training participants to discover for themselves what happened, why it happened, and how the unit can improve its performance. Based on the TF's performance, the trainer recommends to the commander whether the team will require retraining to meet the standards.
- h. **Retrain.** Based on the evaluation results, the TF must retrain any task for which it receives a NO-GO rating. Trainers and leaders develop a training program to meet these specific requirements. The team can then be reevaluated, either immediately at the STX or FTX site or at a later date.

TRAINING NOTE: Battle focus derives peacetime training requirements from wartime missions. It guides the planning, execution, and assessment of the TF's training programs to ensure the unit trains as it is going to fight. Battle focus is critical throughout the entire training process. Commanders use it to allocate resources for training based on wartime operation requirements. Also, commanders can recognize that a unit cannot attain proficiency to standard on every task because of time or resource constraints. A successful training program is achievable, however, by narrowing the focus to a reduced number of vital tasks that are essential to mission accomplishment.

- 1-8. **Force Protection (Safety).** Risk assessment is the thought process of making operations safe without compromising the mission. Commanders must continuously perform a risk assessment of conditions under which training is conducted to prevent the unnecessary loss of Soldiers and equipment. The degree of risk varies with the conditions at the time of training. For example, have the Soldiers done the training before? Will the training be done for the first time at night? Are the Soldiers fatigued? In reality, risk management is smart decision-making.
 - a. A well-trained unit is normally accident free; however, accidents can occur through no fault of the Soldier or equipment operator. Most accidents result from inadequate training, lack of supervision, or complacency.
 - b. Training must be tough, realistic, and safe. Commanders must consider the following when integrating risk assessment into training:

- Accept only necessary risks.
 - Make risk decisions at the proper level.
 - Accept risks if mission benefits outweigh the costs.
- c. It is important to remember that the commander is the safety officer, but all Soldiers and leaders are responsible for safe training. All leaders must--
- (1) Identify the risks based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
 - (2) Assess possible loss, cost, and probability.
 - (3) Make decisions and develop controls to reduce risks.
 - (4) Implement controls by integrating them into plans, orders, standing operating procedures (SOPs), training performance standards, and rehearsals.
 - (5) Supervise and enforce safety controls and standards at all times. Make on-the-spot corrections when an unsafe act is observed.
- d. Leaders use the safety checklist of the United States Army Safety Center, Fort Rucker, Alabama, in conjunction with local unit safety checklists, to enhance the overall safe practices of Soldiers during training.

1-9. **Environmental Protection.** Environmental planning includes identifying environmental risks posed by an operation as well as considering ways to reduce those risks during long, short, and near-term planning. The staff may produce an environmental protection-level matrix similar to the one shown in Figure 1-2. This matrix ties directly into risk assessment. All leaders, trainers, and Soldiers must comply with the environmental laws and regulations. The leader must identify the environmental risks associated with training individual and collective tasks. Trainers must work to reduce and avoid damage to training areas and environment caused by realistic training. Environmental risk management parallels and is based on the same philosophy as safety risk management.

Environmental risk management consists of the following steps:

- a. **Identify Hazards.** Identify the potential sources for environmental degradation while analyzing METT-TC factors. This requires identification of environmental hazards. An environmental hazard is any condition that has the potential to pollute air, soil, or water; to destroying cultural or historical artifacts; or any combination of these.
- b. **Assess Hazards.** Analyze the potential severity of environmental degradation by using the environmental risk assessment matrixes in TC 3-34.489. The severity of environmental degradation is considered when determining the potential effect an operation may have on the environment. The risk effect value is defined as an indicator of the severity of environmental degradation. Quantify the risk to the environment resulting from the operation as extremely high, medium, or low, using the environmental assessment matrixes.
- c. **Make Environmental Risk Decisions.** Make decisions and develop measures to reduce high-environmental risks.
- d. **Brief Chain of Command.** Brief the chain of command and, if applicable, the installation environmental office, about proposed plans and pertinent high-risk environmental matrixes. Risk decisions are made at the level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.
- e. **Implement Controls.** Implement environmental protection measures by integrating them into plans, orders, SOPs, training performance standards, and rehearsals.
- f. **Supervise** Supervise/enforce environmental protection standards.

1-10. **Evaluation.** Evaluations can be internal or external. Internal evaluations are conducted at all levels, and they must be inherent in all training. External evaluations are formal and are usually conducted by the headquarters two levels above the unit. Chapter 6 describes how to set up an external evaluation.

- a. **Use of T&EOs.** In addition to their role as a training guide, the T&EOs in Chapter 5 provide the criteria for evaluating the unit. The task standard statement in each task outline describes how well the unit must perform the task steps and performance measures to receive a GO rating for the task.
- b. **Simultaneous Training and Evaluation.** The heart of the MTP concept is simultaneous training and evaluation. Every training exercise provides evaluation feedback; at the same time, every evaluation is a training session. For the program to work effectively, trainers must

always evaluate training as it is being executed. A common deficiency is the failure to evaluate each task each time it is performed. Leaders should emphasize direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual or small group training is easy. Outside evaluators usually make this unfeasible for higher level exercises. Leaders should plan AARs at frequent and logical intervals during exercises. This technique allows the TF commander to correct performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind.

- c. **Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Evaluations.** Training plans should include evaluations of each task and exercise under NBC conditions. Consider conducting at least one iteration of each training event in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear.

- 1-11. **Feedback.** Use DA Form 7507 (ARTEP Mission Training Plan User Feedback) to provide recommendations and comments.

| Environmental Protection Level | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------|--|--|--|
| Level 1 | | Level 2 | Level 3 | Level 4 |
| 1. Waste Management | | | | |
| a. Human waste | Unit SOP | Slit trench | Burnout latrine | Sanitary sewer |
| b. Solid waste | Unit SOP | Unit incineration or burial | Incineration | Landfill |
| c. Medical waste | Unit SOP | Field collection, consolidate disposal | US or host nation (HN) approved disposal methods | Same |
| d. Hazardous waste | Unit SOP | Field collection, battalion disposal | Unit collection point, classify, label, DLA contract | Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA) or HN procedures |
| 2. Hazardous Materials | | | | |
| | Unit SOP | Spill response, report any water contamination | HM tracking, spill response, report spills over 50 gallons | Spill prevention plans, response teams |
| 3. Natural Resources | | | | |
| a. Water | Unit SOP | Unit SOP | Erosion control | No degradation of water due to erosion or effluent |
| b. Vegetation | Unit SOP | Restriction on camouflage | Clearing in excess of 100 acres requires joint task force (JTF) approval | Clearing requires environmental assessment |
| c. Air | Unit SOP | Dust suppression nonhazardous only | Control open fires, fugitive dust | Controls on incineration and traffic |
| d. Wildlife | Unit SOP | Unit SOP | Note and avoid specific habitats | Taking species prohibited |
| 4. Cultural and Historical Resources | | | | |
| | Unit SOP | Minimize damage if possible | Division-level approval required for operations in area | JTF approval required for operations in area |

Figure 1-2. Example notional environmental protection matrix.

CHAPTER 2

Training Matrixes

2-1. **General.** Matrixes help the commander plan the training of his unit's personnel. Figure 2-1 shows unit missions.

- | |
|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Defense • Generic Mission • Offense • Reconnaissance and Security • Retrograde • Stability • Support |
|--|

Figure 2-1. Mission identification table.

2-2. **Mission-to-Collective-Tasks Matrix.** Figure 2-2 identifies the missions, their supporting collective tasks, and their respective Battlefield Operating System (BOS, see TRADOC Pam 11-9). Figure 2-2A applies to *Defense*, *Generic Missions*, *Offense*, and *Reconnaissance and Security*. Figure 2-2B applies to *Retrograde*, *Stability*, and *Support*. A specific mission is trained by identifying collective tasks in the vertical column for the mission. Based on the unit's proficiency, leaders focus training on operational weaknesses.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | DEFENSE | GENERIC MISSION | OFFENSE | RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY |
|---|---------|-----------------|---------|-----------------------------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X | X |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X | |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | X |
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |

Figure 2-2. Mission-to-collective task matrix, Part 1.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | DEFENSE | GENERIC MISSION | OFFENSE | RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY |
|---|---------|-----------------|---------|-----------------------------|
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X | |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |

Figure 2-2. Mission-to-collective task matrix, Part 1 (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | DEFENSE | GENERIC MISSION | OFFENSE | RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY |
|---|----------------|------------------------|----------------|------------------------------------|
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Employ Firepower | | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X | X |
| Protect the Force | | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X | X |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X | X |

Figure 2-2. Mission-to-collective task matrix, Part 1 (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | DEFENSE | GENERIC MISSION | OFFENSE | RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY |
|---|---------|-----------------|---------|-----------------------------|
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X | X |
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X | X |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X | X |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |
| Exercise Command and Control | | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X | |
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X | X |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |

Figure 2-2. Mission-to-collective task matrix, Part 1 (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | DEFENSE | GENERIC MISSION | OFFENSE | RECONNAISSANCE AND SECURITY |
|---|---------|-----------------|---------|-----------------------------|
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | X | X | X | X |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X | |
| 07-1-5144 Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | X | X | X | X |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X | X |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X | X |

Figure 2-2A. Mission-to-collective task matrix, Part 1 (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | RETROGRADE | STABILITY | SUPPORT |
|---|------------|-----------|---------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | |
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |

Figure 2-2B. Mission-to-collective task matrix, Part 2.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | RETROGRADE | STABILITY | SUPPORT |
|---|------------|-----------|---------|
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | |
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X |
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | |

Figure 2-2B. Mission-to-collective task matrix, Part 2 (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | RETROGRADE | STABILITY | SUPPORT |
|---|------------|-----------|---------|
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | |
| Employ Firepower | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | |
| Protect the Force | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | |
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |

Figure 2-2B. Mission-to-collective task matrix, Part 2 (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | RETROGRADE | STABILITY | SUPPORT |
|---|------------|-----------|---------|
| Exercise Command and Control | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | |
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | |
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | X | |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | |
| 07-1-5144 Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | X | |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | |

Figure 2-2B. Mission-to-collective task matrix, Part 2 (continued).

2-3. **Supporting-References-to-Collective-Tasks Matrix.** This matrix (Figure 2-3), identifies references that provide additional information on each of the collective tasks.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | AR 25-2 | AR 380-5 |
|---|---------|----------|
| <i>Develop Intelligence</i> | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| <i>Deploy/Conduct Maneuver</i> | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |

Figure 2-3A. Supporting-references-to-collective tasks matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | AR 25-2 | AR 380-5 |
|---|----------------|-----------------|
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| Employ Firepower | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| Protect the Force | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X |
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |

Figure 2-3A. Supporting-references-to-collective tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | AR 25-2 | AR 380-5 |
|---|----------------|-----------------|
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| Exercise Command and Control | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |

Figure 2-3A. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | AR 25-2 | AR 380-5 |
|---|---------|----------|
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | |

Figure 2-3A. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | DA FORM 1155 | DA FORM 1156 | DA FORM 1355-1-R | DA FORM 5032-R |
|---|--------------|--------------|------------------|----------------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3B. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | DA FORM 1155 | DA FORM 1156 | DA FORM 1355-1-R | DA FORM 5032-R |
|---|-------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Employ Firepower | | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Protect the Force | | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3B. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | DA FORM 1155 | DA FORM 1156 | DA FORM 1355-1-R | DA FORM 5032-R |
|---|-----------------|-----------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | X |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Exercise Command and Control | | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3B. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | DA FORM 1155 | DA FORM 1156 | DA FORM 1355-1-R | DA FORM 5032-R |
|---|--------------|--------------|------------------|----------------|
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3B. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | DA FORM 2745 | DD FORM 1380 | FM 4-0 |
|---|--------------|--------------|--------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |

Figure 2-3C. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | DA FORM 2745 | DD FORM 1380 | FM 4-0 |
|---|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |

Figure 2-3C. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | DA FORM 2745 | DD FORM 1380 | FM 4-0 |
|---|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Employ Firepower | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Protect the Force | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | |
| Exercise Command and Control | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |

Figure 2-3C. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | DA FORM 2745 | DD FORM 1380 | FM 4-0 |
|---|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |

Figure 2-3C. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 100-14 | FM 100-17 | FM 3-07 (100-20, -23) |
|--|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |

Figure 2-3D. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 100-14 | FM 100-17 | FM 3-07 (100-20, -23) |
|---|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------|
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X |
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |

Figure 2-3D. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 100-14 | FM 100-17 | FM 3-07 (100-20, -23) |
|---|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------|
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Employ Firepower | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Protect the Force | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |

Figure 2-3D. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 100-14 | FM 100-17 | FM 3-07 (100-20, -23) |
|---|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------|
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Exercise Command and Control | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |

Figure 2-3D. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 6-0 (100-34) | FM 6-0.6 (100-34-1) | FM 3-90 (100-40) | FM 3-0 (100-5) |
|---|----------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | X |
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3E. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 6-0 (100-34) | FM 6-0.6 (100-34-1) | FM 3-90 (100-40) | FM 3-0 (100-5) |
|---|----------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |
| Employ Firepower | | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Protect the Force | | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3E. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 6-0 (100-34) | FM 6-0.6 (100-34-1) | FM 3-90 (100-40) | FM 3-0 (100-5) |
|---|----------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Exercise Command and Control | | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X | X |
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X | X |

Figure 2-3E. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 6-0 (100-34) | FM 6-0.6 (100-34-1) | FM 3-90 (100-40) | FM 3-0 (100-5) |
|---|----------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |

Figure 2-3E. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 3-0 (100-5) | FM 3-13 (100-6) | FM 101-5 | FM 101-5-1 |
|---|---------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | X |
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | X |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | X |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | X |
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | X |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | X |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | X |

Figure 2-3F. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 3-0 (100-5) | FM 3-13 (100-6) | FM 101-5 | FM 101-5-1 |
|---|---------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | X |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | X |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| Employ Firepower | | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | X |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |
| Protect the Force | | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3F. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 3-0 (100-5) | FM 3-13 (100-6) | FM 101-5 | FM 101-5-1 |
|---|---------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | X |
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | X |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | X |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | X |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Exercise Command and Control | | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | X |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | X |
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |

Figure 2-3F. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 3-0 (100-5) | FM 3-13 (100-6) | FM 101-5 | FM 101-5-1 |
|---|---------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | X |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | X |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | X |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | X | X |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X | X |
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | X |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |

Figure 2-3F. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 101-5-2 | FM 10-27-4 | FM 4-20.102 (10-100-2) | FM 1-100 |
|---|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3G. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 101-5-2 | FM 10-27-4 | FM 4-20.102 (10-100-2) | FM 1-100 |
|---|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------|
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3G. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 101-5-2 | FM 10-27-4 | FM 4-20.102 (10-100-2) | FM 1-100 |
|---|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------|
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| Employ Firepower | | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Protect the Force | | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X | |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Exercise Command and Control | | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3G. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 101-5-2 | FM 10-27-4 | FM 4-20.102 (10-100-2) | FM 1-100 |
|---|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------|
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | X | | | |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | X | | | |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |

Figure 2-3G. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 3-04.111 (1-111) | FM 11-41 | FM 11-43 | FM 11-50 |
|--|--------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3H. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 3-04.111 (1-111) | FM 11-41 | FM 11-43 | FM 11-50 |
|---|--------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3H. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 3-04.111 (1-111) | FM 11-41 | FM 11-43 | FM 11-50 |
|---|--------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Employ Firepower | | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Protect the Force | | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3H. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 3-04.111 (1-111) | FM 11-41 | FM 11-43 | FM 11-50 |
|---|--------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Exercise Command and Control | | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X | X |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3H. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 12-6 | FM 19-15 | FM 3-19.30 (19-30) | FM 3-19.40 (19-40) |
|---|--------------------|---------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | X |
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3J. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 12-6 | FM 19-15 | FM 3-19.30 (19-30) | FM 3-19.40 (19-40) |
|---|--------------------|---------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |
| Employ Firepower | | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Protect the Force | | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3J. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 12-6 | FM 19-15 | FM 3-19.30 (19-30) | FM 3-19.40 (19-40) |
|---|--------------------|---------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | X |
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | X |
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Exercise Command and Control | | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3J. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 12-6 | FM 19-15 | FM 3-19.30 (19-30) | FM 3-19.40 (19-40) |
|---|--------------------|---------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3J. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 20-3 | FM 20-32 | FM 21-60 | FM 24-33 |
|---|--------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X | |
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X | |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |

Figure 2-3K. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 20-3 | FM 20-32 | FM 21-60 | FM 24-33 |
|---|--------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X | |
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X | |
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X | |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Employ Firepower | | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Protect the Force | | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3K. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 20-3 | FM 20-32 | FM 21-60 | FM 24-33 |
|---|--------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Exercise Command and Control | | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |

Figure 2-3K. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 20-3 | FM 20-32 | FM 21-60 | FM 24-33 |
|---|--------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |

Figure 2-3K. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 24-35 | FM 3-06 | FM 3-06.11 |
|---|---------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X |
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |

Figure 2-3L. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 24-35 | FM 3-06 | FM 3-06.11 |
|---|---------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X |
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X |
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X |

Figure 2-3L. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 24-35 | FM 3-06 | FM 3-06.11 |
|---|---------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| Employ Firepower | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Protect the Force | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Exercise Command and Control | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |

Figure 2-3L. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 24-35 | FM 3-06 | FM 3-06.11 |
|---|-----------------|----------------|-------------------|
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X |
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | X | | |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | X | | |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X |
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |

Figure 2-3L. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 3-11 (3-100) | FM 3-19 | FM 3-3 | FM 3-05.30 (33-1) |
|---|------------------------|----------------|---------------|--------------------------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3M. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 3-11 (3-100) | FM 3-19 | FM 3-3 | FM 3-05.30 (33-1) |
|---|----------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|------------------------------|
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3M. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 3-11 (3-100) | FM 3-19 | FM 3-3 | FM 3-05.30 (33-1) |
|---|----------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|------------------------------|
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Employ Firepower | | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Protect the Force | | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | X |
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Exercise Command and Control | | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3M. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 3-11 (3-100) | FM 3-19 | FM 3-3 | FM 3-05.30 (33-1) |
|---|----------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|------------------------------|
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X | |
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3M. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 3-3-1 | FM 3-34.2 | FM 3-11.4 (3-4) | FM 2-0 (34-1) |
|--|---------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3N. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 3-3-1 | FM 3-34.2 | FM 3-11.4 (3-4) | FM 2-0 (34-1) |
|---|---------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3N. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 3-3-1 | FM 3-34.2 | FM 3-11.4 (3-4) | FM 2-0 (34-1) |
|---|---------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| Employ Firepower | | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Protect the Force | | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | |
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3N. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 3-3-1 | FM 3-34.2 | FM 3-11.4 (3-4) | FM 2-0 (34-1) |
|---|---------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Exercise Command and Control | | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X | |
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X | X |
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3N. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 34-130 | FM 34-2 | FM 34-2-1 | FM 34-3 |
|---|----------------------|--------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X | X |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3P. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 34-130 | FM 34-2 | FM 34-2-1 | FM 34-3 |
|---|----------------------|--------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| Employ Firepower | | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Protect the Force | | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3P. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 34-130 | FM 34-2 | FM 34-2-1 | FM 34-3 |
|---|----------------------|--------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Exercise Command and Control | | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3P. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 34-130 | FM 34-2 | FM 34-2-1 | FM 34-3 |
|---|-----------|---------|-----------|---------|
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3P. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 34-45 (34-40-7) | FM 34-5 | FM 34-52 | FM 34-54 |
|---|--------------------|---------|----------|----------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | X |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3Q. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 34-45 (34-40-7) | FM 34-5 | FM 34-52 | FM 34-54 |
|---|-------------------------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Employ Firepower | | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Protect the Force | | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3Q. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 34-45 (34-40-7) | FM 34-5 | FM 34-52 | FM 34-54 |
|---|-------------------------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Exercise Command and Control | | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |

Figure 2-3Q. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 34-45 (34-40-7) | FM 34-5 | FM 34-52 | FM 34-54 |
|---|-------------------------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X | X |
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3Q. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 34-60 | FM 34-8-2 | FM 3-5 | FM 3-50-1 |
|---|---------------------|----------------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3R. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 34-60 | FM 34-8-2 | FM 3-5 | FM 3-50-1 |
|---|-------------|--------------|-----------|--------------|
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3R. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 34-60 | FM 34-8-2 | FM 3-5 | FM 3-50-1 |
|---|---------------------|----------------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Employ Firepower | | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Protect the Force | | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Exercise Command and Control | | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3R. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 34-60 | FM 34-8-2 | FM 3-5 | FM 3-50-1 |
|---|-----------------|------------------|---------------|------------------|
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | X |
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | X | |
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3R. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 3-6 | FM 3-7 | FM 41-10 | FM 44-100 (44-1) |
|---|---------------|---------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3S. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 3-6 | FM 3-7 | FM 41-10 | FM 44-100 (44-1) |
|---|-------------------|-------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3S. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 3-6 | FM 3-7 | FM 41-10 | FM 44-100 (44-1) |
|---|---------------|---------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Employ Firepower | | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Protect the Force | | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3S. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 3-6 | FM 3-7 | FM 41-10 | FM 44-100 (44-1) |
|---|-------------------|-------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| Exercise Command and Control | | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3S. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 44-8 | FM 44-80 | FM 3-34 (5-100) | FM 5-102 |
|---|----------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-----------------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3T. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 44-8 | FM 44-80 | FM 3-34 (5-100) | FM 5-102 |
|---|----------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-----------------|
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Employ Firepower | | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Protect the Force | | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3T. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 44-8 | FM 44-80 | FM 3-34 (5-100) | FM 5-102 |
|---|----------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-----------------|
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | X |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Exercise Command and Control | | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | X |
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | X |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3T. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 44-8 | FM 44-80 | FM 3-34 (5-100) | FM 5-102 |
|---|----------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-----------------|
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3T. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 5-103 | FM 5-170 | FM 20-3 (5-20) | FM 5-33 |
|---|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3U. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 5-103 | FM 5-170 | FM 20-3 (5-20) | FM 5-33 |
|---|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Employ Firepower | | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Protect the Force | | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3U. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 5-103 | FM 5-170 | FM 20-3 (5-20) | FM 5-33 |
|---|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X | |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Exercise Command and Control | | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3U. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 5-103 | FM 5-170 | FM 20-3 (5-20) | FM 5-33 |
|---|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------------|----------------|
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | X |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3U. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 5-34 | FM 55-10 | DoD 4500.9-R (FM 55-12) |
|---|----------------|-----------------|--------------------------------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |

Figure 2-3V. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 5-34 | FM 55-10 | DoD 4500.9-R (FM 55-12) |
|---|--------------------|---------------------|--|
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |

Figure 2-3V. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| | FM 5-34 | FM 55-10 | DoD 4500.9-R (FM 55-12) |
|---|------------|-------------|-------------------------------|
| COLLECTIVE TASKS | | | |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Employ Firepower | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Protect the Force | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Exercise Command and Control | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |

Figure 2-3V. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 5-34 | FM 55-10 | DoD 4500.9-R (FM 55-12) |
|---|--------------------|---------------------|--|
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |

Figure 2-3V. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 55-15 | FM 4-01.011 (55-65) | FM 5-71-2 | FM 5-71-3 |
|--|---------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3W. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 55-15 | FM 4-01.011 (55-65) | FM 5-71-2 | FM 5-71-3 |
|---|---------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |

Figure 2-3W. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 55-15 | FM 4-01.011 (55-65) | FM 5-71-2 | FM 5-71-3 |
|---|---------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| Employ Firepower | | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Protect the Force | | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3W. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 55-15 | FM 4-01.011 (55-65) | FM 5-71-2 | FM 5-71-3 |
|---|---------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Exercise Command and Control | | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3W. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 6-20-10 | FM 6-20-20 | FM 6-20-40 | FM 6-30 |
|---|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3X. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 6-20-10 | FM 6-20-20 | FM 6-20-40 | FM 6-30 |
|---|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Employ Firepower | | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | X |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | |
| Protect the Force | | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3X. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 6-20-10 | FM 6-20-20 | FM 6-20-40 | FM 6-30 |
|---|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Exercise Command and Control | | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3X. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 6-20-10 | FM 6-20-20 | FM 6-20-40 | FM 6-30 |
|---|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3X. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 71-123 | FM 3-90.2 (71-2) | FM 7-20 |
|---|----------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | |

Figure 2-3Y. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 71-123 | FM 3-90.2 (71-2) | FM 7-20 |
|---|----------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------|
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | |
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| Employ Firepower | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X |
| Protect the Force | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |

Figure 2-3Y. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 71-123 | FM 3-90.2 (71-2) | FM 7-20 |
|---|----------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------|
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | X | |

Figure 2-3Y. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 71-123 | FM 3-90.2 (71-2) | FM 7-20 |
|---|------------------|-------------------------|----------------|
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | X | |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X |
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | |
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X |

Figure 2-3Y. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 7-22 (3-21.21) | FM 7-85 | FM 7-90 | FM 3-21.91 (7-91) |
|---|--------------------------|----------------|----------------|--------------------------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X | X |
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |

Figure 2-3Z. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 7-22 (3-21.21) | FM 7-85 | FM 7-90 | FM 3-21.91 (7-91) |
|---|------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X | X |
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |

Figure 2-3Z. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 7-22 (3-21.21) | FM 7-85 | FM 7-90 | FM 3-21.91 (7-91) |
|---|------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| Employ Firepower | | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X | X |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Protect the Force | | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Exercise Command and Control | | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | | |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3Z. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 7-22 (3-21.21) | FM 7-85 | FM 7-90 | FM 3-21.91 (7-91) |
|---|------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | X | | | |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3Z. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 7-98 | FM 4-02 (8-10) | FM 4-02.6 (8-10-1) | FM 4-02.25 (8-10-25) |
|---|--------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3AA. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 7-98 | FM 4-02 (8-10) | FM 4-02.6 (8-10-1) | FM 4-02.25 (8-10-25) |
|---|--------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3AA. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 7-98 | FM 4-02 (8-10) | FM 4-02.6 (8-10-1) | FM 4-02.25 (8-10-25) |
|---|--------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Employ Firepower | | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Protect the Force | | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X | |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X | X |

Figure 2-3AA. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 7-98 | FM 4-02 (8-10) | FM 4-02.6 (8-10-1) | FM 4-02.25 (8-10-25) |
|---|--------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Exercise Command and Control | | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3AA. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 8-10-6 | FM 4-02.7 (8-10-7) | FM 8-10-9 |
|---|----------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |

Figure 2-3BB. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 8-10-6 | FM 4-02.7 (8-10-7) | FM 8-10-9 |
|---|----------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Employ Firepower | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Protect the Force | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |

Figure 2-3BB. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 8-10-6 | FM 4-02.7 (8-10-7) | FM 8-10-9 |
|---|----------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | X |
| Exercise Command and Control | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |

Figure 2-3BB. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 8-10-6 | FM 4-02.7 (8-10-7) | FM 8-10-9 |
|---|----------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |

Figure 2-3BB. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 8-51 | FM 8-55 | FM 8-9 | FM 90-13 |
|---|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3CC. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 8-51 | FM 8-55 | FM 8-9 | FM 90-13 |
|---|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Employ Firepower | | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Protect the Force | | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3CC. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 8-51 | FM 8-55 | FM 8-9 | FM 90-13 |
|---|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | | |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | X | |
| Exercise Command and Control | | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3CC. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 8-51 | FM 8-55 | FM 8-9 | FM 90-13 |
|---|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | | |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | X |
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | | |

Figure 2-3CC. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 90-4 | FM 90-7 | FM 4-30.3 (9-43-1) |
|---|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | |
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |

Figure 2-3DD. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 90-4 | FM 90-7 | FM 4-30.3 (9-43-1) |
|---|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | |
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Employ Firepower | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Protect the Force | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |

Figure 2-3DD. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 90-4 | FM 90-7 | FM 4-30.3 (9-43-1) |
|---|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Exercise Command and Control | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | |

Figure 2-3DD. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 90-4 | FM 90-7 | FM 4-30.3 (9-43-1) |
|---|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | X | |
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |

Figure 2-3DD. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 9-43-2 | TB 55-46-1 | TC 7-98-1 |
|---|----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| Develop Intelligence | | | |
| 07-1-2000 Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2009 Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2018 Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2027 Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2036 Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-2054 Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | | | |
| 07-1-1000 Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1009 Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1018A Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1027 Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |

Figure 2-3EE. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix.

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 9-43-2 | TB 55-46-1 | TC 7-98-1 |
|---|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| 07-1-1036A Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1045 Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1054 Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1063 Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1072 Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1081 Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1090A Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1099 Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1108 Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1117 Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1126 Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | X | | |
| 07-1-1135A Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1144 Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1162 Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1171 Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1180 Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1189 Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1198 Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1207 Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1216 Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1225 Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1234 Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1243 Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1252 Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-1261 Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |

Figure 2-3EE. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 9-43-2 | TB 55-46-1 | TC 7-98-1 |
|---|----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 07-1-1270 Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Employ Firepower | | | |
| 07-1-3000 Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-3009A Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Protect the Force | | | |
| 07-1-6000 Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6009 Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6018 Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6027 Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6036 Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6045 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6054 React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6063 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6072 Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-6081 Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Perform CSS and Sustainment | | | |
| 07-1-4000 Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-4018 Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-4027 Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-4036 Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| Exercise Command and Control | | | |
| 07-1-5000 Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5009 Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5027 Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5036 Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5045 Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | X | |
| 07-1-5054 Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |

Figure 2-3EE. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

| COLLECTIVE TASKS | FM 9-43-2 | TB 55-46-1 | TC 7-98-1 |
|---|----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 07-1-5063 Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | X |
| 07-1-5072 Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5081 Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5090 Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5099 Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5108 Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5117 Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5126 Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | |
| 07-1-5135 Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5153 Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | | | |
| 07-1-5162 Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5171 Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5180 Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5189 Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5198 Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |
| 07-1-5207 Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | | | |

Figure 2-3EE. Supporting-references-to-collective-tasks matrix (continued).

CHAPTER 3

Training Plans

- 3-1. **General.** This chapter describes the use of the MTP for development of TF training plans and provides a mission outline. It is designed to assist commanders in preparing training plans for critical wartime missions. Field manuals 7-0 (25-100) and 7-1 (25-101) provide detailed information on training management and should be used with the MTP for developing TF training plans.
- 3-2. **Long-Range Planning.** Long-range planning allows commanders to provide timely input to the Army's various training resource systems and to provide a general direction for the training programs. The long-range plan consists of a calendar covering the planning period and the commander's formal guidance. To develop a long-range plan, the commander must first develop the unit's METL and conduct a training assessment. These two actions are the two principal inputs at the beginning of the planning process. Field manual 7-0 and other 7-series FMs provide guidance on developing a unit's METL.
- Develop Unit Mission-Essential Task List.** The first step in developing a METL is analyzing all specified and implied missions and other guidance. Next, the unit's wartime mission is restated. After analyzing the unit's missions and external directives, a list of tasks is identified which must be accomplished if the unit is to successfully accomplish its wartime mission. Subordinate commanders and key NCOs participate in selecting the tasks. The task list is developed using the missions contained in Chapter 2 of the MTP, missions assigned to the TF by contingency plans and missions directed by higher headquarters' guidance. The commander reviews the task list and selects tasks that are essential to the unit's wartime mission. The selected tasks are forwarded to the next higher headquarters for approval. The tasks selected are the unit's METL (Figure 3-1).
 - Establish Training Objectives.** After the METL is identified, the commander establishes training objectives. The training objectives are conditions and standards which describe the situation or environment and ultimate outcome criteria the unit must meet to successfully perform the tasks. Training objectives and standards for METL can be obtained from the MTP, Soldier Training Publication (STP), higher headquarters command guidance and local standing operating procedures (SOP).
 - Assess Training.** With the help of his staff and subordinate commanders, the commander assesses the battalion TF's proficiency in performing the unit's mission-essential tasks and, therefore, in fighting and winning on the battlefield. He rates each task as "T" (trained), "P" (needs practice), "U" (untrained), or "?" (unknown). From these results the commander identifies the unit's training requirements (Figure 3-2). The commander's training assessment is the commander's continuous comparison of the unit's current proficiency with the proficiency required to fight and win on the battlefield. The commander, his staff, and subordinate commanders assess the organization's current proficiency on mission-essential tasks against the required standard. The commander then indicates the current proficiency by rating each task as "T" (Trained), "P" (Needs Practice), "U" (Untrained), or "?" (Unknown). The assessment identifies the unit's training requirements (Figure 3-2).

| |
|--|
| <p>INTELLIGENCE.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Conduct S2 Operations. 2. Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB. 3. Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB. 4. Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB. 5. Evaluate the Enemy during IPB. |
| <p>MANEUVER.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Conduct Deployment Activities. 2. Conduct Redeployment Activities 3. Conduct a Movement to Contact. 4. Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack. 5. Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force. 6. Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force. 7. Fight a Meeting Engagement. 8. Conduct a Defense. |
| <p>FIRE SUPPORT.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Employ Fire Support. 2. Execute the Targeting Process . |
| <p>AIR DEFENSE.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms . |
| <p>MOBILITY/COUNTERMOBILITY/SURVIVABILITY.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, and or Survivability Operations. |
| <p>COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Conduct S1 Operations. 2. Conduct S4 Operations. 3. Provide Combat Health Support. 4. Rearm and fix forward. |
| <p>COMMAND AND CONTROL.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Conduct Command and Control of Operations. 2. Conduct Battle Tracking. 3. Conduct S3 Operations. 4. Establish a Command Post. 5. Plan Operations Using the MDMP. |
| <p>This is not intended to be a fully developed METL. Tasks are shown for instructional purposes only.</p> |

Figure 3-1. Example task force mission-essential task list.

| Mission Essential Tasks | CURRENT TRAINING STATUS BATTLEFIELD OPERATING SYSTEMS | | | | | | | TRAINING STRATEGY |
|---|--|----------|----------|--------|-------------|-----|----|-------------------|
| | Intel | Maneuver | Fire Spt | M/CM/S | Air Defense | CSS | C2 | Overall |
| Conduct Battle Tracking | P | T | P | P | T | U | U | P |
| Conduct S4 Operations | P | T | T | P | U | T | T | T |
| Plan Operations using the MDMP | U | P | T | T | T | T | T | T |
| Define the Battlefield Environment | ? | U | ? | ? | ? | ? | ? | ? |
| Legend: T - Trained U - Untrained P - Needs Practice ? - Status Unknown | | | | | | | | |

Figure 3-2. Example format for commander's training assessment.

- d. **Develop Training Strategy and Commander's Guidance.** The training strategy is developed using the outcome from the training assessment. With the training strategy, the commander and his staff establish training priorities by determining the minimum frequency each mission essential task will be trained during the upcoming planning period. It includes the commander's guidance which includes the commander's training vision. To develop unit goals, the commander must:
- (1) Review higher commander's goals.
 - (2) Spell out in real world terms what his unit will do to comply with the goals of higher commanders.
 - (3) List in broad terms the goals for the unit. Figure 3-3 shows some examples.

| |
|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Attain and sustain proficiency in all MTP tasks. - Maintain a 90 percent operational ready (OR) rate. - Attain and sustain a 100 percent crew gunnery qualification. |
|--|

Figure 3-3. Example of TF goals.

- e. **Establish Training Priorities.** Priorities are established for training METL tasks by basing the priorities on training status, the criticality of the task, and the relative training emphasis the task should receive. Figure 3-4 provides an example training priority list.
- f. **Prepare Long-Range Planning Calendar.** The long-range planning calendar is the coordinating tool for long-range planning. It is structured by long-range training events to identify time periods available for training mission essential tasks. The long-range planning calendar projects training events and activities of the unit for the next 12 to 18 months. To prepare a long-range calendar, follow the steps outlined below.
- (1) Select training events and activities to train the missions. At TF-level, the commander must project events that will enable him to achieve his goals.

| TASK | SOURCE | TRAINING PRIORITY |
|--|--------|-------------------|
| Define the Battlefield Environment | MTP | 4 |
| Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force | MTP | 1 |
| Fight a Meeting Engagement | MTP | 2 |
| Conduct a Defense | MTP | 3 |
| Occupy an Assembly Area | MTP | 5 |

Figure 3-4. Example of task force training priority list.

- (2) Assign time for subordinate units to train. Subordinate leaders must be allowed to develop their training programs in support of the TF training program.
- (3) Examine various training alternatives to make optimum use of the training support available to the unit. Available training resources must be compared against higher headquarters directed training, TF directed training events, and subordinate level projected training events. Examples of resourcing tools available to the TF commander are the Battalion Level Training Model (BLTM), operating tempo (OPTEMPO), and STRAC.
- (4) Obtain approval of long-range plans from higher headquarters.
- (5) Issue guidance. Training guidance is issued to the staff and subordinate units with the long-range training calendar. This training guidance supplements the long-range training calendar and generally includes:
 - (a) Training policies.
 - (b) Types of mandatory training.
 - (c) Training resource guidance.
 - (d) Quotas for centralized training (schools).
 - (e) Training goals.

3-3. **Short-Range Plans.** A short-range plan is prepared to address the immediate future (3 months for Army component units; 1 year for reserve component units). Short-range planning develops specific training objectives based on the goals and guidance prepared during long-range planning. The short-range plan adds more detail and may modify the long-range plan based on current assessments. Prepare the short-range plan as described below.

- a. Review the training program, current unit proficiency, resources, and training environment.
 - (1) Review the training program described in the long-range planning process. This review determines if assessments made during long-range planning are still valid.
 - (2) Review previous short-range planning calendars for training accomplished, training preempted, and lessons learned.
 - (3) Review current unit proficiency to update priorities.
 - (4) Review resources to determine if it is still possible to execute the program described on the long-range planning calendar.
 - (5) Review training environment again in this phase of planning because it takes on added importance as training events and activities approach. Factors that affect the training environment and that collectively impact on the training program are:
 - (a) Personnel assigned.
 - (b) Personnel turbulence.
 - (c) Morale.
 - (d) Education programs.
 - (e) Mandatory training.
 - (f) Visits, inspections, and tests.

- (g) Supplies and equipment.
 - (h) Nonmission-related activities.
 - (i) Other programs.
 - b. Develop a detailed plan of action for short-range training plans. Prepare the detailed plan of action as described below.
 - (1) Examine events scheduled on the long-range training plan to determine if they are still valid.
 - (2) Transfer valid events to a short-range training planning calendar.
 - (3) Determine desired outcomes for scheduled events.
 - (4) Analyze missions to determine related individual, leader, and collective tasks.
 - (5) Determine if there are any weaknesses. Select tasks to correct these identified weaknesses and to sustain selected individual, leader, and unit strengths, as necessary.
 - (6) Select the specific training objectives for missions and tasks to be trained. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 provide the commander with the training objectives.
 - (7) Prepare a short-range training planning calendar or three monthly schedules. The short-range training planning calendar provides a detailed plan of action for the specified period.
 - (8) Review short-range plans with petroleum group.
 - (9) Issue guidance. This guidance specifically addresses how training will be accomplished.
- 3-4. **Near Term Plans.** The final phase of planning is the execution of training. Using the short-range plan, prepare weekly training schedules.
 - a. Review the training program, unit proficiency, resources, and training environment. As in long-range and short-range planning, this review determines if previous assessments are still valid.
 - b. Finalize plans based upon the review of the training program. Determine the best sequence for training tasks, and complete the final coordination of the training events and activities.
 - c. Brief trainers, observer or controllers (O-Cs), opposing force (OPFOR), and support personnel on what is being trained, why it is being trained, and what their role in the training will be.
- 3-5. **Headquarters and Headquarters Company.** Planning training for the HHC provides the commander with unique challenges. The most severe challenges are those that have to do with time and availability of personnel. The staff and headquarters detachment are involved in day-to-day operations and support of subordinate unit training. It is difficult to find the time to adequately address the training needs of these elements. These elements must be capable of fulfilling their roles in order for the TF to perform its wartime missions. The strategy selected by the commander for training these elements must include an effective method of training individuals, staffs, leaders, and units.
 - a. **Training the Task Force Staff.**
 - (1) Training of the staff presents the greatest challenge within a constrained training environment. This MTP identifies the training objectives for the staff. The staff has numerous tasks to master to be effective. The following are examples of tasks that any staff must be able to perform:
 - (a) Analyze terrain.
 - (b) Function as an effective team.
 - (c) Exchange information.
 - (d) Prepare estimates.
 - (e) Give appraisals.
 - (f) Make recommendations and decisions.
 - (g) Prepare plans.
 - (h) Issue orders.
 - (i) Coordinate and control unit operations.
 - (j) Supervise subordinate units within their area of responsibility.
 - (2) The strategy used to train the staff will vary based on the considerations used in planning training (such as level of proficiency and training support available). FM 7-1 contains detailed information on the conduct of exercises. Some methods of staff training include

the following exercises, listed here from the least expensive as far as resources required to the most expensive:

- (a) *Tactical Exercise without Troops*. Tactical exercises without troops (TEWTs) are low-cost, low-overhead exercises conducted in the field. Commanders use TEWTs to train subordinate leaders and staffs how to analyze terrain and plan for the conduct of unit missions.
 - (b) *Map Exercise*. Map exercises (MAPEXs) are also low-cost, low-overhead training exercises. They allow commanders to train their staffs to perform essential integrating and controlling functions to support their decisions under wartime conditions. MAPEXs may also train the staff to exchange information, prepare estimates, give appraisals, make recommendations and decisions, prepare plans, and issue orders.
 - (c) *Command Post Exercise*. Command post exercises (CPXs) are medium-cost, medium-overhead training exercises that may be conducted in garrison or a field location. CPXs normally use a battle simulation to drive the staff actions.
 - (d) *Field Training Exercise*. FTXs are high-cost, high-overhead exercises conducted in the field under simulated combat conditions. Unit-conducted FTXs exercise the staff in coordination, control, and supervision of unit operations. They normally require the staff planning tasks to be completed before the exercise begins. Brigade FTXs provide the best opportunity for the TF staff to combine all of its skills and perform as it would in wartime, responding to both higher and lower levels.
- (3) At TF level, one way to optimize staff and unit training is to integrate TEWTs, MAPEXs, CPXs, combined field exercises (CFXs), and combined arms live-fire exercises (CALFEXs). This exercises the entire spectrum of staff operations and functions. It also makes the best use of unit field training time. Each unit is unique. Only commanders can determine the best method for training their staffs.
- b. **Training the Task Force**. This complex task requires both unit and staff training programs. The demands of routine, day-to-day operations challenge TF commanders to train their units. Elements cross staff lines and responsibilities. The TF executive officer (XO) coordinates with the TF commander to ensure individual Soldiering tasks are being mastered.

3-6. **Development of Training Exercises**. Chapter 4 provides sample exercises for the TF to use as examples on how to prepare training exercises to meet specific training needs. Since only an example FTX is contained in the MTP, it is necessary for the TF to develop exercises for its own use. This section provides general procedures for the TF staff to use for both the FTX and STX preparation. Exercise plans are normally prepared during preparation of the short-range plan. Prepare the exercises as described below.

- a. **Selection of Missions and Tasks for Training**. This was accomplished during the development of the long-range plan and refined during the development of the short-range plan.
- b. **Site Selection**. Confirm selection of a training area.
- c. **Scenario Development**. After missions and tasks are selected, prepare a detailed scenario for the exercise.
 - (1) List the missions, tasks, and events in the preferred sequence of occurrence.
 - (2) Identify events necessary for the control of the exercise. These events would normally include issuance of orders, AARs, and any other administrative or logistics action necessary to conduct the exercise.
 - (3) Prepare the exercise overlays which show the sequence of actions and terrain to be used for each event.
 - (4) Determine the estimated time for each event using the overlay and scenario. The total time is determined to ensure that the scenario can be completed in the time allocated for the exercise.
- d. **Selection of O/Cs and OPFOR**. O/Cs and OPFOR are normally required for every FTX and STX when MILES is used. It is difficult for a TF to provide these from its own resources. When O/Cs and OPFOR must be provided from within the TF, unit leaders may have to serve as the O/Cs for their units and the OPFOR may be selected from personnel or units not essential for attainment of the exercise objectives. Ideally, the higher headquarters should provide O/Cs and OPFOR.

- e. **Preparation of the Control Plan.** Control plans are developed to coordinate the actions of the training units, OPFOR, and O/Cs. The scenario is used and a detailed control plan is prepared. The control plan consist of:
 - (1) Detailed schedules of OPFOR actions.
 - (2) Detailed instructions for the OPFOR.
 - (3) Detailed schedule of activities for units.
 - (4) Operation orders (OPORDs) and fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) for friendly units. Normally, friendly unit actions are controlled through the issuance of OPORDs and FRAGOs.
- f. **Preparation of the Evaluation Plan.** All training is evaluated, either internally or externally. The evaluation plan identifies the tasks to be evaluated, by whom, and at what time. The evaluation will consist of:
 - (1) Specific instructions for the O/Cs.
 - (2) A sequential list of T&EOs to be evaluated by each O/C.
 - (3) Detailed time schedules for evaluation and AARs.

3-7. **Mission Outline.** The mission outline relates the critical wartime mission to the FTXs and STXs, which helps the commander and staff plan training. Figure 3-5 shows an example mission outline for the task force.

**BATTALION TASK FORCE TRAINING PLAN
OFFENSE
FTX
Conduct Offensive Operations
07-1-E0001**

| STX Attack a Stationary Force 07-1-E0002 | STX Conduct a Movement to Contact 07-1-E0003 | STX Conduct a Raid 07-1-E0004 | (continued) | | |
|--|--|--|--|----------------------------------|---|
| Plan Operations Using the MDMP 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP 07-1-5189 | Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) 07-1-1207 | Conduct Consolidation 07-1-5036 | Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) 07-1-1207 |
| Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB 07-1-2009 | Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB 07-1-2009 | Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB 07-1-2009 | Occupy an Assembly Area 07-1-5180 | Conduct Reorganization 07-1-5081 | Occupy an Assembly Area 07-1-5180 |
| Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB 07-1-2018 | Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB 07-1-2018 | Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB 07-1-2018 | Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) 07-1-1207 | | Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) 07-1-1207 |
| Evaluate the Enemy during IPB 07-1-2054 | Evaluate the Enemy during IPB 07-1-2054 | Evaluate the Enemy during IPB 07-1-2054 | Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force 07-1-1171 | | Conduct a Raid 07-1-1099 |
| Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB 07-1-2027 | Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB 07-1-2027 | Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB 07-1-2027 | Conduct Consolidation 07-1-5036 | | Conduct Consolidation 07-1-5036 |
| Develop a Reconnaissance and Surveillance Plan 07-1-2036 | Develop a Reconnaissance and Surveillance Plan 07-1-2036 | Develop a Reconnaissance and Surveillance Plan 07-1-2036 | Conduct Reorganization 07-1-5081 | | Conduct Reorganization 07-1-5081 |
| Execute the Targeting Process 07-1-3009 | Execute the Targeting Process 07-1-3009 | Execute the Targeting Process 07-1-3009 | | | |
| Prepare for Operations 07-1-5198 | Prepare for Operations 07-1-5198 | Prepare for Operations 07-1-5198 | | | |
| Conduct a Rehearsal 07-1-5000 | Conduct a Rehearsal 07-1-5000 | Conduct a Rehearsal 07-1-5000 | | | |
| Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) 07-1-1207 | Conduct a Movement to Conduct 07-1-1072 | Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) 07-1-1207 | | | |
| Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit 07-1-1081 | Fight a Meeting Engagement 07-1-1243 | Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit 07-1-1081 | | | |

Figure 3-5. Example mission outline.

CHAPTER 4

Training Exercises

NOTE: The CATS for your unit should be reviewed along with this chapter when developing training events. CATS provides more detailed information on time requirements, audience, and support requirements.

4-1. **General.** This chapter provides guidance to commanders and staff on planning, preparing, executing, and evaluating training exercises. The training exercises and graphics presented in this chapter are for *instructional purposes only*. Each command should develop training exercises to train their unit. This chapter supplements FMs 25-4 and 7-1 (25-101); and 25-series TCs (training circulars). Training exercises are used to train and practice the performance of collective tasks. This MTP describes how to develop two types of exercises: FTX and STX. Example exercises are included to assist the commander and staff in developing training exercises for their unit. Training exercises are numbered in accordance with (IAW) TRADOC Pam 350-70-1. (Table 4-1 shows how to number training exercises.)

| Exercise Number | Title |
|-----------------|--|
| FTX 71-1-E0001 | Conduct Combat Operations |
| STX 71-1-E0003 | Conduct a Movement to Contact |
| STX 71-1-E0004 | Conduct an Attack against a Stationary Force |
| STX 71-1-E0005 | Conduct a Defense |
| STX 71-1-E0006 | Conduct Security Operations in a Stability Environment |

Table 4-1. Exercises.

DANGER

SAFETY IS A MAJOR FACTOR IN TRAINING. SOLDIERS MUST REMAIN CONSTANTLY ALERT FOR AND AVOID SITUATIONS THAT COULD HURT OR KILL THEMSELVES OR OTHERS. FOR EXAMPLE EACH SOLDIER MUST--

- **ENSURE THAT CARGO HATCHES ARE LOCKED.**
- **NEVER GRAB THE HOT BARREL OF A MACHINE GUN.**
- **KNOW HIS LOCATION AND THAT OF HIS BUDDY (LIVE-FIRE EXERCISES).**
- **TRIPLE-CHECK ALL MORTAR FIRING DATA (CHECK, CHECK A SECOND TIME, CHECK A THIRD TIME--NO EXCEPTIONS!)**

- 4-2. **Field Training Exercise.** An FTX is a high-cost, high-overhead exercise conducted under simulated combat conditions in the field. The FTX supports training at TF, company, platoon, and staff section levels. FTXs fully integrate the total force in a realistic combat environment. An FTX involves combat arms, CS, and CSS units and encompass such training as battle drills, crew drills, and STXs to reinforce Soldier and collective training integration. They are used to train the commander, staff, subordinate units, and slice elements to conduct the following:
- Move and maneuver units realistically.
 - Employ organic weapons systems effectively.
 - Build teamwork and cohesion.
 - Plan and coordinate supporting fires.
 - Plan and coordinate logistical activities to support tactical operations.
- 4-3. **Situational Training Exercise.** An STX is a short, scenario-driven, mission-oriented, limited exercise designed to train one collective task or a group of related tasks or drills through practice. STXs teach the standard, preferred method for carrying out the task. They are more flexible than drills and usually include drills, leader tasks, and Soldier tasks. STXs may be modified, based on the unit METL, or expanded to meet special mission requirements. STXs support training at company, platoon, and staff section levels.
- 4-4. **Exercise Plans.**
- a. **Conduct Analysis.**
 - (1) Determine the need for training exercises and identify the types to be used. The need for an exercise is based upon the following:
 - (a) Higher headquarters' analysis of subordinate unit proficiency.
 - (b) Higher headquarters' issuance of the missions, goals, objectives, and guidance.
 - (c) Commanders' evaluations of unit and Soldier proficiency.

- (d) METL.
- (2) Consider the principles of training established in FM 7-1 (25-101).
- (3) Establish the training requirements and the priorities for unit training programs.
- (4) Determine the training objectives, which are based on the individual and collective skills, that need initial or sustainment training.
 - (a) Exercise objectives should be specific, relevant, realistically obtainable, measurable, and supportive of exercise goals.
 - (b) Exercise objectives should be organized into functional areas to highlight activities that need improvement.
 - (c) Properly stated objectives provide evaluators with a solid basis for conducting their evaluation and AARs.

NOTE: When the exercise objectives are established, the type of exercise to be conducted can be selected.

b. **Select the Type of Exercise.**

- (1) Determine the type of exercises to be conducted by comparing the objectives with the kind of training that each exercise provides.
- (2) Identify the proper exercise, within resource constraints, that can best meet the objectives.

c. **Consider Applicable Factors.**

(1) **Flexibility.**

- (a) Plan for alternate types of exercises in case weather or other constraints prohibit the originally scheduled exercise.
- (b) Exercises should allow subordinate commanders the freedom to innovate within the framework of doctrine, tactics, techniques, and operating procedures.
- (c) Exercises should not follow rigid timetables that inhibit training and learning. Instead, they should establish schedules that provide sufficient time to correct mistakes and ensure learning and AARs at all levels.

(2) **Resources.**

- (a) *Facilities and Land.* Planners must consider the environment for the exercise and the impact of weather. If inadequate land facilities will seriously degrade training, planners may have to alter the exercises.
- (b) *Support.* Planners must ensure that the exercises can be conducted within the resource levels and that the training received justifies the resources expended. Communications and transportation for participants and evaluators must be adequate. Units, including headquarters, should use only the transportation, communications, and equipment authorized by their table of organization and equipment (TOE) or modified table of organization and equipment (MTOE).
- (c) *Time.* For each exercise, subordinate elements must allocate time to conduct troop-leading procedures as well as develop tactical situations that lead to logical and sound tactical employment of player units. Time must be allocated for conducting complete logistical support of tactical operations. Time must be allocated so that a thorough AAR can be conducted.
- (d) *Participants.*
- (e) *Pre-Exercise Plans.* Planners must consider whether or not units or groups of individuals to be trained are of the proper size or strength to benefit from the type of exercise selected. Planning begins immediately after the decision has been made to conduct an exercise. The planning steps listed below are used to prepare for an exercise. Specific exercises may omit some steps. These steps are generally sequential; however, some may be performed simultaneously.
 - Preparing an exercise directive.
 - Assigning responsibilities for planning.
 - Conducting research.
 - Preparing a supporting plan schedule.
 - Preparing an outline plan.
 - Conducting a reconnaissance.

- Completing the exercise support plans.
 - Preparing the scenario.
 - Preparing and issuing the operation plan (OPLAN) or OPORD.
 - Publishing the memorandum of instruction (MOI).
 - Preparing the terrain.
- (12) Conducting a rehearsal.
- d. **Develop the Exercise.**
- (1) **Exercise Format.** Formats for FTXs and STXs are generally the same. Table 4-2 shows the FTX format; and Table 4-3 shows the STX format. Each table also shows the purpose of each component.
- (2) **Example Training Exercises.** These start on page 4-8.

| | |
|----------------------|--|
| Heading | Identify the proponent, type, title of exercise, and number. |
| Objective | Describe "who" and "what" the exercise is designed to train. |
| Interface | Provide a list of the next higher echelon FTX(s) and the supporting elements or units STX(s). |
| Training Enhancers | Provide specific information for using the FTX for training and provide a sample scenario for training. |
| General Situation | Provide general information concerning the unit and its training environment. |
| Special Situation | Provide specific information from higher headquarters or the unit's commander. |
| Support Requirements | Provide a listing of those items required to conduct the exercise. If it is a battalion TF or higher echelon MTP, the support requirements would be a statement that says the support requirements are the consolidated requirements of the battalion TF headquarters and all its subordinate units. |
| T&EO Sequence | Provide a listing of T&EO task titles in the chronological sequence in which they are executed in the course of the exercise. |

Table 4-2. FTX format.

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| Heading | Identify the proponent, type, title of exercise, and number. |
| Objective | Describe "who" and "what" the exercise is designed to train. |
| Interface | Provide a list of titles and identify the applicable supporting STX (company for battalion TF MTP and platoon for company MTP) and supporting subordinate unit's drills (platoon for company MTP and squad for platoon MTP). Include habitually attached, supported, and supporting unit's STXs, if available, which may be trained in conjunction with this STX. |
| Training | Provide leader training information and training tips. Provide specific information for using the STX for training and provide a sample scenario for training. |
| General Situation | Provide general information concerning the unit and its training environment. |
| Special Situation | Provide sample fragmentary order (FRAGO) from unit commander. Provide specific information required for the exercise from higher headquarters not given in the FRAGO |
| Support Requirements | Provide a listing of those items required to conduct the exercise. |
| T&EO Sequence | Provide a listing of T&EO task titles in the chronological sequence in which they are executed in the course of the exercise. |

Table 4-3. STX format.

TANK AND INFANTRY BATTALION TASK FORCE FTX**71-1-E0001****Conduct Combat Operations**

1. **Objective.** Within the context of this MTP, the primary objective of this FTX is to train the TF in the conduct of combat operations. It provides the TF commander, company commanders, and staff the opportunity to practice planning, preparing, executing, and assessing combat operations. This FTX is designed as a free-play, force-on-force exercise that provides a flexible training vehicle for training critical METL tasks.

NOTE: The specific sequence of events will vary with the actions of the OPFOR and TF commander's training objectives. The TF commander will modify the sequence of events through his selection of primary and supporting events to meet his specific training objectives.

2. **Interface.** This FTX supports the higher headquarters FTX 07-6-E0001, Conduct Combat Operations. The following STXs support this FTX:

- STX 71-1-E0002, Plan Operations using the MDMP.
- STX 71-1-E0003, Conduct a Movement to Contact.
- STX 71-1-E0004, Conduct an Attack against a Stationary Force.
- STX 71-1-E0005, Conduct a Defense.
- Company FTXs and STXs and by platoon STXs.

3. **Training Enhancers.** In preparing the TF to conduct a FTX, the TF commander and his staff must first assess Soldier, leader, and unit proficiency in accomplishing their METL. This will provide the basis to identify areas on which to concentrate future training. Since this is a high-cost exercise, extensive planning and preparation are required to ensure the exercise training objectives are met. The same enemy controllers and OPFOR should be used in both the practice exercises and for the actual FTX. The TF commander and staff can develop and conduct the initial or needed training to attain proficiency in designated areas before the FTX.

- a. **Training Tips.**

- (1) The conduct of the exercise should be continuous with AARs focusing on strengths, weaknesses, safety, and controlling unnecessary maneuver damage.
- (2) Normal attachments and DS elements (field artillery, engineers) should participate in the exercise.
- (3) The OPFOR must be trained in enemy defensive doctrine.
- (4) OPFOR personnel should participate in AARs.
- (5) Trained personnel should act as enemy prisoners of war (EPW).
- (6) NBC and electronic warfare (EW) should be integrated throughout the exercise.

- b. **Soldier Training.**

- (1) Review TF's tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP) to make sure Soldiers are familiar with and thoroughly understand TSOP items pertinent to the exercise.
- (2) Review Soldier familiarity with the training environment.

- c. **Matrix.** The TF and subordinate element commanders can use the MTP Mission to Collective Tasks Matrix in Chapter 2 as a resource to identify and train leader tasks for the selected T&EOs. Leader training in preparation for this FTX should include exercises in planning, coordinating, executing, and assessing combat operations. The following can be used to facilitate training:

- (1) *MAPEXs Combined with Sand Table Exercise.* The map and sand table should match the training terrain. The MAPEX allows leaders to analyze terrain and make tentative plans for the FTX. The sand table gives them a chance to demonstrate their knowledge of critical tasks through use of 'micro' vehicles and equipment or walk-through techniques.

- (2) *TEWT or Terrain-Walk*. These provide the leaders with training in terrain analysis and emplacement of weapons. The commander, based on the tactical scenario developed, may or may not allow leaders to reconnoiter the actual terrain on which the FTX will be conducted.
 - (3) *Alert and Deployment SOPs*. Familiarity with established alert and deployment procedures will facilitate smooth transition into the maneuver phase of this FTX.
 - (4) *Communications Exercise*. Conducted during initial familiarity session, this exercise will be dependent on location of the TF tactical operations center (TOC). Radio check and COMEX should be conducted to test communications systems, Army Battle Command System (ABCS) architecture (if digital equipped), and to review analog and digital transmission procedures.
- d. **Unit Training.**
- (1) Conduct collective task sustainment training on the collective tasks that will be specifically trained during this FTX. Before conducting the FTX, units should conduct rehearsals to prepare for the mission.
 - (2) The commander tailors the initial training scenario and plan for the FTX. Since this is an FTX contained in an MTP, it is by definition more abstract than a Training Support Package (TSP) grounded in and tied to a specific piece of terrain or form of simulation.
4. **General Situation.**
- a. First Brigade, 51st Armored Division continues to conduct tactical operations against Wadiland forces. The Brigade is occupying a tactical assembly area (TAA) with two heavy TFs and a light IN Battalion. The Brigade has received an order to locate and defeat a bypassed Motorized Rifle Company (MRC) that is part of the 821 Motorized Rifle Regiment (MRR). Brigade issues a FRAGO to Task Force 4-5, Mechanized to conduct a movement to contact NLT _____ to find and defeat the MRC.
 - b. This exercise is conducted under all environmental conditions and during both day and night operations. The TF headquarters is operating in an arid environment. The TF headquarters will operate under threat of NBC attacks, attacks by ground or air, indirect fire, and EW.
5. **Special Situation.** The TF commander and staff begin planning and preparing for operation. The objective is to train to the standards published in this MTP and not to time.
6. **Support Requirements.** The support requirements for the FTX are the consolidated requirements for the TF headquarters and all its subordinate elements. (See Table 4-4 for an example list of consolidated support requirements.) Support requirements include the following:
- a. All TOE equipment-readiness code (ERC) A items.
 - b. When conducting a TF-level internal training exercise, the TF commander and XO are the trainers and evaluators, but they may need additional assets from the Brigade to support the FTX. Evaluators at each echelon, down to and including squads and sections, should be allocated to assist the TF commander in evaluating the FTX. Each evaluator should be supported by an evaluation plan to guide his actions during the exercise and support the TF commander's overall evaluation plan. Evaluators must position themselves to monitor all company and platoon activities as well as the actions and communications of the TF staff.
 - c. Vehicles and communications support for evaluators and OPFOR.
 - d. Designated medical evacuation vehicles with communications and medical personnel support.
 - e. Classes of supply I through V, VIII, and IX in sufficient quantities to support the FTX (friendly, evaluator, and OPFOR).
 - f. Company-size forces should oppose maneuver TFs. Platoon-sized forces should oppose maneuver companies. A reinforced squad can support special events such as ambushes. The OPFOR should be equipped with vehicles that realistically simulate enemy mobility capabilities. Ideally, the OPFOR will be equipped with modification kits that suggest the appearance and silhouette of enemy combat equipment.
 - g. A training area large enough to support TF maneuver is required.

7. **Training and Evaluation Outlines.** Training and evaluation outlines used to evaluate the training exercise are listed in the sequence they will occur during the exercise. Table 4-5 shows an example list of T&EOs.
8. **Assessments.** Evaluators assess planning, preparation, and execution of tasks based on the standards in Chapter 5 of this MTP.

| Ammunition | DODAC | Requirement |
|---|--------------|--------------------------------|
| 5.56 mm | 1305AO80 | 120 rounds for each rifle |
| 7.62 mm | 1305AIII | 600 rounds for each M240 |
| 5.56 mm | 1305AO75 | 600 rounds for each SAW |
| Hand grenade body, M69 | 133OG811 | 4 for each rifleman |
| Hand grenade fuse (practice) | 133OG878 | 4 for each rifleman |
| Simulator, projectile, ground burst, M115A2 | 137OL594 | 30 for each company |
| Simulator, hand grenade, M116 | 137OL601 | 30 for each company |
| Batteries | | |
| BA 200 (6-volt) | | 24 for each company |
| BA 3M (9-volt) | | 300 for each company |
| MILES Equipment | | |
| M16 system | | 1 per M16 (include OPFOR) |
| M240 machine gun system | | 1 per M240 (include OPFOR) |
| Controller guns | | 4 (3ea for OCs, 1ea for OPFOR) |
| Small arms alignment fixture | | 4 (3ea for OCs, 1ea for OPFOR) |

Table 4-4. Consolidated support requirements.

| Task Title | Task Number |
|--|--------------------|
| Plan Operations Using the MDMP | 07-1-5189 |
| Contact Tactical Movement (Mounted) | 07-1-1207 |
| Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit | 07-1-1081 |
| Conduct a Movement to Contact | 07-1-1072 |
| Conduct an Attack against a Stationary Force | 07-1-1171 |
| Conduct Consolidation | 07-1-5036 |
| Conduct Reorganization | 07-1-5081 |
| Conduct a Defense | 07-1-1027 |

Table 4-5. Example list of training and evaluation outlines.

TANK AND INFANTRY BATTALION TASK FORCE STX

71-1-E0003

Conduct a Movement to Contact

1. **Objective.** This example STX is designed to train TF collective, leader, and individual tasks that support the TF's operation, Conduct a Movement to Contact. This STX provides the TF commander, staff, and leaders with practice in planning, coordinating, executing, controlling, and assessing combat operations.
2. **Interface.** This STX supports higher headquarters STX 07-6-E0003, *Conduct a Movement to Contact*.
3. **Training.** The trainer should review the individual, leader, and collective tasks that are performed during execution of the STX. Determine which tasks may require initial or refresher training. The time to plan and develop the order is not contained in this STX. The staff can develop the OPLAN or OPORD in a separate MAPEX or CPX.
 - a. **Guidance.**
 - (1) **Individual Training.** Focus on the SM tasks required to support this STX. The Individual-to-Collective Task Matrix in Chapter 2 should be used as a source for these individual tasks. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess Soldier proficiency by evaluating task performance against the SM standards and provide feedback to the Soldiers.
 - (2) **Collective Training.** Focus on collective tasks required for this STX. The Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix in Chapter 2 and supporting collective task from Chapter 5 are a source for applicable collective tasks.
 - (3) **Leader Training.** Focus on planning and command and control tasks as well as the leader steps in each applicable T&EO.
 - b. **Tips.**
 - (1) Review the standards and critical steps from the T&EO for each task that supports this STX.
 - (2) Conduct a leader's reconnaissance of the training area with subordinate leaders to ensure that you do not make time-consuming mistakes.
 - (3) MILES provides better feedback and should be used.
 - (4) Prepare to conduct the exercise under all environmental conditions, both day and night, with or without NBC.
 - (5) Conduct a rehearsal.
 - c. **Instructions for using the STX.**
 - (1) This STX should be initially trained and rehearsed slowly, on open terrain, during good visibility, and with frequent explanations and critiques by leaders. This constitutes the "crawl" stage of STX training.
 - (2) Read and assimilate the scenario material.
 - (3) Locate and identify terrain that supports your unit's training requirement.
 - (4) Tailor the level of difficulty appropriate to the training unit.
 - d. **Example Scenario.** (Table 4-6 is a listing of events with time required to accomplish each.)
 - (1) **Mission.** Task Force 4-5, Mechanized has received a First Brigade FRAGO to conduct a movement to contact to locate a bypassed reinforced MRC to prevent it from blocking First Brigade's lines of communications (LOCs). Task Force 4-5, Mechanized has a be-prepared mission to attack and destroy the MRC after it is located.
 - (2) **Summary of the Enemy Situation.** Enemy forces in Task Force 4-5, Mechanized area of interest consist of a reinforced MRC that is acting as the security force for the 821 MRR. The bypassed company is consolidated between the line of departure (LD) and line of contact (LC) and phase line (PL) QUAIL. Its most probable course of action will be to attempt to establish a cohesive defense in our sector in order to block the Brigade's LOC in the north part of the Brigade zone. Squad size security outpost will be established forward

of the main defensive belt in order to provide the company with earlier warning and indirect fire against our TF. The exact location of the enemy company and outpost are unknown at this time.

| Sequence | Event | Estimated Time (Hours) |
|----------|---|------------------------|
| 1 | Conduct Necessary Planning | 2 |
| 2 | Conduct a Rehearsal | 2 |
| 3 | Prepare for Operations | 1 |
| 4 | Conduct a Passage of Lines | 2 |
| 5 | Conduct a Movement to Conduct (using the appropriate technique) | 3 |
| 6 | Find the Enemy | |
| 7 | Fix, Contain, or Block the Enemy | |
| 8 | Execute Hasty Attack if Consistent with Commander's Intent | See STX 71-1-E0004 |

Table 4-6. Table of events and time.

4. **General Situation.** Task Force 4-5, Mechanized is occupying a TAA as part of the First Brigade and has received a FRAGO to conduct a movement to contact to find and be prepared to defeat a reinforced enemy MRC. The order includes all applicable overlays and graphics. Engineer and air defense support have been task organized to the TF by the Brigade. All necessary TF personnel and equipment are available. The TF has communications with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. The TF has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.
5. **Special Situation.** Task Force 4-5, Mechanized commander and staff developed an OPORD during a previous STX. The TF issues a FRAGO.

| |
|--|
| <p>FRAGMENTARY ORDER 01</p> <p>References: OPORD 07</p> <p>Map Series: V611, sheets 7061 & 7062, edition 1, scale 1:50,000</p> <p>Time Zone Used Throughout the Order: Local</p> <p>1. SITUATION. The enemy has employed chemical agents in the brigade sector.</p> <p>2. MISSION. No change.</p> <p>3. EXECUTION. No change.</p> <p>4. SERVICE SUPPORT. No change.</p> <p>5. COMMAND AND CONTROL. TF Main CP currently located at xxxxxxxxxx.</p> <p>ACKNOWLEDGE:</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Abner LTC</p> |
|--|

Figure 4-1. Fragmentary order.

6. **Support Requirements.** (See Table 4-7 for an example consolidated support requirements list.) Support requirements include the following:
- a. **Minimum Trainers and Evaluators.** The TF commander conducts this exercise. The TF XO, S3, command sergeant major (CSM), company commanders, and platoon leaders assist him. Company commanders and platoon leaders may act as observers and controllers for a sister element. Whichever method is chosen, all key leaders must attend an appropriate AAR.
 - b. **Opposing Force.** OPFOR should be used, if available, to add realism to the exercise. The trainer must develop an OPFOR scenario with specific actions that cause reactions from the friendly unit consistent with objectives and tasks.
 - c. **MILES.** MILES can provide realistic training. MILES keeps the STX from becoming a leader exercise. MILES is required in conjunction with an active OPFOR element.
 - d. **Standards.** Standards reviewed during leader preparation must be met during the STX. They should be covered in detail during the AARs. Standards that are not met should be annotated on the unit proficiency work sheet of each subordinate unit.
 - e. **Vehicles and Communications.** Use TF TOE or MTOE equipment.
 - f. **Training Area.** The training area should be large enough to allow the TF to maneuver.

| Ammunition | DODAC | Requirement |
|---|--------------|--------------------------------|
| 5.56 mm | 1305AO80 | 120 rounds for each rifle |
| 7.62 mm | 1305AIII | 600 rounds for each M240 |
| 5.56 mm | 1305AO75 | 600 rounds for each SAW |
| Hand grenade body, M69 | 133OG811 | 4 for each rifleman |
| Hand grenade fuse (practice) | 133OG878 | 4 for each rifleman |
| Simulator, projectile, ground burst, M115A2 | 137OL594 | 30 for each company |
| Simulator, hand grenade, M116 | 137OL601 | 30 for each company |
| Batteries | | |
| BA 200 (6-volt) | | 24 for each company |
| BA 3M (9-volt) | | 300 for each company |
| MILES Equipment | | |
| M16 system | | 1 per M16 (include OPFOR) |
| M240 machine gun system | | 1 per M240 (include OPFOR) |
| Controller guns | | 4 (3ea for OCs, 1ea for OPFOR) |
| Small arms alignment fixture | | 4 (3ea for OCs, 1ea for OPFOR) |

Table 4-7. Consolidated support requirements.

7. **Training and Evaluation Outlines.** Training and evaluation outlines used to evaluate the training exercise are listed in the sequence they will occur during the exercise. Table 4-8 shows an example list of T&EOs.

| Task Title | Task Number |
|--|--------------------|
| Prepare for Operations | 07-1-5198 |
| Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) | 07-1-1207 |
| Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit | 07-1-1081 |
| Conduct a Movement to Contact | 07-1-1072 |

Table 4-8. Training and evaluation outlines.

8. **Assessments.** Evaluators assess planning, preparation, and execution of tasks based on the standards in Chapter 5 of this MTP.

TANK AND MECHANIZED INFANTRY BATTALION TASK FORCE STX

71-1-E0004

Conduct an Attack against a Stationary Force

1. **Objective.** This example STX is designed to train TF collective, leader, and individual tasks that support the TF's operation, Conduct an Attack against a Stationary Force. This STX provides the TF commander, staff, and leaders with practice in planning, coordinating, executing, controlling, and assessing combat operations.
2. **Interface.** The company STX 71-2-E0004, Assault an Objective supports this STX, which in turn supports higher headquarters STX 07-6-E0004, Conduct an Attack.
3. **Training.** The trainer should review the individual, leader, and collective tasks that are performed during execution of the STX. Determine which tasks may require initial or refresher training. The time to plan and develop the order is not contained in this STX. The staff can develop the OPLAN or OPOD in a separate MAPEX or CPX.
 - a. **Guidance.**
 - (1) **Individual Training.** Focus on the SM tasks required to support this STX. The Individual-to-Collective Task Matrix in Chapter 2 should be used as a source for these individual tasks. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess Soldier proficiency by evaluating task performance against the SM standards and provide feedback to the Soldiers.
 - (2) **Collective Training.** Focus on collective tasks required for this STX. The Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix in Chapter 2 and supporting collective task from Chapter 5 are a source for applicable collective tasks.
 - (3) **Leader Training.** Focus on planning and command and control tasks as well as the leader steps in each applicable T&EO.
 - b. **Tips.**
 - (1) Review the standards and critical steps from the T&EO for each task that supports this STX.
 - (2) Conduct a leader's reconnaissance of the training area with subordinate leaders to ensure that you do not make time-consuming mistakes.
 - (3) MILES provides better feedback and should be used.
 - (4) Prepare to conduct the exercise under all environmental conditions, both day and night, with or without NBC.
 - (5) Conduct a rehearsal.
 - c. **Instructions for using the STX.**
 - (1) This STX should be initially trained and rehearsed slowly, on open terrain, during good visibility, and with frequent explanations and critiques by leaders. This constitutes the "crawl" stage of STX training.
 - (2) Read and assimilate the scenario material.
 - (3) Locate and identify terrain that supports your unit's training requirement.
 - (4) Tailor the level of difficulty appropriate to the training unit.
 - d. **Example Scenario.** Task Force 4-5, Mechanized has executed a movement to contact to find a reinforced MRC from the 821 MRR. Task Force 4-5, Mechanized reconnaissance assets have located the MRC. (See Table 4-9 for an example listing of events and time required to accomplish each.)
 - (1) **Mission.** Task Force 4-5, Mechanized has received a FRAGO to conduct a night attack to defeat the MRC located VIC GG041756 not later than (NLT) _____.
 - (2) **Summary of the Enemy Situation.** The MRC from the 821 MRR has been located in prepared defensive positions VIC GG041756. The company's most probable course of action is to establish a cohesive defense to block Brigade LOCs.

| Sequence | Event | Estimated Time (Hours) |
|----------|----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 | Conduct Necessary Planning | 2 |
| 2 | Conduct a Rehearsal | 2 |
| 3 | Prepare for Operations | 1 |
| 4 | Conduct Tactical Movement | 2 |
| 5 | Conduct an Attack | 6 |
| 6 | Consolidate | 30 min |
| 7 | Reorganize | 1 |

Table 4-9. Table of events and time.

4. **General Situation.** First Brigade continues offensive operations against Wadiland forces. Brigade forces have penetrated the first defensive belt of 821 MRR. However, based upon the extensive enemy obstacles and massive enemy indirect fires, the momentum of the Brigade attack has slowed. Intelligence assets from Task Force 4-5, Mechanized have identified the location of the bypassed reinforced MRC blocking LOCs in the Brigade's northern sector. The Brigade commander is concerned that MRC will restrict his freedom of movement and further slow his attack. Task Force 4-5, Mechanized has received brigade FRAGO 2, directing them to conduct a night attack to destroy the reinforced MRC to keep it from blocking the Brigade's LOCs. The TF has an engineer platoon, an air defense platoon, and a military intelligence team (ground surveillance radar [GSR]) in direct support (DS). All necessary TF personnel and equipment are available. The TF has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The TF has been provided guidance on the ROE and ROI. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.
5. **Special Situation.** The TF commander and staff developed an OPORD during a previous STX. The TF issues a FRAGO.

| |
|--|
| <p>FRAGMENTARY ORDER 02</p> <p>References: OPORD 07</p> <p>Map Series: V611, sheets 7061 & 7062, edition 1, scale 1:50,000</p> <p>Time Zone Used Throughout the Order: Local</p> <p>1. SITUATION. No change.</p> <p>2. MISSION. No change.</p> <p>3. EXECUTION. No change.</p> <p>4. SERVICE SUPPORT. No change.</p> <p>5. COMMAND AND CONTROL. TF Main CP currently located at xxxxxxxxx.</p> <p>ACKNOWLEDGE:</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Abner LTC</p> |
|--|

Figure 4-2. Fragmentary order.

6. **Support Requirements.** (See Table 4-10 for an example consolidated support requirements list.) Support requirements include the following:
- a. **Minimum Trainers and Evaluators.** The TF commander conducts this exercise. The TF XO, S3, command sergeant major (CSM), company commanders, and platoon leaders assist him. Company commanders and platoon leaders may act as observers/controllers for a sister element. Whichever method is chosen, all key leaders must attend an appropriate AAR.
 - b. **Opposing Force.** OPFOR should be used, if available, to add realism to the exercise. The trainer must develop an OPFOR scenario with specific actions that cause reactions from the friendly unit consistent with objectives and tasks.
 - c. **MILES.** MILES can provide realistic training. MILES keeps the STX from becoming a leader exercise. MILES is required in conjunction with an active OPFOR element.
 - d. **Standards.** Standards reviewed during leader preparation must be met during the STX. They should be covered in detail during the AARs. Standards that are not met should be annotated on the unit proficiency work sheet of each subordinate unit.
 - e. **Vehicles and Communications.** Use TF TOE or MTOE equipment.
 - f. **Training Area.** The training area should be big enough to allow the TF to maneuver.

| Ammunition | DODAC | Requirement |
|---|--------------|--------------------------------|
| 5.56 mm | 1305AO80 | 120 rounds for each rifle |
| 7.62 mm | 1305AIII | 600 rounds for each M240 |
| 5.56 mm | 1305AO75 | 600 rounds for each SAW |
| Hand grenade body, M69 | 133OG811 | 4 for each rifleman |
| Hand grenade fuse (practice) | 133OG878 | 4 for each rifleman |
| Simulator, projectile, ground burst, M115A2 | 137OL594 | 30 for each company |
| Simulator, hand grenade, M116 | 137OL601 | 30 for each company |
| Batteries | | |
| BA 200 (6-volt) | | 24 for each company |
| BA 3M (9-volt) | | 300 for each company |
| MILES Equipment | | |
| M16 system | | 1 per M16 (include OPFOR) |
| M240 machine gun system | | 1 per M240 (include OPFOR) |
| Controller guns | | 4 (3ea for OCs, 1ea for OPFOR) |
| Small arms alignment fixture | | 4 (3ea for OCs, 1ea for OPFOR) |

Table 4-10. Consolidated support requirements.

7. **Training and Evaluation Outlines.** Training and evaluation outlines used to evaluate the training exercise are listed in the sequence they will occur during the exercise. Table 4-11 shows an example list of T&EOs.

| Task Title | Task Number |
|--|--------------------|
| Prepare for Operations | 07-1-5198 |
| Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) | 07-1-1207 |
| Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force | 07-1-1171 |
| Conduct Consolidation | 07-1-5036 |
| Conduct Reorganization | 07-1-5081 |

Table 4-11. T&EOs.

8. **Assessments.** Evaluators assess planning, preparation, and execution of tasks based on the standards in Chapter 5 of this MTP.

TANK AND MECHANIZED INFANTRY BATTALION TASK FORCE STX**71-1-E0005****Conduct a Defense**

1. **Objective.** This example STX is designed to train TF collective, leader, and individual tasks that support the TF's operation, Conduct a Defense. This STX provides the TF commander, staff, and leaders with practice in planning, coordinating, executing, controlling, and assessing combat operations.
2. **Interface.** The company STX 71-2-E0005, Conduct a Defense, supports this STX, which in turn supports higher headquarters STX 07-6-E0005, Conduct a Defense.
3. **Training.** The trainer should review the individual, leader, and collective tasks that are performed during execution of the STX. Determine which tasks may require initial or refresher training. The time to plan and develop the order is not contained in this STX. The staff can develop the OPLAN or OPORD in a separate MAPEX or CPX.
 - a. **Guidance.**
 - (1) **Individual Training.** Focus on the SM tasks required to support this STX. The Individual-to-Collective Task Matrix in Chapter 2 should be used as a source for these individual tasks. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess Soldier proficiency by evaluating task performance against the Soldier's manual standards and provide feedback to the Soldiers.
 - (2) **Collective Training.** Focus on collective tasks required for this STX. The Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix in Chapter 2 and supporting collective task from Chapter 5 are a source for applicable collective tasks.
 - (3) **Leader Training.** Focus on planning and command and control tasks as well as the leader steps in each applicable T&EO.
 - b. **Tips.**
 - (1) Review the standards and critical steps from the T&EO for each task that supports this STX.
 - (2) Conduct a leader's reconnaissance of the training area with subordinate leaders to ensure that you do not make time-consuming mistakes.
 - (3) MILES provides better feedback and should be used.
 - (4) Prepare to conduct the exercise under all environmental conditions, both day and night, with or without NBC.
 - (5) Conduct a rehearsal.
 - c. **Instructions for using the STX.**
 - (1) This STX should be initially trained and rehearsed slowly, on open terrain, during good visibility, and with frequent explanations and critiques by leaders. This constitutes the "crawl" stage of STX training.
 - (2) Read and assimilate the scenario material.
 - (3) Locate and identify terrain that supports you unit's training requirement.
 - (4) Tailor the level of difficulty appropriate to the training unit.
 - d. **Example Scenario.** (Table 4-12 lists events and the times required to accomplish each.)
 - (1) Task Force 4-5, Mechanized was successful in finding and defeating the MRC. They have been directed to establish and occupy defensive positions within their designated area. TF security operations have commenced.
 - (2) Summary of the enemy situation. First Brigade, 51st Armored Division has defeated 821st MRR. Elements of the 84th Tank Division, an Army Reserve force, have been delayed by the division's deep battle effort. However, it appears that the 84th will counterattack within 24 hours into First Brigade's sector. Lead elements of the 84th, the 44th Tank Battalion, have penetrated a seam in the East between TF 3-66, Armored, and Second Brigade of the 54th Mechanized Division. The 44th Tank Battalion's most probable course of action is

to continue to attack with at least two companies attempting to cut brigade LOCs from east to west to support the 84th attack against First Brigade.

| Sequence | Event | Estimated Time (Hours) |
|----------|--|------------------------|
| 1 | Conduct Reconnaissance and Security Operations | 2 |
| 2 | Conduct Tactical Movement | 2 |
| 3 | Reconnoiter | 1 |
| 4 | Conduct After Action Review (AAR) | 1 |
| 5 | Prepare Battle Positions | 6 |
| 6 | Occupy Battle Positions | 1 |
| 7 | Defend | As directed |
| 8 | AAR | 2 |

Table 4-12. Table of events and time.

4. **General Situation.** The TF, operating as part of the First Brigade, has been successful in defeating enemy first echelon forces and is directed to transition to the defense. The TF is expecting an attack by elements of an enemy Battalion's follow-on force within 24 hours.
5. **Special Situation.** The TF commander and staff developed an OPORD during a previous STX. The TF issues a FRAGO.

| |
|---|
| <p>FRAGMENTARY ORDER 03</p> <p>References: OPORD 08</p> <p>Map Series: V611, sheets 7061 & 7062, edition 1, scale 1:50,000</p> <p>Time Zone Used Throughout the Order: Local</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. SITUATION. The enemy has increased his rate of march and is expected in the TF's AO within 18 hours. 2. MISSION. No change. 3. EXECUTION. No change. 4. SERVICE SUPPORT. No change. 5. COMMAND AND CONTROL. TF Main CP currently located at xxxxxxxxxx. <p>ACKNOWLEDGE:</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Abner LTC</p> |
|---|

Figure 4-3. Fragmentary order.

6. **Support Requirements.** (Table 4-13 shows an example consolidated support requirements list.) Support requirements include the following:
- a. **Minimum Trainers and Evaluators.** The TF commander conducts this exercise. The TF XO, S3, CSM, company TM commanders, and platoon leaders assist him. Company TM commanders and platoon leaders may act as observers/controllers for a sister element. Whichever method is chosen, all key leaders must attend an appropriate AAR.
 - b. **Opposing Force.** OPFOR should be used, if available, to add realism to the exercise. The trainer must develop an OPFOR scenario with specific actions that cause reactions from the friendly unit consistent with objectives and tasks.
 - c. **MILES.** MILES can provide realistic training. MILES keeps the STX from becoming a leader exercise. MILES is required in conjunction with an active OPFOR element.
 - d. **Standards.** Standards reviewed during leader preparation must be met during the STX. They should be covered in detail during the AARs. Standards that are not met should be annotated on the unit proficiency work sheet of each subordinate unit.
 - e. **Vehicles and Communications.** Use TF TOE or MTOE equipment.
 - f. **Training Area.** The training area should be big enough to allow the TF to maneuver.

| Ammunition | DODAC | Requirement |
|---|--------------|--------------------------------|
| 5.56 mm | 1305AO80 | 120 rounds for each rifle |
| 7.62 mm | 1305AIII | 600 rounds for each M240 |
| 5.56 mm | 1305AO75 | 600 rounds for each SAW |
| Hand grenade body, M69 | 133OG811 | 4 for each rifleman |
| Hand grenade fuse (practice) | 133OG878 | 4 for each rifleman |
| Simulator, projectile, ground burst, M115A2 | 137OL594 | 30 for each company |
| Simulator, hand grenade, M116 | 137OL601 | 30 for each company |
| Batteries | | |
| BA 200 (6-volt) | | 24 for each company |
| BA 3M (9-volt) | | 300 for each company |
| MILES Equipment | | |
| M16 system | | 1 per M16 (include OPFOR) |
| M240 machine gun system | | 1 per M240 (include OPFOR) |
| Controller guns | | 4 (3ea for OCs, 1ea for OPFOR) |
| Small arms alignment fixture | | 4 (3ea for OCs, 1ea for OPFOR) |

Table 4-13. Consolidated support requirements.

7. **Training and Evaluation Outlines.** Training and evaluation outlines used to evaluate the training exercise are listed in the sequence they will occur during the exercise. Table 4-14 shows an example list of T&EOs.

| Task Title | Task Number |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------|
| Prepare for Operations | 07-1-5198 |
| Conduct a Rehearsal | 07-1-5000 |
| Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) | 07-1-1207 |
| Employ Fire Support | 07-1-3000 |
| Conduct a Defense | 07-1-1027 |

Table 4-14. T&EOs.

8. **Assessments.** Evaluators assess planning, preparation, and execution of tasks based on the standards in Chapter 5 of this MTP. The following is an example of an STX planned for a stability environment. This STX was not developed to support the above FTX:

TANK AND MECHANIZED INFANTRY BATTALION TASK FORCE STX

71-1-E0006

Conduct Security Operations in a Stability Environment

1. **Objective.** This example STX is designed to train TF collective, leader, and individual tasks that support the TF operations in a stability environment. This STX provides the TF commander, staff, and leaders practice in planning, preparing, executing, and assessing operations in a stability environment.
2. **Interface.** This STX supports the higher headquarters STX 07-6-E0006, Conduct Security Operations in a Stability Environment.
3. **Training.** The trainer should review the individual, leader, and collective tasks that are performed during execution of the STX. Determine which tasks may require initial or refresher training. The time to plan and develop the order is not contained in this STX. The TF staff can develop the OPLAN or OPOD in a separate MAPEX or CPX.
 - a. **Guidance.**
 - (1) **Individual Training.** Focus on the SM tasks required to support this STX. The Individual-to-Collective Task Matrix in Chapter 2 should be used as a source for these individual tasks. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess Soldier proficiency by evaluating task performance against the Soldier's manual standards and provide feedback to the Soldiers.
 - (2) **Collective Training.** Focus on collective tasks required for this STX. The Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix in Chapter 2 and supporting collective tasks from Chapter 5 are a source for applicable collective tasks.
 - (3) **Leader Training.** Focus on planning and command and control tasks as well as the leader step in each applicable T&EO.
 - b. **Tips.**
 - (1) Review the standards and critical steps from the T&EO for each task that supports this STX.
 - (2) Conduct a leader's reconnaissance of the training area with subordinate leaders to ensure that you do not make time-consuming mistakes.
 - (3) MILES provides better feedback and should be used.
 - (4) Prepare to conduct the exercise under all environmental conditions, both day and night, with or without NBC.
 - (5) Conduct a rehearsal.
 - c. **Instructions for using the STX.**
 - (1) The STX initially should be trained and rehearsed slowly, on open terrain, during good visibility, and with frequent explanations and critiques by leaders. This constitutes the "crawl" stage of STX training.
 - (2) Read and assimilate the scenario material.
 - (3) Locate and identify terrain that supports your unit's training requirement.
 - (4) Tailor the level of difficulty appropriate to the training unit.
 - d. **Example Scenario.** (Table 4-15 is a listing of events with time required to accomplish each.)
 - (1) **Summary of the Enemy Situation.**
 - (a) **Background.** The United States has a treaty agreement with the Checkers Republic (that declares the US intent to support any newly elected democratic government with both economic and military aid. In a recent election, the citizens of Checkers turned out the leadership of the Checkers Patriotic Front (CPF) by electing a new Prime Minister and cabinet pledging democratic reform within the country. The election, monitored by international observers, was very close with the winner managing only 53 percent of the popular vote. As a result, disgruntled supporters of the losing party have taken to the streets in various cities throughout the country. Some elements of

the CPF have refused to accept the election results and have threatened violence if a new election is not held within one month. Other factions within the country are politically, ethnically, and religiously allied with neighboring Chess whose totalitarian regime had been strongly influencing the CPF during the past decade. The government of Chess worked in vain to prevent the election of the democratic government now in power--a government they deemed to be more aligned with western democratic nations and far less favorable to their country's interests.

- (b) *History.* The Checkers Republic and Chess have been belligerents for almost 200 years, actually going to war some 85 years ago. While the two countries have many citizens who share a common religion and ethnic background, the governments of the two nations have chosen different economic and social paths as emerging nations. The current border between the two countries, set by international agreement and arbitration after the last war in 1915, has been a source of conflict and disagreement for more than 85 years. The Mongrel Republic, the country bordering the Checker Republic on the north, has generally remained neutral during past disagreements between the Checkers Republic and the Chess, but they have made no secret of their desire to possess a critical natural resource available only in northeast Checkers.
 - (c) *Belligerent Forces.* There are two: Checkers Army, paramilitary forces, and religious, political, and other factions. Chess: Army and paramilitary forces.
 - (d) *Composition.* The Checker Army is at 70 percent strength. The Chess Army is at 80 percent strength. The paramilitary forces from both countries operate without a clearly defined order of battle but can be expected to fight in squad- to platoon-size groups. Paramilitary forces are well armed and normally operate dismounted; however, some elements are equipped with armored vehicles acquired from different countries.
 - (e) *Recent Activities:* Paramilitary forces from Checkers threatened that a defeat of the CPF in the recent election might trigger wide-scale violence and the use of a biological agent to poison the water supply throughout the country.
- (2) **Concept.** Task Force 4-5, Mechanized will conduct any or all of the following tasks, on order (O/O), to establish and maintain stability in the area of operations (AO):
- (a) Conduct intelligence-gathering activities.
 - (b) Establish a quick reaction force (QRF) to respond to sites of civil disturbance.
 - (c) Man observation posts (OPs).
 - (d) Man checkpoints and roadblocks.
 - (e) Conduct patrols.
 - (f) Provide escorts for military and civilian movements as required.
 - (g) Secure selected sites (voting sites, refugee camps, schools, churches, and so forth).
 - (h) Enforce curfews.
 - (i) Stabilize areas that have escalating tension.
 - (j) Open and secure routes as required.
 - (k) Conduct weapons site inspections as required.

| Sequence | Event | Estimated Time (Hours) |
|----------|----------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 | Prepare for Operations | 1 |
| 2 | Rehearse QRF Actions | 2 |
| 3 | Issue A FRAGO for an O/O Mission | 15 min |
| 4 | Provide C2 | As Required |
| 5 | After Action Review | 1 |

Table 4-15. Table of events and time.

4. **General Situation.** Task Force 4-5, Mechanized is conducting operations as part of the First Brigade, 51st Armored Division. Task Force 4-5, Mechanized is occupying a base camp 2 km west of the Akusk Airport in the Checker Republic. Base camp security has been established. The TF has been given O/O missions to conduct security operations in the AO. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. Local populace and factions may or may not be cooperative.
5. **Special Situation.** Task Force 4-5, Mechanized has received an order to react to a civil disturbance. The TF issues a FRAGO.

| |
|---|
| <p>FRAGMENTARY ORDER 01</p> <p>References: OPORD 07</p> <p>Map Series: V611, sheets 7061 & 7062, edition 1, scale 1:50,000</p> <p>Time Zone Used Throughout the Order: Local</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. SITUATION. A civil disturbance has erupted near the Northern perimeter fence of the Akusk airport (grid AB011214). 2. MISSION. Gain control of the situation and disburse the crowd. 3. EXECUTION. Per SOP. 4. SERVICE SUPPORT. No change. 5. COMMAND AND CONTROL. TF Main CP currently located at base camp. <p>ACKNOWLEDGE:</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Abner LTC</p> |
|---|

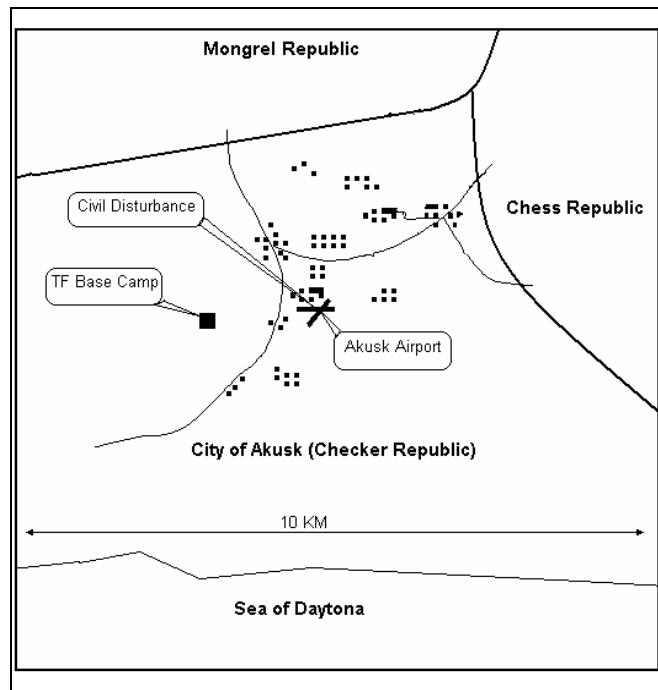


Figure 4-4. Fragmentary order.

Figure 4-5. Map of AO.

6. **Support Requirements.** (See Table 4-16 for an example consolidated support requirements list.) Support requirements include the following:
 - a. **Minimum Trainers and Evaluators.** The TF commander conducts this STX. The TF XO, S3, CSM, company commanders, and platoon leaders assist him. Company commanders and platoon leaders may act as observers/controllers for a sister element. Whichever method is chosen, all key TF leaders must attend an appropriate AAR.
 - b. **Opposing Force.** OPFOR should be used, if available, to add realism to the exercise. The trainer must develop an OPFOR scenario with specific actions that cause reactions from the friendly unit consistent with objectives and tasks.
 - c. **MILES.** MILES can provide realistic training. MILES keeps the STX from becoming a leader exercise. MILES is required in conjunction with an active OPFOR element.
 - d. **Standards.** Standards reviewed during leader preparation must be met during the STX. They should be covered in detail during the AARs. Standards that are not met should be annotated on the unit proficiency work sheet of each subordinate unit.
 - e. **Vehicles and Communications.** Use TF TOE or MTOE equipment.
 - f. **Training Area.** The training area should be sufficient in size to allow maneuver by TF elements and provide realistic training.

| Ammunition | DODAC | Requirement |
|---|----------|--------------------------------|
| 5.56 mm | 1305AO80 | 120 rounds for each rifle |
| 7.62 mm | 1305AIII | 600 rounds for each M240 |
| 5.56 mm | 1305AO75 | 600 rounds for each SAW |
| Hand grenade body, M69 | 133OG811 | 4 for each rifleman |
| Hand grenade fuse (practice) | 133OG878 | 4 for each rifleman |
| Simulator, projectile, ground burst, M115A2 | 137OL594 | 30 for each company |
| Simulator, hand grenade, M116 | 137OL601 | 30 for each company |
| Batteries | | |
| BA 200 (6-volt) | | 24 for each company |
| BA 3M (9-volt) | | 300 for each company |
| MILES Equipment | | |
| M16 system | | 1 per M16 (include OPFOR) |
| M240 machine gun system | | 1 per M240 (include OPFOR) |
| Controller guns | | 4 (3ea for OCs, 1ea for OPFOR) |
| Small arms alignment fixture | | 4 (3ea for OCs, 1ea for OPFOR) |

Table 4-16. Consolidated support requirements.

| Task Title | Task Number |
|--|-------------|
| Plan Operations using the MDMP | 07-1-5189 |
| Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB | 07-1-2009 |
| Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB | 07-1-2018 |
| Evaluate the Enemy during IPB | 07-1-2054 |
| Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB | 07-1-2027 |
| Develop a Reconnaissance and Surveillance Plan | 07-1-2036 |
| Prepare for Operations | 07-1-5198 |
| Conduct a Rehearsal | 07-1-5000 |
| Conduct Security Operations in a Stability Environment | 07-1-1270 |
| Secure Civilians During Operations | 07-1-6072 |

Table 4-17. Training and evaluation outlines.

7. **Training and Evaluation Outlines.** Training and evaluation outlines used to evaluate the training exercise are listed in the sequence they will occur during the exercise. Table 4-17 shows an example list of T&EOs.
8. **Assessments.** Evaluators assess planning, preparation, and execution of tasks based on the standards in Chapter 5 of this MTP.

CHAPTER 5

Training and Evaluation Outlines

- 5-1. **Introduction.** This chapter contains the training and evaluation outlines for the unit. T&EOs are the foundation of the MTP and the collective training of the units. T&EOs are training objectives (task, conditions, and standards) for the collective tasks that support critical wartime operations. The unit masters designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs may be trained separately, in an STX, in an FTX, or in live-fire exercises. For collective live-fire standards, the trainer needs to refer to the applicable gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be integrated into the training exercise.
- 5-2. **Structure.** The T&EOs in this chapter are listed in Table 5-1. The Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix in Chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train the critical wartime missions according to their specific BOS.
- 5-3. **Format.** The T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following items:
- a. **Element.** This identifies the unit or unit element(s) that performs the task.
 - b. **Task.** This is a description of the action to be performed by the unit, and provides the task number.
 - c. **References.** These are in parentheses after the task number. The reference which contains the most information (primary reference) about the task is listed first and underlined. If there is only one reference do not underline the reference.
 - d. **Iteration.** Used to identify how many times the task is performed and evaluated during training. The "M" identifies when the task is performed in MOPP4.
 - e. **Commander/Leader Assessment.** This is used by the unit leadership to assess the proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature and use all available evaluation data and submit leader input to develop an assessment of the organization's overall capability to accomplish the task. Use the following ratings:
 - (1) **T - Trained.** The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.
 - (2) **P - Needs Practice.** The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.
 - (3) **U - Untrained.** The unit can not demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.
 - f. **Condition.** A statement of the situation or environment in which the unit is to do the collective task.
 - g. **Task Standard.** The task standard states the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training. It should be understood by every Soldier. The trainer or evaluator determines the unit's training status using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the METT-T conditions. These conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This will establish a common base line for unit performance.
 - h. **Task Steps and Performance Measures.** This is a listing of actions that is required to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with supporting individual tasks and their reference. Leader tasks within each T&EO are indicated by an asterisk (*). Under each task step are listed the performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task step. If the unit fails to correctly perform one of these task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard.
 - i. **GO/NO-GO Column.** This column is provided for annotating the platoon's performance of the task steps. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an "X" in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a GO for the task step to be successfully performed.

- j. **Task Performance/Evaluation Summary Block.** This block provides the trainer a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as GO. It also provides the evaluator a means to rate the units demonstrated performance as a GO or NO-GO. It also provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.
- k. **Supporting Individual Tasks.** This is a listing of all supporting individual tasks required to correctly perform the task. Listed are the reference, tasks number, and task title.
- l. **OPFOR Standards.** These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. These standards ensure that OPFOR Soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or "lose" to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify what must be accomplished -- not how it must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using tactics consistent with the type of enemy they are portraying.

5-4. Use. The T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task. Several T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a group of tasks such as an STX or FTX.

| Develop Intelligence | |
|---|--------------|
| Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | (07 1 2000) |
| Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | (07 1 2009) |
| Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 2018) |
| Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | (07 1 2027) |
| Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | (07 1 2036) |
| Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 2054) |
| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver | |
| Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 1000) |
| Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 1009) |
| Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | (07 1 1018A) |

Figure 5-1. List of training and evaluation outlines.

| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver (continued) | |
|---|--------------|
| Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 1027) |
| Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 1036A) |
| Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 1045) |
| Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 1054) |
| Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 1063) |
| Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 1072) |
| Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 1081) |
| Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 1090A) |
| Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 1099) |
| Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 1108) |
| Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 1117) |
| Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 1126) |
| Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 1135A) |
| Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 1144) |
| Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 1162) |
| Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 1171) |
| Conduct an Attack of a Built up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 1180) |
| Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 1189) |
| Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 1198) |
| Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 1207) |
| Defend a Built up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 1216) |

Figure 5-1. List of training and evaluation outlines.

| Deploy/Conduct Maneuver (continued) | |
|--|--------------|
| Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 1225) |
| Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 1234) |
| Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 1243) |
| Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 1252) |
| Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 1261) |
| Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 1270) |
| Employ Firepower | |
| Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 3000) |
| Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 3009A) |
| Protect the Force | |
| Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 6000) |
| Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 6009) |
| Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 6018) |
| Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 6027) |
| Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 6036) |
| Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 6045) |
| React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 6054) |
| Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 6063) |
| Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 6072) |
| Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 6081) |

Figure 5-1. List of training and evaluation outlines.

| Perform CSS and Sustainment | |
|---|-------------|
| Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 4000) |
| Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 4018) |
| Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 4027) |
| Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 4036) |
| Exercise Command and Control | |
| Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 5000) |
| Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 5009) |
| Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 5027) |
| Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 5036) |
| Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 5045) |
| Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 5054) |
| Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 5063) |
| Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 5072) |
| Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 5081) |
| Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 5090) |
| Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 5099) |
| Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 5108) |
| Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 5117) |
| Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)..... | (07 1 5126) |
| Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 5135) |
| Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)..... | (07 1 5144) |

Figure 5-1. List of training and evaluation outlines (continued).

| Exercise Command and Control (continued) | |
|---|-------------|
| Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | (07 1 5153) |
| Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 5162) |
| Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 5171) |
| Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 5180) |
| Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 5189) |
| Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)..... | (07 1 5198) |
| Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | (07 1 5207) |

Figure 5-1. List of training and evaluation outlines (continued).

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) HHC INF BN (BFV)
 ANTIARMOR CO INF BN RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV)
 TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
 HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI)

TASK: Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-2000)

| | | |
|-------------------------|--------------|--------------|
| (FM 3-0 [100-5]) | (FM 34-5) | (FM 34-54) |
| (FM 3-55 [100-55])(TBP) | (FM 34-8-2) | (FM 34-130) |
| (FM 34-2) | (FM 34-40-7) | (FM 101-5) |
| (FM 34-2-1) | (FM 34-54) | (FM 101-5-1) |
| (FM 34-3) | | |

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct operations at a specified time and location. The S2 section is established and supports staff operations. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS) if equipped. All required overlays and graphics are provided in digital format, and all communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF S2 section conducts S2 operations IAW the TSOP, appropriate field manuals, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The S2 section plans, coordinates, and participates in mission analysis and order development. The S2 section prepares, updates, and maintains the intelligence estimate. The S2 section utilizes available digital systems and conventional sources of intelligence to process, analyze, and disseminate information. The S2 section provides intelligence to support the commander's decision-making ability. The S2 section tracks the current battle. The S2 officer supervises the section and assigned personnel. The S2 section, in conjunction with the rest of the staff, develops the intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) plan and overlays. The S2 participates in the target selection process. The S2 section coordinates and supervises military intelligence, counterintelligence, and security activities. The S2 section assists in preparing deception plans. The S2 section determines map requirements and requisitions maps as necessary. The S2 section considers ROE and ROI during planning.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|-----------|--------------|
| *1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. BN/TF intelligence (S2) section participates in the military decision-making process (MDMP). | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>NOTE: The S2's first priority at this level is to ensure a healthy intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) process to drive staff planning.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Receives and analyzes mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Receives commander's guidance and assist in development of commander's priority intelligence requirements (PIR). (2) Understands commander's intent. (3) Defines the battlefield environment. (4) Identifies intelligence gaps. (5) Develops preliminary intelligence requirements (IR). (6) Identifies specified and implied intelligence tasks. (7) Determines availability of organic, attached, and supporting intelligence assets. b. Requests support or information from higher headquarters if items or information are not available organically. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Requests maps, imagery, sketches, and blueprints of objectives, and named areas of interest (NAIs). (2) Requests collection plan, asset available times, and asset tracks. (3) Requests weather and light data and climatic summary. (4) Requests enemy order of battle (OB) data. (5) Requests terrain products (line of communications [LOC], vegetation, cross-country mobility [CCM], modified combined obstacle overlay [MCOO], elevation, line of sight [LOS], and hydrology). (6) Requests higher intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) plan. c. Obtains signal operating instructions (SOI) and sign and countersign information through unit signal officer (S6). d. Briefs staff on abbreviated intelligence estimate to assist their mission planning. e. Issues warning order (WARNO) to R&S assets. f. Describes the battlefield's effects. g. Assess other characteristics of the battlefield. (mission dependent). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Includes politics. (2) Includes population. (3) Includes demographics. (4) Includes social ethnic and religion. (5) Includes economic. h. Evaluates enemy. i. Determines enemy courses of action (ECOAs) and sends information on ECOAs to subordinate units to facilitate planning. j. Develops intelligence synchronization matrix (ISM). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ties to PIR and intelligence requirements (IR) (include last time information is of value [LTIOV]). (2) Includes timeline, required decisions, decision criteria, serious incident report (SIR), and collection assets. (3) Plans for system cross-cue and back-up coverage. (4) Ensures it answers commander's requirements for intelligence, targeting, and battle damage assessment (BDA) in time to make decisions. k. Participates in staff war game of decision support template (DST) and targeting plan. (as enemy commander). l. Develops ISR plan and overlay to support DST. (with support from operations officer [S3], fire support officer [FSO], engineer, and air defense officer if available). | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>3. BN/TF S2 section participates in the preparation, coordination, authentication, and distribution of orders and operations plans (OPLANs).</p> <p>4. BN/TF S2 section develops and provides applicable graphics to subordinate elements.</p> <p>5. BN/TF S2 coordinates and supervises military intelligence, counterintelligence, and security activities.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Prepares, updates, and maintains the intelligence estimate and situational and event templates and assists with the preparation of the DST by nominating commander's critical information requirements (CCIR).</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(1) Provides situational and event templates to the commander that accurately locate likely enemy positions and identify likely ECOA and enemy weaknesses.</p> <p>NOTE: Enemy locations should be annotated in the appropriate All Source Analysis System (ASAS) files for digital equipped units.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(2) Annotates significant obstacles and restricted and severely restricted terrain.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(3) Considers weather and its impacts. (effects on visibility, trafficability, personnel, equipment, nuclear, biological, and chemical [NBC], and smoke).</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(4) Evaluates key terrain for potential enemy and friendly use and annotates information.</p> <p>NOTE: The S2 refers to analysis on S2 or G2 home page (digital equipped units).</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(5) Maintains the enemy situation. (uses ASAS if digital equipped).</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(6) Identifies enemy weaknesses.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(7) Provides templates and estimates to the commander before his analysis.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(8) Verifies that the S2 situation map (SITMAP) and appropriate overlays are current and complete.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(9) Annotates graphics in ASAS overlays (digital equipped units).</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(10) Builds essential information into ASAS report and text files (digital equipped units).</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(11) Builds information or products required for transmission to company and below.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Provides commander with input during courses of action (COA) analysis.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(1) Provides input to the development of the battle from the viewpoint of enemy doctrine.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(2) Identifies likely enemy reactions to friendly actions.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(3) Assists in COA analysis.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Assists commander by developing collection plan.</p> <p>NOTE: The S2 identifies sufficient PIR, IR, NAIs, TAIs, and decision points (DPs) needed to control the battle.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">d. Directs and coordinates intelligence collection activities.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(1) Uses Army Battle Command System (ABCS), specifically ASAS and Force XXI Battle Command - Brigade and Below (FBCB2), to maximize information management (digital equipped units).</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(2) Verifies the R&S plan meets the commander's PIR needs, reduces enemy surveillance of friendly action, and does not conflict with the higher headquarters' recon plan.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(3) Refines all PIR and IR into specific collection tasks. (what, where, and who).</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(4) Assigns mission of observing NAIs, TAIs, and DPs to a specific company sector with guidance of what to look for.</p> | | |
|---|--|--|

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>(5) Assigns specific observation posts (OPs) and patrolling responsibilities other than local security.</p> <p>(6) Briefs and debriefs patrols and R&S assets.</p> <p>(7) Assigns appropriate collection missions to ground-surveillance radars (GSRs) and Improved Remotely Monitored Battlefield Sensor System (IREMBASS).</p> <p>(8) Directs collection tasks to accomplish higher headquarters' directed requirements.</p> <p>(9) Coordinates all collection taskings with the higher headquarters S3 and higher headquarters S2.</p> <p>(10) Reports new information to commander, staff, higher headquarters, and subordinate elements as directed.</p> <p>(11) Defaults information reporting to ABCS (digital equipped units)</p> <p>(12) Includes all phases of the operation.</p> <p>e. Requests information from other sources.</p> <p>NOTE: Requested information should be transmitted in ASAS to and from higher headquarters or higher. if digital equipped.</p> <p>(1) Uses available outside intelligence assets (human intelligence [HUMINT], signal intelligence [SIGINT], and electronic intelligence [ELINT]) to obtain information.</p> <p>NOTE: The S2 section requests unmanned aerial vehicle (UAV), Joint Surveillance Target Attack Radar System (JSTARS) and other higher headquarters processed imagery.</p> <p>(2) Requests information early and continually.</p> <p>(3) Uses all available collection resources. (scouts, patrols, OPs, forward observers [FOs], engineers, air defense [AD], GSRs, and aviation information).</p> <p>f. Analyzes available intelligence.</p> <p>(1) Determines enemy size and direction of approach.</p> <p>(2) Determines enemy area of main effort.</p> <p>(3) Estimates time and distance when enemy will likely come within range and communicates to commander, staff, and subordinates.</p> <p>(4) Templates follow-on or reserve forces and estimates time and distance.</p> <p>(5) Selects lucrative indirect fire and close air support (CAS) targets.</p> <p>(6) Makes recommendation, when required, on enemy likely COA and unit response.</p> <p>(7) Disseminates and coordinates intelligence information.</p> <p>g. Assists with operations security (OPSEC) and counterreconnaissance.</p> <p>(1) Verifies that IPB identifies enemy reconnaissance routes, objectives, and events.</p> <p>(2) Destroys all classified material when no longer needed.</p> <p>h. Reports intelligence IAW TSOP or as directed.</p> <p>6. BN/TF S2 section processes, analyzes, and disseminates information. Accesses higher headquarters enemy situation database for updates.</p> <p>7. BN/TF S2 section maintains the enemy situation.</p> <p>8. BN/TF S2 section coordinates with the S3 for processing materials (with intelligence purposes) taken from enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) and civilian internees.</p> | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>9. BN/TF S2 section assists the S3 in preparing deception plans.</p> <p>10. BN/TF S2 section synchronizes tactical operations with all staff.</p> <p>11. BN/TF S2 section determines map requirements and requests maps from higher headquarters.</p> <p>12. BN/TF S2 section assesses and tracks the current battle and monitors the execution of decisions.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Monitors continuously the situation and the progress of the operation.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Directs adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.</p> <p>*13. BN/TF S2 provides immediate and continuous feedback to the commander when new or updated intelligence is received.</p> <p>14. BN/TF S2 section identifies and analyzes current and future problems.</p> <p>15. BN/TF S2 supervises the S2 section and S2 personnel.</p> <p>16. BN/TF S2 section complies with ROE and ROI.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Considers ROE and ROI during planning.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Enforces ROE and ROI during execution.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|--|--|
| 07-1-2009 | Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2018 | Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2027 | Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2054 | Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5144 | Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
 HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) ANTIARMOR CO INF BN
 TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
 HHC INF BN (BFV)

TASK: Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-2009)

(FM 34-130) (FM 101-5) (FM 101-5-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct operations at a specified location and time. The staff is assembled and is conducting intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) as part of the military decision-making process (MDMP). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF staff defines the battlefield environment IAW TSOP, appropriate field manuals, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The staff defines the battlefield area of operations (AO), area of interest (AI), and battlespace. The staff creates the battlefield environment overlay. The staff considers ROE and ROI during planning.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| *1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| *2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission, and then they begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). | | |
| *3. BN/TF commander or operations officer (S3) establish the limits of the area of operations (AO) based on his intent and desired end state. (Normally, the AO is established by the higher headquarters' order.) a. Retrieve higher graphics via Maneuver Control System (MCS) or common operational picture (COP; digital equipped units only). b. Drawn to include the terrain in which activity may occur that would affect the upcoming mission. c. Establish unit AO notional overlay using common tactical picture (CTP; digital equipped units only). | | |
| NOTE: "Notional overlay" refers to the static information on the overlay. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| 4. BN/TF S3 approves the AO notional overlay (digital equipped units only). | | |
| 5. BN/TF staff identifies the limits of unit battlespace. In digital equipped units, the S3 uses COP to consolidate the staff battlespace notional overlay into a unit battlespace notional overlay. | | |
| NOTE: The unit's battlespace limits are determined by the unit's ability to use its organic and supporting resources to acquire targets and physically dominate the enemy. | | |
| 6. BN/TF staff establishes the limits of the area of interest (AI). a. Bases the limits of the AI on the ability of the enemy to project power or move forces into the AO. b. Anticipates future mission or "be prepared" and "on order" missions identified during mission analysis and determine their effect on the limits of the AI. c. Identifies changes in the command's battle space as a result of maneuver. d. Establishes the unit AI notional overlay by consolidating staff AI notional overlay input using COP (Intelligence officer [S2]; digital equipped units only). | | |
| 7. BN/TF staff identifies significant characteristics of the environment. a. Identifies enemy forces and all other aspects of the environment that may have an effect on accomplishing the mission including the following: (Dependent on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations [METT-TC].) b. Includes geography, terrain, and weather of the area. c. Includes population demographics (ethnic groups, religious groups, age distribution, and income groups). d. Includes political or socio-economic factors such as the roles of clans, tribes, and gangs. e. Includes infrastructures such as transportation or telecommunications. f. Includes rules of engagement (ROE) or legal restrictions such as international treaties or agreements. g. Includes enemy forces and their capabilities in general terms. Consider paramilitary forces as well. | | |
| *8. BN/TF commander or staff identify the amount of detail required and feasible within the time available for IPB. | | |
| 9. BN/TF staff evaluates existing databases or products and identify intelligence gaps. a. Identifies and prioritizes the gaps using the commander's initial intelligence requirements and intent to set the priorities. b. Consolidates information gaps and submits request for information (RFI) to higher headquarters (S2). c. Identifies any gaps that cannot be filled within the time allowed for IPB. d. Formulates reasonable assumptions for gaps not expected to be filled. | | |
| 10. BN/TF staff collects the material and intelligence required to conduct the remainder of IPB. a. Initiates collection or requests for intelligence to fill intelligence gaps to the level of detail required to conduct IPB. b. Includes collection against all identified significant characteristics of the battlefield, not just enemy forces, in priority order. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| c. Updates IPB products or overlays as additional intelligence is received. | | |
| 11. BN/TF S3 section establishes the battalion battlefield environment notional overlay by consolidating the AO, AI, and battlespace notional overlays (digital equipped units only). Presents the battalion battlefield environment notional overlay to the commander or executive officer (XO; digital equipped units only). | | |
| *12. BN/TF commander or XO approves or disapproves recommendation on battlefield environment. | | |
| 13. BN/TF staff sections disseminate intelligence overlays or products (as necessary) to subordinate elements to facilitate further planning. Post the battlefield environment notional overlay on MCS and transmits to staff; if applicable, transmits to subordinate units as an element of warning order (WARNO) 2 (S3 section). | | |

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
 HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) ANTIARMOR CO INF BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
 HHC INF BN (BFV)

TASK: Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-2018)

(FM 34-130) (FM 101-5) (FM 101-5-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters larger task-organized force and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct operations at a specified location and time. The staff is assembled and is conducting intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) as part of the military decision-making process (MDMP). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF is task-organized as appropriate for mission conditions. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The unit has received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF staff describes battlefield effects as part of the IPB process IAW the TSOP, appropriate field manuals, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF staff evaluates the effects of terrain and weather on friendly and enemy operations. The BN/TF S2 section disseminates the modified combined obstacle overlay (MCOO), demographics information, and weather and light data to staff and subordinate units. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|-----------|--------------|
| *1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. BN/TF staff evaluates battlefield effects on friendly and enemy operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Analyzes the effects of terrain on the battlefield environment. b. Uses observation and fields of fire, cover and concealment, obstacles, key terrain, and avenues of approach (OCOKA). c. Proposes locations that best support enemy collection (Intelligence officer [S2]). d. Identifies key terrain, decisive terrain, avenues of approach, decisive point, and critical point for the operation (Operations [S3] section, in coordination with the S2 and staff engineer [if available]) | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**GO NO-GO**

| | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Uses terrain analysis to provide overlay that includes concealment from aerial and space-based signal intelligence (SIGINT) systems, line-of-sight characteristics of terrain, to include communications and noncommunications emitters, vegetation and its effects on radio wave absorption and antenna height requirements, and large objects, such as buildings or cliffs, that will influence radio waves (Signal [S6] section) f. Analyzes the terrain data using OCOKA and determines fire support implications (Fire support element [FSE]) | | |
| <p>3. BN/TF staff evaluates the effects of terrain on operations.</p> | | |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Relates the analysis of terrain effects on the broad courses of action (COAs) available to enemy and friendly forces such as attack or defend. | | |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies enemy engagement areas, battle positions, immediate and intermediate objectives, ambush sites, etc (S2 section). b. Identifies friendly engagement areas, battle positions, immediate and intermediate objectives, ambush sites, etc (S3 section). c. Assesses the effects of terrain on fire support operations (fire support officer [FSO]). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Includes terrain features rated key terrain from a fire support perspective. (2) Includes position area notional overlay (enemy and friendly) (digital equipped units). (3) Includes artillery dead space notional overlay (digital equipped units). d. Identifies possible air avenues of approach, potential friendly and enemy air defense artillery (ADA) system positions, possible forward area arming and refueling point (FARP) sites, landing zones (LZs) or pickup zones (PZs), and airfields [designated staff element in the absence of an air defense officer (ADO)]. e. Identifies terrain favorable for the use of weapons of mass destruction (WMD) and smoke (chemical officer or NCO). f. Uses common tactical picture (CTP) on maneuver control system (MCS) to provide notional overlay that includes analysis of terrain pertaining to employment of weapons of mass destruction (WMD) and smoke. | | |
| <p>4. BN/TF S2 with recommendations from staff briefs the areas of the battlefield environment that favor offensive or defensive operations and those that are neutral.</p> | | |
| <p>5. BN/TF S2 with assistance from staff analyzes the effects of weather on the battlefield environment. Evaluates the effects of weather on operations. Relates the analysis of weather effects on the broad COAs available to enemy and friendly forces such as attack or defend.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates with higher headquarters to obtain battlefield forecasting model (BFM) products that portray the military aspects of weather, if available. b. Analyzes the effects of weather on maneuver operations and updates notional overlay as appropriate (S3 section). c. Analyzes the effects of weather on enemy operations and updates notional overlay as appropriate (S2 section) . d. Analyzes the effects of weather on the use of WMD and smoke and updates notional overlay as appropriate (Chemical officer or NCO). e. Analyzes the effects of weather on fire support operations and updates notional overlays as appropriate (FSE). f. Analyzes the effects of weather on air operations and updates notional overlay as appropriate (ADO designated staff element in the absence of an ADO). | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>6. BN/TF staff analyzes the military aspects of weather.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Includes visibility and illumination. b. Includes wind (speed and direction). c. Includes precipitation. d. Includes cloud cover. e. Includes temperature and humidity. | | |
| <p>7. BN/TF S2 section, assisted by the primary and special staff, to include the staff judge advocate (SJA) and civil military officer, if available, determines other characteristics of the battlefield that could affect operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determines demographic, political, and socioeconomic factors. b. Determines infrastructures (transportation and telecommunications, etc.) c. Determines local, United States (US), and international law. | | |
| <p>8. BN/TF S2 section obtains electronic preparation of the battlefield (EPB) information from the analytical control element if available.</p> | | |
| <p>9. Staff describes the battlefield's effects on enemy and friendly capabilities and broad COAs, and incorporates analysis into staff estimates.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies areas along each avenue of approach best suited for engagement areas, ambush sites, battle positions, immediate or intermediate objectives and so forth. b. Identifies periods when weather conditions will optimize the use of friendly sighting and target acquisition systems. c. Identifies other characteristics of the battlefield that will affect military operations. | | |
| <p>10. BN/TF S2 section receives staff input concerning battlefield effects and COAs and consolidates information.</p> | | |
| <p>11. BN/TF S2 section disseminates terrain, weather, and light data to staff and subordinate units.</p> | | |

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
 ANTIARMOR CO INF BN RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (M113) HHC INF BN (BFV)
 HHC INF BN (M113/ITV)

TASK: Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-2027)

(FM 34-130) (FM 101-5) (FM 101-5-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct operations at a specified location and time. The staff is assembled and is conducting intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) as part of the military decision-making process (MDMP). The BN/TF staff has defined the battlefield environment and the effects of the battlefield on friendly and enemy forces as part of the initial IPB. The BN/TF staff has evaluated the enemy as part of the initial IPB and has refined the doctrinal template and created a modified combined obstacle overlay (MCOO). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF staff determines enemy courses of action (ECOAs) IAW TSOP, appropriate field manuals, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The staff develops the full set of course of action (COAs) available to the enemy. The S2 section develops the situation template, COA descriptions and options, and the high-value target (HVT) list. The staff prioritizes COAs and identifies the most likely one.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|-----------|--------------|
| *1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. BN/TF staff defines the battlefield area of operations. | | |
| 3. BN/TF staff describes the effects that the battlefield environment will have on operations. | | |
| 4. BN/TF evaluates the enemy. | | |
| 5. BN/TF intelligence officer (S2) updates enemy doctrine or patterns of operation to doctrinal templates. a. Requests intelligence information or products from higher headquarters. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Develops event templates that depict where and when to collect information that will indicate which COA the enemy has adopted. c. Develops new named areas of interest (NAIs) at specific points, routes, or areas within the area of operations (AO) and area of interest (AI) that can match natural terrain features, arbitrary features such as time-phase lines, or engagement areas. Also include collection targets that exist in the electromagnetic spectrum. d. Develops an event matrix that provides details on the type of enemy activity expected in each named area of interest, when the named area of interest is expected to be active, and its relationship to other battlefield events. | | |
| <p>6. BN/TF identifies likely objectives and desired end state of enemy command forces at least one level above own and two levels below own command.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies and analyzes the full set of COAs available to the enemy. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Analyzes the feasibility of each ECOA in terms of time, space, resources, and the force ratios required to accomplish its objective(s). (2) Identifies the uniqueness and suitability of each ECOA. (3) Determines the acceptability of risk to enemy forces for each COA. (4) Determines whether the COAs are consistent with enemy doctrine. (5) Determines if the ECOA effectively supports the perceived objective, task, and purpose up two echelons, if possible. For example, will the regiment's COA support its division's and army's objectives? b. Develops each COA in the amount of detail time allows. c. Evaluates and prioritizes each COA (staff). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Determines the most dangerous ECOA. (2) Determines the most likely ECOA. (3) Recommends updates to the SITEMP. (4) Recommends updates to the ECOA overlay, COA descriptions and options, and high-value targets (HVTs; during war gaming.) | | |
| <p>7. BN/TF develops situation template (SITEMP), COA descriptions and options, and HVTs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Refines the initial SITEMP by graphically depicting expected enemy dispositions at critical "snapshots in time" as agreed upon by the S2 or operations officer (S3) for each ECOA. b. Adds time-phase lines (TPLs) depicting enemy movement to the SITEMP. c. Describes each COA and options to support staff war gaming. d. War-games the SITEMPs, the times, or phases in the COA to determine when HVTs are most valuable to the commander and portrays refined HVTs on the SITEMPs. e. Refines the HVTs list for each COA. | | |
| <p>8. BN/TF S2 section uploads battlefield planning and visualization tool with data to portray the ECOAs (digital equipped units).</p> | | |
| <p>9. BN/TF S2 section disseminates the ECOAs, event template, and event matrix in the form of a collection graphic to support intelligence planning and collection by other units.</p> | | |
| <p>10. BN/TF staff completes the following, once the commander has selected the friendly COA:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reprioritizes the initial list of ECOAs to reflect changes in friendly dispositions and activities. b. Updates the SITEMP. c. Updates the ECOA overlays, COA descriptions and options, and HVTs. | | |

| TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK: | | | | | | | |
|--|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: TANK COMPANY, TK BN HHC INF BN (M113/ITV)
RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI) TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI)
HHC, TANK BN (XXI) HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI)
RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) ANTIARMOR CO INF BN
RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
HHC INF BN (BFV)

TASK: Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-2036)

(FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) (FM 7-20) (FM 101-5)
(FM 3-55 [100-55])(TBP) (FM 7-85) (FM 101-5-1)
(FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) (FM 34-2-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) has received an order to conduct a mission, or it anticipates a new mission derived from an ongoing operation. The staff is conducting intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) as part of the military decision-making process (MDMP). The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/unit, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command System (ABCS), if equipped. The BN/TF and its higher headquarters are planning intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR). All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF staff conducts collaborative planning, and develops an ISR order that synchronizes higher headquarters and BN/TF ISR operations. The order must also support the commander's information requirements (IR). The BN/TF executive officer (XO) assembles the staff required for ISR planning IAW the BN/TF TSOP. BN/TF XO and the ISR planning team conduct ISR mission analysis. The BN/TF commander issues ISR planning guidance. The BN/TF S3 section issues a warning order (WARNO) to ISR elements. The BN/TF ISR planning team develops ISR scheme of support. The BN/TF ISR team war-games the ISR plan. The BN/TF issues an ISR order to subordinate units that synchronizes higher headquarters and BN/TF ISR operations, and supports the commander's information requirements (IR).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| *1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU). They obtain it from all available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| *2. BN/TF executive officer (XO) assembles the ISR planning team. This would normally include, as a minimum, an effects coordination cell, an intelligence (S2) representative, and an operations (S3) representative. | | |
| 3. As part of mission analysis, the BN/TF ISR team works with the battle staff to develop initial ISR requirements. a. Identifies initial priority intelligence requirements (PIR; S2 section). b. Identifies higher headquarters PIR that require unit assets to collect (S2 section). | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>c. Develops specific information requirements (SIR) from the unit commander's PIR (R&S team).</p> | | |
| <p>4. BN/TF ISR team converts the SIR to production and collection requirements. Develop an SIR for each named area of interest (NAI) for each collection asset.</p> <p>5. BN/TF ISR team develops the initial ISR plan.</p> <p>a. Evaluates resources.</p> <p>b. Identifies collection assets required.</p> | | |
| <p>NOTE: The ISR team must consider the type of mission as well as the strength, composition, and disposition of the enemy security force.</p> | | |
| <p>c. Identifies equipment required.</p> <p>(1) Identifies the proximity of the collection assets to the NAI, environmental conditions, and signature provided by the target.</p> <p>(2) Determines availability of ISR assets (higher and two levels down).</p> <p>(3) Determines capabilities of ISR assets.</p> <p>(4) Matches resources to requirements.</p> <p>d. Develops ISR scheme of support in coordination with the S3.</p> <p>e. Develops and prioritizes specified orders and requests (SOR).</p> <p>f. Completes initial ISR plan.</p> <p>(1) Develops initial event template matching NAIs against commander's critical information requirements (CCIR).</p> <p>(2) Develops initial ISR plan guidance in order to answer the what, where, when, why, and who should collect.</p> <p>(3) Drafts the order for an ISR mission and submits to the S2 for approval.</p> <p>(4) Creates the initial ISR plan, applicable overlay(s), and collection matrix (S2 section).</p> | | |
| <p>6. BN/TF S3 section tasks the appropriate unit in the form of a mission tasking order (OPORD or FRAGO) and disseminates R&S order to higher, adjacent, and subordinate units.</p> | | |
| <p>7. BN/TF S2 section identifies collection gaps and submits request for information (RFI) to higher headquarters.</p> | | |
| <p>8. BN/TF ISR team, in cooperation with the staff, develops a refined ISR plan as part of staff war gaming.</p> <p>a. Receives refined battle staff products to include updated PIR, information requirements (IR), high-value targets (HVTs), and high-payoff target list (HPTL).</p> <p>b. Uses the commander's CCIR and situation and event templates and associates them with enemy COA in order to define collection requirements of decided COA.</p> <p>c. Refines the R&S plan by integrating the scheme of maneuver, fires, and engineers.</p> <p>d. Provides engineer plan to support counter-reconnaissance plan and establishes engineer collection requirements (staff engineer).</p> <p>e. Develops air defense and early warning plan to integrate into the ISR plan (air defense officer, if available).</p> <p>f. Assists with the identification of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) NAIs, and integrates NBC operations and NBC defense into the ISR plan (chemical officer).</p> | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>g. Completes associated fire plan to support the ISR plan (fire support officer [FSO]).</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Coordinates aspects of maneuver (S3 section). (2) Plans for the infiltration and exfiltration of collection assets and resupply routes through friendly force sectors or zones. (3) Establishes collection assets relationship with security force. (4) Establishes R&S control measures such as line of advance (LOA), battle handover line (BHL), and forward boundary line. (5) Performs terrain management. <p>h. Develops a logistics support plan to support ISR.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Verifies that resupply is identified and that it addresses how often, by whom, where, and how. (2) Verifies that collection assets have the proper resources to evacuate casualties, identifying by whom and how. | | |
| <p>9. In cooperation with the staff, the R&S team completes the final ISR plan.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Updates the ISR plan, applicable overlay(s), ISR collection matrix, and situation template (SITEMP, S2 section) b. Uses approved ISR plan to coordinate the final decision support template (DST) with the staff (S3 section). c. Produces the ISR annex, including ISR applicable overlay(s) and a SITEMP for inclusion in the unit order (S2 section). | | |
| <p>10. The BN/TF ISR team updates the ISR plan as necessary based on mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).</p> | | |
| <p>11. The BN/TF ISR team provides ISR team with updated IPB products as they become available.</p> | | |

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|--|--|
| 07-1-2000 | Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-4009 | Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|---|--|
| 07-1-4018 | Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5099 | Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5108 | Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)

TASK: Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-2054)

(FM 34-130) (FM 101-5) (FM 101-5-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters. It has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct operations at a specified time and location. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The staff is assembled and is conducting intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) as part of the military decision-making process (MDMP). The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters and units at all echelons. It has digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All required overlays and graphics are provided in digital format, and all communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF has received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF staff evaluates the enemy as part of the IPB process IAW the TSOP, appropriate field manuals, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The staff uses all available digital systems as well as conventional sources of intelligence to evaluate enemy capabilities and vulnerabilities. The staff provides a consolidated assessment of the enemy to the commander or executive officer (XO). The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: **GO NO-GO**

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| *1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. BN/TF staff defines the battlefield area of operations. | | |
| 3. BN/TF staff describes the effects the battlefield environment will have on operations. | | |
| 4. BN/TF staff evaluates the enemy. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Requests intelligence products from higher headquarters. b. Creates or updates enemy models. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Includes doctrinal templates. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Constructs doctrinal templates through an analysis of the intelligence database and an evaluation of the enemy's past operations. (b) Determine how the enemy normally organizes for combat and how he deploys and employs his units and the various Battlefield Operating System (BOS) assets. (2) Includes description of preferred tactics and options. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Addresses the operations of the major units or elements portrayed on the template and the activities of the different BOS. (b) Contains a listing or description of the options available to the enemy should the operation fail (branches) or subsequent operations if it succeeds (sequels). (c) Addresses typical timelines and phases of the operation (maneuver and support), points where units transition from one formation to another, and how each BOS contributes to the operation's success. (d) Describes the actions of the supporting BOS in enough detail to allow the later identification of high-value targets (HVTs) and high pay-off targets (HPTs). (3) Identifies type of HVTs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Identifies assets that are key to executing the primary operation. (b) Identifies any assets that are key to satisfying decision criteria or initial adoption of the branches and sequels listed in the description statement. (c) Determines how the enemy might react to the loss of each identified HVT. Considers his ability to substitute other assets as well as the likelihood of adopting branches to the operation. (d) Ranks HVTs based on their relative worth to the enemy's operation, and record them as part of the enemy model. (e) Identifies and notes any changes in value by phase of the operation. (4) Evaluates the enemy models for completeness and relevant patterns of behavior in their area of expertise. (5) Consolidates enemy model input and updates the enemy doctrinal template and patterns of operation. c. Identifies enemy capabilities, vulnerabilities, supporting missions, and other actions that can influence friendly operations (Intelligence officer [S2] section). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Establishes initial enemy mission, enemy capabilities, and initial doctrinal template notional overlays using common tactical picture (CTP; S2 section of digital equipped units). (2) Reviews enemy capabilities and recommends changes to the S2 based upon BOS-related analysis (staff sections). d. Develops situation templates that graphically depict doctrinal enemy dispositions given terrain constraints in the area of operations (AO) and area of interest (AI) should the enemy adopt a particular course of action (COA; S2 section). e. Establishes order of battle (OB) files and historical enemy records if not provided by higher headquarters (S2 section). f. Evaluates the current OB files for completeness and accurate enemy composition, strength, and dispositions (staff sections). g. Evaluates the historical records for relevance (staff sections). h. Identifies information gaps and submits a request for information (RFI) to the higher headquarters S2 or BOS representative as appropriate (staff sections). i. Recommends updates to the doctrinal template by establishing BOS doctrinal template notional overlays based upon the enemy identification analysis and enemy past operations (determined in previous step; staff sections of digital equipped units). | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>5. BN/TF S2, with assistance from the staff, provides executive officer (XO) a consolidated staff assessment of enemy capabilities and vulnerabilities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Describes enemy tactics. b. Identifies those HVTs critical to the completion of the enemy commander's operations. c. Identifies enemy capabilities, vulnerabilities, supporting missions, and other actions that can influence friendly operations. d. Provides a refined doctrinal template as required. <p>6. BN/TF S2 section disseminates the results of evaluating the enemy to staff and subordinate units.</p> | | |
| <p>NOTE: Traditionally the enemy evaluation is disseminated via the intelligence estimate, but the unit may use means best suited to the situation.</p> | | |

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI)
 HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV)
 ANTIARMOR CO INF BN RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
 HHC INF BN (BFV) TANK COMPANY, TK BN

TASK: Attack by Fire (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
 (07-1-1000)

(FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) (FM 7-20)
 (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) (FM 7-85)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct an attack by fire (ABF). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All required overlays and graphics are provided in digital format and all communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The unit received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the ABF IAW the TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF prevents the enemy from withdrawing or repositioning if the intent includes fixing the enemy. The BN/TF inflicts casualties until the enemy is combat ineffective if the intent is enemy destruction. The BN/TF prevents the enemy from engaging friendly forces, if the intent is enemy suppression. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI. No friendly forces are lost due to fratricide.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: **GO NO-GO**

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| 1. Unit leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. Includes human intelligence [HUMINT] and signal intelligence [SIGNIT]). | | |
| 2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). a. Assign sectors of fire or engagement areas to each company to provide complete coverage of the enemy defensive positions or avenues of approach. b. Designate control measures for massing, distributing, and shifting direct and indirect fires. c. Allocate space to allow positioning to engage the enemy. d. Designate measures for front, flank, and rear security, and contact points or other coordination measures to ensure coordination between companies. e. Provide for maximum use of hide positions and natural fighting positions before initiation of the attack. f. Designate measures to hide movement and occupation, and deceive the enemy about the intent of the operation. g. Detail requirements for ABF preparation. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>NOTE: Possible preparations include reconnaissance, preparation of routes, security of movement routes, firing positions before the movement of the main body, and stocking of Class V items.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> h. Specify movement instructions into initial attack and supporting positions. i. Integrate Class III and V re-supply to support continuation of the attack. j. Plan close air support (CAS) and include mission requirements in the attack guidance matrix (AGM) and the high-payoff target list (HPTL) as input in Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System (AFATDS; fire support officer [FSO]) k. Issue order and graphics to subordinate elements. Conduct confirmation briefings with subordinate commanders immediately after OPORD is issued to verify understanding of the commander's intent and concept of the operation. | | |
| <p>3. BN/TF prepares for the ABF.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepares for movement and occupation of positions. <p>NOTE: Preparation time must provide for leader reconnaissance, route and position designation and preparation, completion of fire plans, and positioning of class V.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Selects attack positions that provide adequate cover and concealment and allow the BN/TF to effectively engage the enemy. c. Detects all enemy elements on movement routes and on all front and flank approaches to the position arrival of the main body and updates enemy situation. d. Employs operations security (OPSEC). | | |
| <p>4. BN/TF moves to and occupies initial positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Arrives in position at the designated time. b. Prevents enemy observation or disruption of the movement to, occupation, and setup of the position. c. Establishes front, flank, and rear security and ensures coordination among adjacent elements within 10 minutes of arrival. | | |
| <p>5. FSO uses AFATDS to plan and employ indirect fires.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selects and occupies positions affording clear observation of the enemy force. b. Employs suppressive fires against the enemy to allow the BN/TF to occupy the ABF position(s). c. Employs indirect fires to suppress, obscure, or destroy the enemy force. | | |
| <p>6. BN/TF attacks or counterattacks by fire.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determines location of enemy elements. b. Keeps a continuous and consistent rate of fire on the enemy position. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Orients subordinate elements and focus and distribute direct fires against identified enemy elements. (2) Adjusts direct fires to destroy enemy element(s). (3) Adjusts indirect fires to suppress or destroy enemy vehicles or positions. (4) Coordinates fires enabling the movement of friendly elements or when desired target effect on the enemy has been achieved. (5) Directs subordinate elements as required. c. Alternates ABF positions to prevent massed enemy fires on a single position. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| d. Adjusts ABF positions if necessary. e. Ceases fire once the enemy is destroyed or indicates surrender. f. Sends SPOTREPs and updated SITREPS and makes recommendations to higher headquarters as necessary. 7. The BN/TF complies with the ROE, Mission Instructions, higher headquarters and other special orders. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|------------|--|--|
| 07-1-1009 | Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-1018A | Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1036A | Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1045 | Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1054 | Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1063 | Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1072 | Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1081 | Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1090A | Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1099 | Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1108 | Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1117 | Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1126 | Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|---|--|
| 07-1-1135A | Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-1144 | Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1162 | Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1171 | Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1180 | Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1189 | Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1198 | Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1207 | Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-1216 | Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-1225 | Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1234 | Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1243 | Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1252 | Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1261 | Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1270 | Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2000 | Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank And Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2009 | Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2018 | Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2027 | Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|---|--|
| 07-1-2045 | Develop the Collection Management Plan (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP |
| 07-1-2054 | Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-3000 | Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-3009A | Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-4000 | Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-4009 | Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-4018 | Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-4027 | Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-4036 | Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5000 | Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5009 | Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5018 | Conduct Battle Tracking (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP |
| 07-1-5027 | Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5036 | Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5045 | Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5054 | Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5063 | Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5072 | Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|---|--|
| 07-1-5081 | Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5099 | Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5108 | Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5117 | Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5126 | Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5135 | Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5144 | Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5153 | Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5162 | Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5171 | Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5180 | Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5198 | Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5207 | Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6000 | Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6009 | Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|---|--|
| 07-1-6018 | Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6036 | Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6045 | Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6054 | React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6063 | Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6072 | Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6081 | Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Defend (07-OPFOR-0019)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting defensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is occupying key terrain and is in prepared fighting positions. All assigned equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire, close air, and engineer support are available to the OPFOR.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the defense IAW the operation order or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR defeats, repels, disrupts, or destroys the attacking enemy and retains key terrain.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) ANTIARMOR CO INF BN
RIFLE CO INF BN (M113) HHC INF BN (BFV)
RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI)
RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) TANK COMPANY, TK BN
TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
HHC, TANK BN (XXI)

TASK: Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-1009)

(FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) (FM 7-85)
(FM 3-34.2) (FM 5-71-2) (FM 21-60)
(FM 3-55 [100-55])(TBP) (FM 7-20)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters. The BN/TF encounters an obstacle, enemy position, or enemy force and reports the situation to higher headquarters. Higher headquarters issues a fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a bypass and directs the unit to avoid decisive engagement. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters and units at all echelons. It has established a digital connection with the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS) if equipped. All required overlays and graphics are provided in digital format and all communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF has received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the bypass IAW the TSOP, the order, or guidance from higher headquarters. The BN/TF conducts the bypass without being detected, without being delayed by the obstacle, and without becoming decisively engaged by the enemy force. The BN/TF employs intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) assets to conduct an area reconnaissance. The BN/TF ensures the bypass affords routes away from the enemy positions, obstacles, and fields of fire. If detected, the BN/TF employs obscuring or screening smoke or to enable maneuver and suppression or destruction of enemy elements. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: **GO NO-GO**

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission, and then they begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Distributes location and description of obstacle or enemy force throughout the BN/TF. b. Notifies the higher headquarters. c. Conducts a map reconnaissance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Identifies bypass route(s). (2) Identifies tentative security and support-by-fire positions as required. (3) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Employs ISR assets to conduct an area reconnaissance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Determines nature of enemy or obstacle contact, including size, location, composition, and other factors (2) Identifies bypass route(s) that affords adequate cover and concealment or intervening distance, preventing the enemy from effectively obstructing or engaging BN/TF elements. (3) Ensures that terrain along the bypass supports the BN/TF movement. (4) Submits spot reports (SPOTREPs) and SITREPs. e. Organizes the unit to accomplish the mission. | | |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 3. BN/TF prepares for the bypass. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Positions forces IAW the plan. b. Assigns bypass routes that provide protection from the fires of the enemy antiarmor weapons and an order of march for each route. c. Ensures bypass affords routes away from the enemy positions, obstacles, and fields of fire. d. Ensures terrain along the bypass will support the maneuver of the unit. e. Plans additional security measures such as employment of screening or obscuring smoke if adequate cover and concealment or intervening distance are not available. f. Issues a FRAGO and supporting mission graphics. g. Follows up FRAGO with text and graphics to higher headquarters and to companies. | | |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 4. BN/TF executes the bypass. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Uses appropriate formation or movement technique. b. Maintains the momentum of advance. c. Avoids detection or delay if possible. d. Marks bypass as required. e. Identifies and reacts to enemy forces along the route. f. Initiates the following when encountering an enemy force (bypass not possible): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Fixes the enemy force as necessary. (2) Conducts tactical movement or maneuver along the route or axis focusing on three considerations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Uses appropriate movement technique or formation. (b) Calls for and adjusts indirect fire and smoke to screen movement past the enemy obstacle or position as required. (c) Avoids decisive engagement if possible. g. Initiates the following when encountering an enemy position (bypass not possible): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Establishes a base of fire to suppress the enemy and prevent him from repositioning any part of his force for use elsewhere. (2) Calls for and adjusts indirect fires to suppress the enemy. (3) Employs or calls for obscuring or screening smoke to facilitate the maneuver of the rest of the unit. (4) Coordinates maneuver to prevent BN/TF from becoming decisively engaged. h. Initiates the following when encountering an obstacle (bypass not possible): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Maneuvers to suppress and obscure any enemy forces overwatching the obstacle. (2) Reduces the obstacle (supported by engineers if possible). (3) Creates lanes through the obstacle. (4) Marks lanes as required. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| (5) Provides guides to lead the main body through the obstacle. (6) Disseminates breach lane graphic. | | |
| NOTE: Engineer elements from the main body support the breach effort by creating lanes, improving the marking of lanes, and guiding the main body through the obstacle. | | |
| i. Immediately assesses the situation after completing the bypass or reacting to contact. (1) Consolidates and reorganizes as necessary. (2) Reports to the higher headquarters. (a) Reports completion and location of the bypass route. (b) Reports situation after contact with the enemy. (3) Secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required. (4) Treats and evacuate casualties. | | |
| 5. BN/TF leaders assess the operation. a. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation. b. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent. | | |
| 6. The BN/TF continues operations as directed. | | |

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|--|--|
| 07-1-1252 | Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5018 | Conduct Battle Tracking (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP |
| 07-1-5027 | Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-5036 | Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5054 | Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| 07-1-5081 | Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Defend (07-OPFOR-0019)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting defensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is occupying key terrain and is in prepared fighting positions. All assigned equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire, close air, and engineer support are available to the OPFOR.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the defense IAW the operation order or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR defeats, repels, disrupts, or destroys the attacking enemy and retains key terrain.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Defend an Obstacle (07-OPFOR-0020)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has employed obstacles and is covering them with direct and indirect fires. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The enemy has indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR defends obstacles IAW the operation order or commander's guidance. The OPFOR covers the obstacles by fire. The OPFOR fixes the enemy in the obstacles and destroys the enemy by fire.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: ANTIARMOR CO INF BN HHC INF BN (BFV)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) HHC INF BN (M113/ITV)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (M113) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) TANK COMPANY, TK BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI) TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC, TANK BN (XXI)

TASK: Conduct a Cordon and Search in an Urban Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-1018A)

| | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|------------|
| (FM 3-06) | (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) | (FM 7-98) |
| (FM 3-06.11) | (FM 5-71-2) | (FM 19-15) |
| (FM 3-07 [100-20]) | (FM 7-20) | (FM 19-40) |
| (FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) | (FM 7-85) | (FM 21-60) |

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a cordon and search for insurgents and sympathizers at the location and time specified. The unit is provided an interpreter(s). Army aviation assets are available. Explosive ordnance demolition (EOD) assets are available. The order includes all applicable overlays or graphics. The unit has engineer assets based on doctrine, an air defense platoon, and a military intelligence team (ground surveillance radar [GSR]) in direct support (DS). Higher headquarters has a field artillery battalion in DS. The unit has priority of fires. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The unit conducts the cordon and search in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The unit establishes a cordon of the designated area without being detected by the insurgents or sympathizers. The unit conducts the search and captures all insurgents and enemy material within the cordon. The unit establishes clear abort criteria. The unit complies with the ROE or ROI.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|-----------|--------------|
| NOTE: The use of enemy in this training and evaluation outline (T&EO) is synonymous with insurgent, sympathizer, or other hostile force. | | |
| *1. Unit leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. Includes human intelligence [HUMINT] and signal intelligence [SIGNIT]). | | |
| *2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>b. Conduct a map reconnaissance.</p> <p>NOTE: Should involve the analysis of aerial imagery, photographs, or any other detailed information about the building(s) or other urban terrain for which the unit is responsible.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Obtain maps and diagrams. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Obtain maps of subway systems, railways, and mass transit routes. (b) Obtain diagrams of underground water, sewer, and utility systems. (c) Obtain diagrams of electrical power stations and emergency services. (d) Obtain diagrams of fuel supply and storage facilities. (e) Obtain maps and diagrams of mass communications facilities such as cellular phones, computer hubs, radio, and telephone. (f) Identify areas that limit the unit's ability to maneuver. <p>c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the urban area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets. (2) Define the urban area environment and describe its effects. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Identify covered and concealed approaches to the urban area. (b) Identify mobility corridors to include air, building level, intra-building level, street level, and subterranean level. (c) Identify buildings protected by the law of land warfare such as churches, medical facilities, historic monuments, and other facilities dedicated to arts and sciences, provided they are not being used for military purposes. (d) Identify areas and facilities restricted by current ROE. (e) Identify stadiums, parks, open fields, playgrounds, and other open areas that may be used for landing zones, holding areas, or engagement areas. (f) Identify construction sites that may contain barrier materials. (g) Identify significant fire hazards and locations of other hazardous material (HAZMAT), such as hazardous industrial waste. (h) Identify areas that limit the unit's ability to employ maximum combat power due to the need to minimize damage and rubble effects. (i) Identify other logistics infrastructure that could affect the operation such as sources of potable water, bulk fuel and transport systems, and so forth. (3) Evaluate the enemy. (4) Determine enemy courses of action (COAs). Identify what the enemy will do and what information is needed to confirm the enemy's action (S2). <p>d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include location and orientation of the enemy. (2) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems if applicable. (3) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems if applicable. (4) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and mines. (5) Include known or suspected use of biological or chemical weapons. <p>e. Develop R&S plan and employ R&S assets early in the MDMP process.</p> | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated R&S plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates. (2) Develop a R&S plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent. (3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit. f. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Divide the area to be searched into zones. (2) Organize subordinate companies or elements. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Designate a cordon element (Surrounds and secures the area during the search.) (b) Designate a search element (Executes the search mission.) (c) Designate a reserve element as required (Assists the other two elements if needed.) g. Integrate and synchronize battlefield operating systems (BOS) as required. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Plan fire support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets. (b) Plan suppression and obscuration fires in support of breaching operations as required. (c) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort. (d) Plan fires beyond the objective area to support a hasty attack or defense. (e) Plan fires in support of the approach to the objective area. (f) Plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves. (g) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets. (2) Plan engineer support (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follows.) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed. (b) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan. (c) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination including supporting CS and CSS units. (d) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis. (e) Address each task and assign responsibility when developing the SOEO. (f) Determine breach site location and required number of breach lanes based on the scheme of maneuver, actions on the objective, and the size of the assault force if required. (g) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort or support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation. (3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (b) Disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit. (c) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions such as breaching or assaults. (d) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites. (4) Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support if support has been provided by higher headquarters. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure adequate AD of the unit during movement to and actions in the objective area. (b) Shift assets as required by phase of the operation. (c) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during breaching operations or movements through restrictive terrain. (5) Plan CSS. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements. (b) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation. h. Develop contingency plans for contact prior to and after actions in the objective area. i. Establish clear abort criteria. j. Conduct risk management. | | |
| <p>3. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.</p> | | |
| <p>4. Unit prepares for the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. b. Conducts extensive R&S. c. Conducts precombat checks. d. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent. e. Coordinates with the local civilian police force to conduct the actual search if their numbers and training permit. f. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible. g. Positions forces to support the plan. | | |
| <p>5. Unit conducts the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducts movement into the area to be searched. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Departs IAW movement tables and in the configuration specified by the OPORD. (2) Approaches the area by stealth maintaining security during movement without being detected by the enemy. (3) Moves during the hours of darkness, if possible, using as many different routes as possible into the area. b. Establishes the cordon (cordon element). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Moves rapidly into the positions by stealth IAW TSOP, order, or guidance from higher headquarters. (2) Surrounds the area simultaneously to prevent escape of insurgents and to block any reinforcements. If this is not possible, uses observed fire to cover that portion not covered by Soldiers. If possible, this is normally conducted during limited visibility. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (3) Positions elements in overwatch or blocking positions to support the cordon and isolate the search area from reinforcements. (4) Establishes a foothold in the assigned area. (5) Secures the objective area. (6) Adjusts cordon as required and closes gaps using patrols or a series of observation posts to prevent enemy from escaping. (7) Orients on individuals evading the search. (8) Establish checkpoints and roadblocks to control movement into and out of search area. (9) Protects the force conducting the actual search. c. Conducts the search (search element). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Announces the search. (2) Conducts the search of suspected insurgents or sympathizers, supplies, and equipment with the least inconvenience to the populace using one of three methods. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Assembles inhabitants in a central location if they appear to be hostile. (This method provides the most control and simplifies the search and interrogation; however, taking inhabitants away from their dwellings encourages looting and ill feelings.) (b) Restricts inhabitants to their homes. (This prohibits civilian movement and discourages looting, but makes control and interrogation difficult.) (c) Controls the heads of households. (Reduces looting and ensures the search teams do not steal anything; this is the best method of searching since it is less disruptive to the inhabitants.) (3) Searches all underground and underwater areas. (4) Uses observed fire to cover any gaps in the cordon. (5) Inspects any freshly excavated ground (It could be a hiding place.) (6) Uses mine detectors to locate metal objects underground and underwater. (7) Considers any enemy material found to be booby trapped until inspection proves it safe. (8) Prevents hostile forces from outside the search area from joining the inhabitants of the area and interfering with the search. | | |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 6. Unit commander or designated representative controls the unit's rate of search and directs reorganization as needed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Employs the reserve to assist cordon and search elements as the situation requires. b. Reports the progress of the unit to the higher headquarters commander. c. Enforces the ROE or ROI. | | |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 7. Unit consolidates as necessary. | | |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 8. Unit reorganizes as necessary. | | |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 9. Unit secures captured insurgents or enemy as required. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Uses the least force to detain the insurgents. b. Turns the insurgents over to the local police as soon as the situation allows. | | |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 10. Unit treats and evacuates casualties. | | |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 11. Unit withdraws from the search area. | | |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 12. Unit processes captured documents or equipment as required. | | |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 13. Unit continues operations as directed. | | |

| TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK: | | | | | | | |
|---|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|--------------|
| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|---|--|
| 07-1-1207 | Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-1225 | Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-4000 | Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5036 | Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5081 | Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5135 | Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5162 | Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5171 | Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5180 | Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

- TASK:** Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (07-OPFOR-0016)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. It has dispatched small teams into the enemy rear area to disrupt combat service support (CSS) operations. All necessary personnel and equipment are available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR locates the enemy rear support bases and command and control facilities. It destroys supplies and equipment, delays and disrupts CSS operations, or inflicts casualties through probes IAW the operation order and the commander's guidance.
- TASK:** Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

| | | |
|------------------|--|---|
| ELEMENTS: | HHC INF BN (BFV) TANK COMPANY, TK BN HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (M113) RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) | HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI) ANTIARMOR CO INF BN |
|------------------|--|---|

TASK: Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-1027)

| | | |
|-------------------------|------------|--------------|
| (FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) | (FM 5-102) | (FM 21-60) |
| (FM 3-21.91 [7-91]) | (FM 5-103) | (FM 90-7) |
| (FM 3-55 [100-55])(TBP) | (FM 6-30) | (FM 101-5) |
| (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) | (FM 20-3) | (FM 101-5-1) |
| (FM 5-71-2) | (FM 20-32) | (FM 101-5-2) |

| | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|----------|
| ITERATION: | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | (Circle) |
| COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: | | | | | P | U | (Circle) |

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters. It has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to defend from battle positions at a specific location and time. Higher headquarters has positioned security forces forward of the BN/TF defensive positions. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters and units at all echelons. It has also established a digital connection with the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All supporting overlays and graphics are available through ABCS. The unit has received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF defended in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and the higher commander's guidance or intent. The BN/TF defended from mutually supporting positions that it prepared, occupied, and reconnoitered before the "defend not later than (NLT)" time specified in the order. The BN/TF adjusted positions to cover target reference points (TRPs), engagement areas (EAs), and sectors of fire, based on the common operating picture (COP). The BN/TF defeated the enemy force by massing fires into engagement areas. The BN/TF complied with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: **GO** **NO-GO**

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>NOTE: When defending, forces can be arrayed using the techniques of defense from a battle position, reverse slope defense, defense of a strong point, perimeter defense, and so on.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Unit leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Conduct a map reconnaissance. c. Organize operations around a framework of a security zone, a main battle area (MBA), a rear area, and a reserve. d. Conduct IPB. <p>NOTE: IPB is a staff responsibility. If possible, it should be conducted collaboratively among echelons.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets. (2) Define the battlefield environment. (3) Describe battlefield effects. (4) Produce a modified combined obstacle overlay (MCOO). (5) Evaluate the enemy. (6) Determine enemy courses of actions (ECOAs). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. (D) Develop the situation template (SITEMP) and post it in ASAS (S2) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include likely enemy engagement areas (EAs). (2) Include location and orientation of enemy forces. (3) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserve. (4) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems. (5) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets. (6) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets. (7) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINES). (8) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems. (9) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs). f. Employ intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) assets early in the MDMP process. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU and to support the planning process. (2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR) and accomplishes his intent. (3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information between the BN/TF and higher headquarters. (4) Seek to determine the enemy's strength and disposition. (5) Identify what the enemy will do and what information is needed to confirm the enemy's action (S2). (6) Determine composition, disposition, and strength of enemy reserve force. (7) Determine enemy vulnerabilities. g. D) Distribute all intelligence products to the entire staff and subordinate units to support parallel planning, ensuring synchronization between ASAS and other digital systems. h. Organize the BN/TF to accomplish the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Organize operations around a framework of a security zone, a main battle area (MBA), a rear area, and a reserve. (2) Determine how to array forces (forward defense or defense in depth) based on higher commander's guidance and factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). (3) Determine the task organization and command and control (C2) arrangement of subordinate headquarters. i. Develop a defensive scheme of maneuver. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Define how the commander intends to mass the effects of direct and indirect fires with obstacles and use of terrain to shape the battlefield and defeat or destroy the enemy. (2) Develop a security plan that is integrated with higher and adjacent elements and allocates/positions security forces with appropriate CS elements. (3) Develop a plan that focuses on a defeat mechanism. (4) Analyze forces and available assets with particular attention to obstacle assets and fire support assets. (5) Define the engineer and fire support allocation in terms of capability. (6) Determine what effect forces, fires, and obstacles must achieve on enemy formations by avenue of approach and how these effects will support the defeat mechanism. (7) Define the task(s) and purpose for subordinate units. (8) Establish priorities for combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS). (9) Develop obstacle and fire-support plans concurrently with the defensive force array. Define a task, purpose, and end state for each obstacle and target in keeping with the commander's stated essential fire-support tasks (EFSTs) and with the intended obstacle effects. (10) Identify where and when the commander will accept risk. (11) Identify critical events and, if required, phases of the operation. (12) Designate the main effort with associated task(s) and purpose(s), by phase. (13) Designate supporting efforts with associated task(s) and purpose(s), defining how they support the main effort. (14) Designate supporting efforts with associated task(s) and purpose(s), defining how they support the main effort. (15) Define ISR and security operations. (16) Provide for withdrawal of the security force. (17) Outline the movement and positioning of forces. (18) Describe the concept of fires. (19) Integrate obstacle effects with maneuver and fires. (20) Identify the maneuver options that may develop during execution. (21) Identify means and mechanisms for exploiting defensive success. j. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating Systems (BOS). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Plan fire support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Designate priority of fires (Initial priority of fires is normally allocated to forward security forces.) (b) Plan targets along enemy reconnaissance avenues of approach. (c) Plan to engage approaching enemy formations at maximum range with indirect fires and close air support (CAS) if available. (d) Plan the transition of fires to support the main battle area (MBA) fight. (e) Develop clear triggers to adjust fire-support coordination measures (FSCMs) and priorities of fire. (f) Coordinate the movement of indirect-fire assets to support the EFSTs. (g) Ensure movement of indirect-fire assets is coordinated with the scheme of maneuver. (h) Develop and rehearse the observation plan to ensure all targets are adequately observed. (i) Ensure integration of fires in support of critical obstacle effects. (j) Plan fires to support actions in the rear. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (2) Plan engineer support and scheme of engineer operations (SOEO) to create detailed terrain analysis products (BN/TF engineer) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Plan the transition to countermobility and survivability efforts in detail. (b) Plan to site situational obstacles early. (c) Plan multiple locations for situational obstacles to support depth and flexibility. (d) Plan and coordinate adequate security for obstacle emplacement. (e) Integrate triggers for obstacles in the decision support template (DST). (f) Coordinate obstacle effort along unit and adjacent unit boundaries. (g) Plan the countermobility effort to shape the enemy's maneuver into positions of vulnerability. (h) Plan adequate mobility support for withdrawing security forces, the reserve, and repositioning of MBA forces. (i) (D) Develop obstacle plans that are synchronized with maneuver and fires and maximize all resources and update overlay data. (3) (D) Plan and coordinate air defense artillery (ADA) support, if available, integrating short-range air defense (SHORAD) and high to medium altitude air defense (HIMAD) employment considerations through use of forward area air defense command, control, and intelligence (FAAD2CI; Air Defense Officer [ADO]). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Plan to position ADA assets and radar along air avenues of approach to provide early detection and engagement of enemy aircraft. (b) Plan all-around air defense protection to the unit with mutual supporting and over lapping fires (Weight fires toward likely air avenues of approach.) (c) Plan primary, alternate, and supplementary firing positions to support defensive positions in depth, delays, and counterattacks. (d) Establish priorities of air defense protection based on the criticality and vulnerability, of BN/TF units and the enemy. (e) Define process to disseminate early warning to all task force elements by FM voice communications or FBCB2. (4) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support. | | |
| <p>NOTE: Decontamination, smoke, and additional reconnaissance assets (other than recon assets from the division cavalry squadron) will be corps assets task organized to the division and will not likely be FBCB2 equipped.</p> | | |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the BDE ISR plan. (b) Position NBC reconnaissance assets (if available) forward in the security zone and at likely locations for enemy employment of chemical agents (Support to counterattacking forces is especially important.) (c) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities. (d) Establish decontamination priorities of support and effort. (e) Integrate the employment of smoke to support the defense. (f) Ensure all subordinate elements clearly understand changes in the priority of support, task organization, and positioning of NBC assets. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>(5) (D) Plan combat service support (CSS) operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Plan the sustainment of security forces. (b) Address casualty evacuation, equipment recovery, and resupply for security forces. (c) Plan the resupply of critical classes of supply for security forces to support a quick transition from their security mission to follow-on missions. (d) Provide the security forces with pre-positioned stocks of critical supplies in depth of the security zone. (e) Determine or plan primary and alternate main supply routes (MSRs) to support the full depth of the defense. (f) Coordinate MSRs to avoid interfering with maneuver or obstacle plans. (g) Stockpile limited amounts of Class III and Class V supplies in centrally located battle positions (BPs) or locations. (h) Institute a C2 plan for CSS vehicles in the unit area. (i) Plan to send forward push packages of critically needed supplies on a scheduled basis. (j) Plan resupply during limited visibility to reduce the chances of enemy interference. (k) Plan to dispatch maintenance assets forward to reduce the need to evacuate equipment. (l) Plan for the use of aviation assets (if available) to resupply critical supplies. (m) Plan for the increased demand on decontaminants and mission oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear. (n) Plan for high expenditure of Class V and increased demand of barrier materials (Class IV). (o) Plan casualty evacuation. (p) Coordinate with higher headquarters' civil affairs (CA) teams concerning refugee control and CSS requirements. <p>k. Conduct risk management.</p> | | |
| <p>3. (D) BN/TF commander and staff publish the order and distribute all paragraphs, annexes, and supporting overlays throughout the BN/TF via FBCB2 (D) . They also task-organize the BN/TF to accomplish the mission (S3).</p> | | |
| <p>NOTE: The BN/TF S3 must ensure the S6 receives task organization data in time to coordinate the unit task reorganization (UTR, the reorganization of the digital network to correspond with changes in unit organization) change within the BN/TF. The UTR change should be avoided during operations as it will crash and reboot the affected units' FBCB2 systems. This in turn causes a temporary loss of SA (a few minutes) and the need to verify connectivity and address groups. This does not prohibit commanders from changing task organization during operations, but leaders must recognize this message traffic will continue to flow IAW the original or previous task organization.</p> | | |
| <p>4. Conduct confirmation briefings between the BN/TF commander, the staff, and subordinate leaders immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.</p> | | |
| <p>5. BN/TF conducts mission preparation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. b. Conducts extensive ISR. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>c. Conducts precombat checks and inspections.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Inspects and monitors the progress of defensive preparations to ensure they met the commander's timeline. (2) Seeks to identify shortfalls early enough to shift resources. (3) Pays special attention to the array of forces, fires, and obstacles along flanks, seams between subordinate elements, or other areas that enemy will likely try to penetrate. (4) Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent. (5) Use the preparation time prior to the enemy's attack to build the strongest defense possible. (6) Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible. (7) Positions forces. | | |
| <p>6. BN/TF occupies and improves defensive positions.</p> <p>a. Initiates occupation of defensive positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) (D) Issues a FRAGO and graphics to subordinate elements using FBCB2. At a minimum, the FRAGO includes the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Includes changes in friendly and enemy situations. (b) Includes changes to BN/TF tasks and purpose and general changes to the scheme of maneuver that facilitate occupation of the defensive position. (c) Includes changes to task organization, including digital UTR changes and effect times. (2) Enters defensive positions from the flank or rear. (3) Ensures that subordinate unit sectors of fire and observation overlap and connect with adjacent units. (4) (D) Designates defensive control measures and disseminates the information to subordinate commanders via FBCB2. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Identifies tentative locations for each company's primary defensive position. (b) Identifies TRPs, EAs, and direct fire responsibilities for primary positions. (c) Identifies tentative locations for the subordinate unit's supplementary defensive position. (d) Identifies TRPs, EAs, and direct fire responsibilities for supplementary defensive position. (5) Adjusts positions as necessary to cover TRPs, EAs, or sectors of fire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Verifies direct fire plans and proofs positions. (b) Adjusts primary positions as required. (c) Adjusts alternate and supplementary positions as required. (d) Selects covered and concealed displacement routes between primary, alternate, and supplementary positions as necessary. (6) Completes occupation of the defensive positions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Implements changes based on guidance from higher headquarters. (b) Implements changes based on guidance from higher headquarters. (c) Directs the BN/TF to continue improvement of the defensive position with additional steps of a deliberate occupation as time permits. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (7) Maintains security by employing scout platoon, observation posts (OPs), and so forth. (8) Provides security for elements working forward in sector such as engineers emplacing obstacles. (9) Secures obstacles. (10) Observes templated enemy landing zones (LZs). (11) Clears possible enemy OP locations. b. Continues to prepare or upgrade defensive positions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Marks vehicle positions. (2) Marks fire control measures in the engagement area. (3) Digs survivability positions within the unit's capability. (4) Position ammunition caches. (5) Emplaces protective obstacles. (6) Reports progress to higher headquarters. c. Conducts reconnaissance and surveillance operations in front of defensive positions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Designates reconnaissance group. (2) Designates overwatch elements for the reconnaissance group. (3) Moves to a vantage point to view defensive position from enemy's perspective if possible. (4) Uses covered and concealed routes. (5) Moves through engagement area and identifies all likely enemy avenues of approach and key and defensive terrain. (6) Evaluates any lateral routes. (7) Determines how the enemy will attack. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Considers how the enemy will employ reconnaissance assets. (b) Considers where and when the enemy will change formations or establish support by fire positions. (c) Considers where and when the enemy will conduct a breach or assault. (d) Considers where and when the enemy will commit follow-on forces. (e) Considers effects of the enemy's combat multipliers. (f) Considers enemy's rate of movement (8) (D) Updates digital systems to incorporate the following information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Updates fire plans and sector sketches and annotates graphic control measures. (b) Plans fire support in depth, anticipating the enemy scheme of maneuver and shaping the battlefield. (c) Emplaces observers in vantage points within the defensive area that affords a clear view of the AO. (d) Establishes BN/TF fire support control measures (FSCM) that correspond to METT-TC. (e) Identifies alternate and successive defensive positions. (f) Designates covered and concealed routes between alternate and successive defensive positions. (g) Designates, marks, and records key locations (in the defensive positions and in the engagement area (EA). | | |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 7. (D) BN/TF engineer integrates obstacles into the defense and disseminates obstacle overlay(s) via FCB2. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies any obstacles the BN/TF has been tasked to emplace by higher headquarters. b. Specifies obstacle locations with defined task and purpose for each. | | |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Provides security during emplacement. d. Directs obstacle emplacement. e. Identifies locations for massing direct and indirect fires. f. Identifies and marks the necessary control measures on the ground. g. Identifies tentative locations of key weapon systems to provide obstacle coverage. h. Sites obstacle group(s). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ensures obstacles are covered by direct and indirect fires. (2) Identifies dead space. (3) Marks general limits and orientation of obstacle groups. (4) Sites and reports obstacles. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Reports completion of obstacle emplacement, integration, and turnover or transfer. (b) Reports grid locations of the obstacle group and fire control measures. i. (D) Distributes plans and routinely updates information throughout preparation phase to the BN/TF and higher/adjacent units via FBCB2. | | |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 8. BN/TF reports occupation of defensive positions to higher headquarters <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Submits the completed obstacle and fire plans. b. (D) Updates the COP. | | |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 9. BN/TF executes the defense. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Withdraws OPs and unit security elements. b. Engages the enemy (in the security area or MBA) on order or when engagement criteria are met. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Employs and focuses direct fires, repositioning to alternate positions as necessary to destroy enemy forces and maintain survivability (subordinate leaders). (2) Shifts, refocuses, and redistribute direct fires to defeat identified enemy elements (unit commander and company commanders). (3) Employs indirect fires IAW defensive fire plan to achieve desired effects on the enemy force (BN/TF commander, FSO, or company commanders). (4) Adjusts indirect fires (BN/TF commander, FSO, or company commanders). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Shifts indirect fires to suppress or destroy enemy elements. (b) Lifts indirect fires to facilitate movement of friendly elements or when desired target effects on the enemy have been achieved. (5) (D) Issues additional FRAGOs in FBCB2 or via FM to direct or task subordinate elements as required (BN/TF commander/S3). (6) (D) Issues FRAGO in FBCB2 or via FM to displace when enemy advances in sufficient force to meet the specified displacement criteria. Moves to alternate, supplementary, or successive defensive positions as required to maintain flexibility and survivability (subordinate units). (7) (D) Sends spot reports (SPOTREPs) and situation reports (SITREPs) through FBCB2, and make recommendations to higher headquarters (BN/TF commander). c. Commits reserves for counterattack IAW the higher commander's intent. <p>NOTE: Once committed, the counterattack force is normally the main effort.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Recognizes enemy deception efforts aimed at causing the premature or indecisive commitment of the reserve. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (2) Uses decision points and named areas of interest (NAIs) developed during construction of the decision support template to trigger execution of a counterattack. (3) Defeats the targeted enemy force before being attacked by subsequent enemy forces. (4) Seeks to avoid the enemy's strength (The most effective attacks are against exposed enemy flanks or rear). (5) Takes advantage of the protection and concealment offered by the terrain or limited visibility. (6) Attacks with long-range direct fires from concealed positions synchronized with all available fire support. (7) Launches counterattacks around other committed units rather than through them when feasible. (8) Provides for the removal of the reserve or the integration of the reserve into the defense after the counterattack. | | |
| <p>*10. BN/TF leaders assess the operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. (D) Continuously monitor and update the COP and the progress of the operation in ABCS. b. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent. | | |
| <p>11. BN/TF consolidates as necessary.</p> | | |
| <p>12. BN/TF reorganizes as necessary.</p> | | |
| <p>13. BN/TF secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.</p> | | |
| <p>14. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties.</p> | | |
| <p>15. BN/TF processes captured documents or equipment as required.</p> | | |
| <p>16. BN/TF continues operations as directed.</p> | | |

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP |
| 07-1-3000 | Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-22-MTP |

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|---|--|
| 07-1-5000 | Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-5036 | Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5081 | Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5144 | Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-6081 | Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Infiltration/Exfiltration (07-OPFOR-0018)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR infiltrates/exfiltrates personnel through the enemy lines. All necessary personnel and equipment are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the infiltration/exfiltration IAW the operation order or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR determines gaps in the enemy's lines/defenses and infiltrates/exfiltrates without being detected. The OPFOR accomplishes the commander's intent (gains information, attacks a position from the rear, conducts raids or ambushes, captures prisoners, seizes key terrain, or aids the main attack).

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: ANTIARMOR CO INF BN RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
 HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV)
 HHC INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) TANK COMPANY, TK BN
 HHC, TANK BN (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI)

TASK: Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-1036A)

| | | |
|-------------------------|-------------|--------------|
| (FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) | (FM 7-20) | (FM 90-7) |
| (FM 3-55 [100-55])(TBP) | (FM 7-85) | (FM 101-5) |
| (FM 3-90 [100-40]) | (FM 21-60) | (FM 101-5-1) |
| (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) | (FM 34-130) | (FM 101-5-2) |
| (FM 5-71-2) | | |

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to delay at the location and time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays or graphics. The delay may be either to delay in sector or to delay forward of a specified line or position for a specified time. The enemy can attack with ground forces (mounted or dismounted) supported by indirect fire and air. The unit has a field artillery battery, engineer assets based on doctrine, and an air defense platoon in direct support (DS). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit has received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions, and some should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The unit delays in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The unit maintains contact with the enemy. The unit avoids penetration or bypass by more than a platoon-sized enemy force. The unit delays by combining maneuver, fires, obstacles, and avoidance of decisive engagement to achieve the commander's intent. The unit complies with the ROE or ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: **GO** **NO-GO**

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Unit leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. b. Conduct a map reconnaissance. c. Express the commander's visualization of anticipated enemy actions integrated with the staff's intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>d. Conduct IPB.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets. (2) Define the battlefield environment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Determine ground and air mobility corridors and avenues of approach to determine where the enemy can maneuver to reach his likely objectives. (b) Determine the size of the enemy force that each avenue of approach and mobility corridor can support. (c) Identify limitations on friendly maneuver and positioning. (d) Identify restrictive terrain that may slow the enemy's attack, cause a separation of forces, create difficulties in command and control, or force the enemy to conduct defile drills (for example, narrow valleys, passes, or urban areas). (e) Identify terrain such as choke points that create potential enemy vulnerabilities and opportunities for friendly attack. (f) Identify terrain that canalizes enemy formations into areas that provide defending forces good fields of fire, observation, and flanking fires. (g) Identify areas dominated by key or defensible terrain that allows massing of fires. (h) Include adjacent sectors and areas forward and to the rear of the unit. (3) Describe battlefield effects. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Identify the limitations and opportunities the environment offers on the potential operations of friendly and enemy forces. (b) Determine the effects of weather on operations. (c) Include general characteristics of the terrain, as well as such factors as politics, civilian press, local population, and demographics if applicable. (d) Produce a modified combined obstacle overlay (MCOO). (4) Evaluate the enemy. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Determine enemy size. (b) Identify enemy location(s). (c) Determine enemy composition. (d) Identify potential enemy vulnerabilities based on the enemy's tactics, friendly and enemy capabilities, the terrain, and the weather. (5) Determine enemy courses of actions (COAs). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Reflect the enemy's flexibility and true potential. (b) Include likely enemy objectives. (c) Include enemy composition, disposition, and strength. (d) Include schemes of maneuver to include routes, formations, locations and times the enemy may change formations, possible maneuver options available to the enemy, and key decision points. (e) Include time and distance factors for the enemy's maneuver through the area of operation. (f) Include likely employment of all enemy combat multipliers including artillery, air defense, obstacles, chemical strikes, dynamic obstacles, and attack aircraft. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (g) Include likely use of all enemy reconnaissance assets and organizations to include likely reconnaissance objectives, reconnaissance avenues of approach, times to expect enemy reconnaissance, and likely locations of enemy observers and observation posts. (h) Include identification and likely locations of enemy high-value targets (HVTs), such as artillery formations, reserves, and command and control (C2) nodes. (i) Include likely locations, compositions, strength, employment options, and time and distance factors for enemy reserves and follow-on forces. (j) Include locations of enemy decision points that determine selection of a specific COA. e. Develop the situation template (SITEMP). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include likely enemy engagement areas (EAs). (2) Include location and orientation of enemy forces. (3) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserve (4) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems. (5) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets. (6) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets. (7) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINES). (8) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems. (9) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAs). f. Choose the best method of delay (delay on successive or delay on alternate positions) or combine the methods during factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). g. Employ R&S assets early in the MDMP process. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated R&S plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates. (2) Develop a R&S plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent. (3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit. (4) Seek to determine the enemy's strength and disposition. (5) Identify what the enemy will do and what information is needed to confirm the enemy's action (S2). (6) Determine composition, disposition, and strength of enemy reserve force. (7) Determine enemy vulnerabilities. (8) Select delay positions that provide the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Provide good observation and long-range fields of fire. (b) Provide covered or concealed routes of movement to the rear. (c) Provide a road network or areas providing good cross-country trafficability. (d) Provide existing or reinforcing obstacles to the front and flanks. h. Distribute all intelligence products to the entire staff and subordinate units to support parallel planning. i. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Determine force array and allocation of combat multipliers, particularly fires and obstacles. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (2) Determine the task organization and command and control (C2) arrangement of subordinate headquarters. j. Develop the scheme of maneuver. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Define how the unit intends to mass the effects of direct and indirect fires with obstacles. (2) Define how the unit intends to use terrain to shape the battlefield and inflict maximum damage on the enemy IAW the higher headquarters commander's intent. (3) Analyze forces and available assets with particular attention to obstacle assets and fire support assets. (4) Define the engineer and fire support allocation in terms of capability. (5) Determine what effect forces, fires, and obstacles must achieve on enemy formations by avenue of approach and how these effects will support the commander's intent. (6) Define the task(s) and purpose for subordinate units. (7) Establish priorities for combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS). (8) Develop obstacle and fire plans concurrently with the force array, again defining a task and purpose for each obstacle and target in keeping with the commander's stated essential fire-support tasks (EFSTs) and intended obstacle effects. (9) Identify where and when the commander will accept risk. (10) Identify critical events and, if required, phases of the operation. (11) Define R&S and security operations. (12) Outline the movement and positioning of forces. (13) Describe the concept of fires. (14) Integrate obstacle effects with maneuver and fires. (15) Identify the maneuver options that may develop during execution. (16) Identify means and mechanisms for exploiting success within the commander's intent. k. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating Systems (BOS). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Plan fire support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Designate priority of fires (Initial priority of fires is normally allocated to forward security forces.) (b) Plan targets along enemy reconnaissance avenues of approach. (c) Plan to engage approaching enemy formations at maximum range with indirect fires and close air support (CAS) if available. (d) Develop clear triggers to adjust fire support coordinating measures (FSCMs) and priority of fires. (e) Coordinate the movement of indirect-fire assets to support the EFSTs. (f) Ensure indirect fire asset movements are coordinated with the scheme of maneuver. (g) Develop and rehearse the observation plan to ensure all targets are adequately observed. (h) Ensure integration of fires in support of critical obstacle effects. (i) Plan fires to support a withdrawal, defense, or counterattack IAW the commander's intent. (2) Plan engineer support (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follows.) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Plan the transition to countermobility and survivability efforts in detail. (b) Plan to site situational obstacles early. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (c) Plan multiple locations for situational obstacles to support depth and flexibility. (d) Plan and coordinate adequate security for obstacle emplacement. (e) Integrate triggers for obstacles in the decision support template (DST). (f) Plan the countermobility effort to shape the enemy's maneuver into positions of vulnerability. (g) Plan adequate mobility support for the withdrawal or countermobility. (h) Develop obstacle plans that are synchronized with maneuver and fires and maximize all resources. (3) Plan or coordinate air defense artillery (ADA) support if available. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Plan to position ADA assets and radar along air avenues of approach to provide early detection and engagement of enemy (b) Plan all-around air defense protection to the unit with mutual supporting and over lapping fires (Weight fires toward likely air avenues of approach.) (c) Plan primary, alternate, and supplementary firing positions to support defensive positions in depth, delays, and counterattacks. (d) Plan to reposition ADA assets to replace lost assets or mass against significant air threats. (e) Establish priorities of air defense protection based on the criticality, vulnerability, and recuperability of units and the enemy. (4) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate NBC R&S assets (if available) into the unit's R&S plans. (b) Position NBC R&S assets (if available) forward in the security zone and at likely locations for enemy employment of chemical agents (Support to counterattacking forces is especially important.) (c) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities. (d) Establish decontamination priorities of support and effort. (e) Integrate the employment of smoke to support unit maneuver. (f) Coordinate the use of artillery smoke and plan mechanized smoke (ensure they are synchronized with other actions). (g) Ensure all subordinate units clearly understand changes in the priority of support, task organization, and positioning of NBC assets. (5) Plan CSS. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Address casualty evacuation, equipment recovery, and resupply for security forces. (b) Plan the resupply of critical classes of supply for security forces to support a quick transition from their security mission to follow-on missions. (c) Provide the security forces with pre-positioned stocks of critical supplies in depth of the security zone. (d) Stockpile limited amounts of class III and class V supplies in centrally located battle positions (BPs) or locations. (e) Plan to send forward push packages of critically needed supplies on a scheduled basis. (f) Plan resupply (if required) during limited visibility to reduce the chances of enemy interference. Plan equipment evacuation. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (g) Plan for high expenditure of class V and increased demand of barrier materials (class IV). (h) Plan casualty evacuation. i. Identify special procedures and positions for limited visibility operations. m. Plan for and coordinate battle handover and rearward passage of lines. n. Integrate deception into the overall plan. o. Conduct risk management. p. Specify the degrees of risk. <p>3. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.</p> <p>4. Unit prepares for the delay.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. b. Conducts extensive R&S. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Selects routes to provide maximum mobility and emplaces obstacles or enhance existing obstacles to degrade the mobility of the enemy. (2) Selects and marks routes to the rear and subsequent delay positions c. Prepares subsequent positions. d. Designates routes to allow withdrawal for subordinate elements between battle positions (BPs) or exits in each sector. e. Ensures all obstacles are covered by fire to slow the enemy and to allow for disengagement by friendly units. f. Coordinates fires between the moving element and adjacent, supporting, and overwatch elements. g. Coordinates the withdrawal of unit elements with higher headquarters and adjacent units. h. Conducts precombat checks and inspections. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Inspect and monitor the progress of defensive preparations to ensure they met the commander's timeline. (2) Seeks to identify shortfalls early enough to shift resources. (3) Pays special attention to the array of forces, fires, and obstacles along flanks, seams between subordinate elements. (4) Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent. i. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible. j. Positions forces. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Assigns troop sectors, battle positions, or a combination thereof, consistent with the commander's intent and factors of METT-TC. (2) Occupies the initial delay position as a defensive position. (3) Positions the reserve in an area so that it can counterattack, move rapidly to reinforce, or cover the withdrawal of forward subordinate elements. (4) Locates the main command post (CP) and combat trains to the rear and behind next rearward phase line. (5) Locates the command group forward to control the operation. k. Prepares to delay at the time prescribed in the higher headquarters order. <p>5. Unit executes the delay.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Uses clearly defined decision points or events to trigger withdrawals. b. Ensures the security forces provide early warning on high-speed approaches and cover secondary approaches between BPs. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Exploits and reinforces existing obstacles within the limits of available materials, time, and personnel to aid withdrawal. d. Provides forces with sufficient lethality and fire support to cover the withdrawal of forward elements. e. Engages the enemy at the greatest range using long-range fires. f. Forces the enemy to deploy into assault formations repeatedly against successive BPs. g. Maintains contact with the enemy's main body. h. Maintains flank security. i. Achieves depth in the delay. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 6. Avoids decisive engagement, thus allowing the unit to withdraw and maneuver according to plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Approves subordinate element disengagement criteria (commander). b. Conducts internal passage of lines as required (subordinate elements). c. Ensures the unit is not bypassed or penetrated by more than a platoon-size element. 7. Unit leaders assess the operation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation. b. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent. 8. Unit withdraws, defends, or counterattacks IAW the order or guidance from higher headquarters. 9. Unit complies with ROE or ROI. 10. Unit consolidates as necessary. 11. Unit reorganizes as necessary. 12. Unit secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required. 13. Unit treats and evacuates casualties. 14. Unit processes captured documents or equipment as required. 15. Unit continues operations as directed. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|--|--|
| 07-1-1063 | Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-1144 | Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-1207 | Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2009 | Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2018 | Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2027 | Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2054 | Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-3000 | Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5018 | Conduct Battle Tracking (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP |
| 07-1-5036 | Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5054 | Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS (next page)

- TASK:** Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.
- TASK:** Execute Actions on Contact (07-OPFOR-0015)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR makes contact with the enemy by receipt of direct fires, indirect fires, or direct observation. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available. The OPFOR has indirect-fire, close air, and engineer support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR executed actions on contact IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR fired and maneuvered to rapidly rout the enemy, seize the initiative, and create advantageous conditions for subsequent operations.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) HHC INF BN (BFV)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) ANTIARMOR CO INF BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (M113) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
 TANK COMPANY, TK BN HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI)
 HHC, TANK BN (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI)

TASK: Conduct a Guard Mission (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-1045)

| | | |
|-------------------------|-------------|--------------|
| (FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) | (FM 5-71-2) | (FM 21-60) |
| (FM 3-55 [100-55])(TBP) | (FM 7-20) | (FM 101-5) |
| (FM 3-90 [100-40]) | (FM 7-85) | (FM 101-5-1) |
| (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) | (FM 20-32) | (FM 101-5-2) |

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. It has received an operations order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct either a stationary or moving guard mission. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters and units at all echelons. It has also established a digital connection with the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS, if equipped). They have received all overlays and graphics in digital format. All communications and reports follow the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF has received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducted the guard mission IAW TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF destroyed the enemy fixing force, maintained contact with enemy forces, and reported activity in the area of operations (AO). The BN/TF maintained continuous surveillance of assigned avenues of approach in the AO under all visibility conditions. Using available systems and support, the BN/TF impeded and harassed the enemy until the enemy main body deployed. The BN/TF then reports the enemy's direction of movement. The BN/TF does not allow enemy ground elements to pass through the security area undetected and unreported. The BN/TF destroys or causes to withdraw all enemy reconnaissance patrols. The BN/TF maintains contact with the main body and any security forces operating on its flanks. The BN/TF uses all available means, including decisive engagement, to prevent the enemy from penetrating to a position where it could observe and engage the main body. The BN/TF operates within the range of the main body's fire-support weapons. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as the result of friendly fire.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|-----------|--------------|
| 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order, or anticipate a new mission, and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>NOTE: The battle staff continuously updates the Joint Common Database (JCDB) and common operating picture (COP), and refines courses of action (COA) using information and intelligence from higher headquarters' feeds and intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. b. Conduct a map reconnaissance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Mark general trace, orientation, lateral and rear boundaries, and named areas of interest (NAIs). (2) Mark current and subsequent locations of the protected force. (3) Identify tentative defensive positions or observation posts (OPs) positions. (4) Identify route(s) to and from defensive positions or OPs. (5) Identify target reference points (TRPs). (6) Identify likely enemy avenues of approach. (7) Mark tentative dismount points if required. c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). | | |
| <p>NOTE: IPB is a staff responsibility. If possible, it must be conducted collaboratively among echelons to build a more complete COP and improve SU.</p> | | |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets. (2) Define the battlefield environment. (3) Describe battlefield effects. (4) Evaluate the enemy. (5) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAAs). d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces. (2) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserves. (3) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems. (4) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets. (5) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets. (6) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINES). (7) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems. (8) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs). e. Develop R&S plan and employ R&S assets early in the MDMP process. Develop intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) plan, and employ ISR assets to conduct reconnaissance throughout the MDMP process. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU and supports the planning process throughout the duration of the mission. (2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR) and accomplishes his intent. (3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous information flow between higher headquarters and the BN/TF. f. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Assign sufficient combat power to defeat, repel, or fix the lead elements of an enemy ground force before they can engage the main body with direct fires. (2) Dispatch liaison officers (LNOs) as required. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (3) Coordinate for additional combat, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) as required. (4) Attach combat support elements such as engineers in direct support (DS). (5) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets. g. Integrate and synchronize battlefield operating systems (BOS). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Plan fire support using Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System (AFATDS). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Synchronize fires on the objective to suppress, neutralize, and destroy critical enemy forces that most affect BN/TF closure on the objective. (b) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets. (c) Develop engagement criteria. (d) Plan obscuration fires as required (Mission, enemy, time and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations. METT-TC dependent). (e) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary. (f) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort. (g) Plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves. (h) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets to prevent fratricide. (2) (D) Plan engineer support and scheme of engineer operations (SOEO). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Address each task and assign responsibility when developing the SOEO. (b) (D) Utilize digital and photographic terrain visualization products from higher headquarters and ensure they are available and distributed to incorporate in planning breach sites, possible bypasses, possible and known enemy positions and friendly support by fire (SBF) positions. (c) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan. (d) (D) Disseminate confirmed OBSTINTEL immediately to all BN/TF elements, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units, via FBCB2. (e) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis. (f) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation. (g) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required. (3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support. | | |
| <p>NOTE: Decontamination, smoke, and additional reconnaissance assets (other than recon assets from the division cavalry squadron) will be corps assets task organized to the division and will not likely be FBCB2 equipped.</p> | | |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the unit's overall R&S plan. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (b) Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations. (c) (D) Develop a plan to immediately disseminate NBC threats, once detected, throughout the BN/TF. (d) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions such as breaching or assaults (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.) (e) (D) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis, and disseminate information that identifies planned and active decontamination site locations via FBCB2. (4) Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support (if support has been provided by higher headquarters). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure adequate AD of the BN/TF guard element and main body. (b) Shift assets as required by phase of the operation. (c) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during breaching operations or movements through restrictive terrain. (5) Plan CSS. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Assign priority of CSS support. (b) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements. (c) Ensure adequate CSS support to the ISR effort (The S4 plans and integrates timely resupply and evacuation support of forward ISR assets is well planned and integrated into the ISR plan.) (d) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets. (e) Support a rapid reorganization by timing the arrival of CSS support forward once the unit secures the objective (Establish clear priorities of support during reorganization.) (f) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation. h. Conduct risk management. i. Determine disengagement and displacement criteria. j. Designate on order battle positions (BPs) along route of march to block likely avenues of approach. k. Develop movement plan. l. Select or designate methods of communications. m. Develop contingency plans for chance enemy contact. n. Develop control measures both to enhance control and to prevent fratricide. Designate boundaries, contact points and other measures to promote mutual support and prevent gaps between subordinate elements. o. Coordinate for passage of lines if necessary. p. Coordinate battle handover with the protected force. 3. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinate commanders immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept. 4. BN/TF prepares for the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. b. Conducts extensive ISR operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Seek to determine the enemy's strength and disposition. (2) Determine location, orientation, type, depth, and composition of obstacles. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>(3) Determine locations of secure bypasses around obstacles. (4) Determine composition, disposition, and strength of reserves.</p> <p>c. Conducts precombat checks. d. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent. e. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible. f. Positions forces as per the plan.</p> <p>5. BN/TF exercises command and control (C2) of the guard mission. a. Coordinates and synchronizes actions of subordinate elements. b. Positions itself where it can best control subordinate elements. c. (D) Directs elements to move, on order, to phase lines (PLs), or to successive positions and screen, using FBCB2 to communicate orders and graphics to subordinate elements. d. Uses FRAGOs and graph control measures to direct subordinate element moves. e. Ensures elements report when they occupy a new screen line or observation post (OP), cross phase lines, or reach march objectives.</p> <p>6. BN/TF executes assigned guard mission. a. Conducts a passage of lines if required. b. Destroys the enemy advance guard. c. Maintains contact with enemy forces and reports activity in the area of operations (AO). d. Maintains continuous surveillance of assigned avenues of approach in the AO under all visibility conditions. e. Impedes and harasses the enemy using available systems and support. f. Causes the enemy main body to deploy, and then reports its direction of movement. g. Allows no enemy ground element to pass through the security area undetected and unreported. h. Destroys or causes the withdrawal of all enemy reconnaissance patrols. i. Maintains contact with the main body and any other security forces operating on its flanks. j. Uses all available means, including decisive engagement, to prevent the enemy from penetrating to a position where it could observe and engage the main body. k. Operates within the range of the main body's fire support weapons l. Conducts advance guard, if assigned.</p> <p>NOTE: Generally a BN/TF is given an advance guard mission when the brigade is moving as part of the division main body in a movement to contact. The advance guard is normally conducted as a movement to contact.</p> <p>(1) Coordinates and conducts the rearward passage of lines of the covering force. (2) Reduces obstacles to create lanes or improves existing lanes as required to support maneuver of the main body. (3) Eliminates enemy forces bypassed by the covering force. (4) Coordinates and conducts a forward passage of lines through the covering force and fixes enemy forces in the enemy's main defensive positions to allow the friendly main body to maneuver.</p> <p>m. Conducts rear guard, if assigned.</p> <p>NOTE: When a division conducting a movement to contact requires rear security, a BN/TF may be given a rear guard mission.</p> | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**GO NO-GO**

| | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>(1) Maintains contact with the main body.</p> <p>(2) Protects the rear of the main body and all CS and CSS elements in the main body by conducting an attack, a defense, or a delay.</p> <p>(3) Follows the same axis of advance as the protected force at a distance prescribed by the main body commander.</p> <p>(4) Displaces to successive battle positions (BPs) along phase lines (PLs) or delay lines in depth as the main body moves (if conducting rear guard for a moving force).</p> <p>n. Conducts flank guard, if assigned.</p> <p>NOTE: A BN/TF is given a flank guard mission when a division is conducting a movement to contact.</p> <p>(1) Guards a stationary force.</p> <p>(a) Establishes defensive positions in assigned BPs or within its assigned AO and establishes a screening element forward of these positions.</p> <p>(b) Attacks, defends to defeat, fixes enemy ground forces before they can engage the main body, or conducts a delay (Actions are based on the commanders intent and the situation.)</p> <p>(2) Guards a moving force.</p> <p>(a) Monitors potential enemy avenues of approach for as long as they threaten the main body.</p> <p>(b) Maintains contact with the protected force's main body.</p> <p>(c) Reconnoiters the area between the main body and the flank guard's routes of advance.</p> <p>(d) Conducts IPB specifically supporting the flank guard AO and develops an ISR plan with specific reconnaissance objectives (S2)</p> <p>(3) Regulates its movement along the route of advance by the pace of the main body, the distance to the objective, and the enemy situation.</p> <p>(4) Uses one of three methods of movement based on the enemy situation.</p> <p>(a) Uses successive bounds.</p> <p>(b) Uses alternate bounds.</p> <p>(c) Uses continuous march.</p> <p>(5) Occupies blocking positions if the protected main body stops moving.</p> <p>7. BN/TF completes guard mission.</p> <p>a. Conducts battle handover with protected force or follow-on guard force.</p> <p>b. Consolidates as necessary.</p> <p>c. Reorganizes as necessary.</p> <p>d. Secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.</p> <p>e. Treats and evacuates casualties.</p> <p>f. Withdraws or displaces as directed or IAW protected force or higher headquarters commander's intent.</p> <p>8. BN/TF processes captured documents or equipment, as required.</p> <p>9. BN/TF continues operations as directed.</p> | | |

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-1207 | Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-3000 | Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5000 | Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5054 | Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5162 | Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6000 | Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

- TASK:** Conduct Movement to Contact (07-OPFOR-0035)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is ordered to conduct a movement to contact in order to locate and disrupt the unit. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire, artillery, and close air support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts the movement to contact IAW the operation order or commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintains security throughout the operation and is not surprised by the enemy. The OPFOR locates and fixes the enemy, allowing the remaining OPFOR to deploy and destroy all the enemy in the area. The OPFOR maintains the ability to maneuver and continue the mission.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.
-
- TASK:** Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.
-
- TASK:** Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) ANTIARMOR CO INF BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
 HHC INF BN (BFV)

TASK: Conduct a Hasty Water Crossing (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-1054)

| | | |
|---------------------|------------|--------------|
| (FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) | (FM 7-20) | (FM 101-5) |
| (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) | (FM 7-85) | (FM 101-5-1) |
| (FM 5-71-2) | (FM 90-13) | |

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a combat mission. Reconnaissance identified a water obstacle that must be crossed to accomplish the mission. The water obstacle exceeds the fording depth of unit vehicles and cannot be bypassed. The water obstacle width does not exceed 15 meters. The banks require little or no preparation. Enemy resistance is weak. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command System (ABCS), if equipped. All required overlays and graphics are provided in digital format, and all communication and reporting is in accordance with applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the hasty water crossing IAW TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF develops a deception plan to deny the enemy any crossing information and to maintain surprise. The BN/TF performs intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) early in the military decision-making process (MDMP). The BN/TF establishes security, and maintains traffic control IAW TSOP and FRAGOs. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as the result of friendly fire.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|-----------|--------------|
| 1. Unit leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order, or anticipate a new mission, and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. b. Conduct a map reconnaissance. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>c. Perform intelligence surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) early in the planning process. When available, maximize use of digital terrain products and imagery sources, such as unmanned aerial vehicle [UAV] and satellite imagery available from higher headquarters.</p> <p>NOTE: Reconnaissance tasks include gathering information without disclosing plan, finding access and exit roads, determining width of river or gap, river velocity, depth, and condition of slope, finding cover and concealment on near and far sides, and locating obstacles and enemy defenses.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include engineers in reconnaissance of the crossing area and sites to provide technical expertise on the characteristics of the crossing site and reduction of any obstacles the enemy has employed. (2) Locate, mark, and report suitable crossing sites. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Determine the amount and type of enemy resistance. (b) Mark approaches and crossing sites. (c) Inspect captured bridges and abutments. (d) Determine the eight-digit grid to primary and alternate crossing sites. <p>d. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).</p> <p>NOTE: IPB is a staff responsibility. If possible, it must be conducted collaboratively among echelons.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Define the battlefield environment. (2) Describe battlefield effects. (3) Evaluate the enemy. (4) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs). <p>e. Develop the situation template (SITEMP) and disseminate to subordinate unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces. (2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR) and accomplishes his intent. (3) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets. (4) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINES). (5) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems. (6) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs). <p>f. Develop the ISR plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides a continuously updated COP and detailed picture of the enemy situation. (2) Develop a ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent. (3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit. (4) Plan to conduct reconnaissance of both the near-side and far-side. <p>g. Develop a flexible crossing plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) (D) Task-organize the BN/TF to accomplish the mission (S3) (2) Include multiple approach routes from AAs to crossing sites. (3) Include lateral routes to redirect units to alternate crossing sites. (4) Include alternate crossing sites and staging areas to activate if enemy action closes the primaries. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (5) Include crossing equipment held in reserve to replace losses or open alternate sites. (6) Designate crossing control measures, such as assembly areas and sequence for crossing and update overlay data. (7) Plan fire support using the Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System (AFATDS; fire support officer [FSO]) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Synchronize fires on crossing sites to suppress, neutralize, and destroy critical enemy forces defending the crossing site(s). (b) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets. (c) Plan obscuration fires to cover the crossing. (d) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as to the location of the crossing site (s). (e) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort. (f) Plan fires beyond the crossing site(s) to support a hasty attack or defense. (g) Plan fires in support of the approach to the crossing site(s; These fires engage enemy security forces, destroy bypassed enemy forces, and screen friendly forces.) (h) Plan indirect fires and coordinate close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves. (i) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions at the crossing to prevent fratricide. (8) Plan engineer support and scheme of engineer operations (SOEO; BN/TF engineer) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Utilize terrain visualization products from higher headquarters and distribute information regarding the crossing site(s), planned breach sites, possible bypasses, defending enemy positions or key weapons, and friendly support by fire (SBF) positions. (b) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan. (c) Disseminate confirmed OBSTINTEL to all BN/TF elements immediately. (d) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation. (e) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required and transmit location(s) and dimensions to all elements. (9) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support. <p>NOTE: Decontamination, smoke, and additional reconnaissance assets (other than division cavalry squadron chemical recon) will be corps assets task organized to the division.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the ISR plan. (b) Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations. (c) Develop a plan to immediately disseminate NBC threats, once detected, throughout the BN/TF using FM communications. (d) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.) | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>(e) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis, and disseminate information that identifies planned and active decontamination site locations.</p> <p>(10) Plan and coordinate air defense artillery (ADA) protection of crossing site, if available, integrating short-range air defense (SHORAD) and high to medium altitude air defense (HIMAD) employment considerations (air defense officer [ADO]).</p> <p>(a) Ensure adequate AD of the unit during movement to and actions at the crossing site(s).</p> <p>(b) Shift assets as required by phase of the operation.</p> <p>(c) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks.</p> <p>(11) Plan CSS operations (S4/S1)</p> <p>(a) Integrate movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements, ensuring locations/routes.</p> <p>(b) Ensure adequate CSS support to the ISR effort (The S4 plans and integrates timely resupply and evacuation support of forward ISR operations.)</p> <p>(c) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets.</p> <p>(d) Support a rapid reorganization by providing immediate forward support once the BN/TF secures the objective (Establish clear priorities of support during reorganization.)</p> <p>(e) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation.</p> <p>(12) Select far side objectives that provide protection of crossing elements.</p> <p>3. BN/TF commander and staff publish the order and distribute all paragraphs, annexes, and supporting overlays throughout the BN/TF.</p> <p>4. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinate commanders immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept of the operation.</p> <p>5. BN/TF prepares for crossing.</p> <p>a. Verifies digital and voice communications prior to movement.</p> <p>b. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.</p> <p>c. Conducts extensive ISR of near and far-sides.</p> <p>d. Conducts preparation for combat.</p> <p>e. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are consistent with the unit commander's intent and concept.</p> <p>f. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.</p> <p>g. Positions forces.</p> <p>(1) Occupies designated support-by-fire positions (support element).</p> <p>(2) Occupies designated positions (main body and assault element).</p> <p>6. Designated BN/TF element(s) secures near side.</p> <p>a. Detects all enemy elements on far side and reports location.</p> <p>b. Clears near bank of all defending or delaying forces.</p> <p>c. Prepares the entry site for crossing by positioning guides and marking area to facilitate crossing before arrival of main body.</p> <p>7. Designated BN/TF element(s) assaults across the water obstacle and secures far side.</p> <p>a. Secures an area large enough so the enemy cannot bring direct fires on crossing force and, when feasible, observed indirect fire.</p> | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Secures an area on the far side that is large enough to allow dispersion. c. Prepares far-side as necessary. <p>8. BN/TF emplaces bridging assets.</p> <p>9. BN/TF executes crossing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Crosses in specified sequence. b. Maintains dispersion. c. Enforces camouflage, noise, thermal, electromagnetic, and light discipline. d. Maintains traffic control. e. Occupies designated positions. f. Establishes security. <p>10. BN/TF recovers bridging assets IAW the order or commander's guidance.</p> <p>11. BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.</p> <p>12. BN/TF consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.</p> <p>13. BN/TF secures enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).</p> <p>14. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties.</p> <p>15. BN/TF reports status to higher headquarters.</p> <p>16. BN/TF continues operations as directed.</p> | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-1009 | Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-1207 | Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-3000 | Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|---|--|
| 07-1-5000 | Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5036 | Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5054 | Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5162 | Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (M113) HHC INF BN (BFV)
 HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) ANTIARMOR CO INF BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV)

TASK: Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-1063)

| | | |
|---------------------|------------|--------------|
| (FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) | (FM 7-20) | (FM 101-5) |
| (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) | (FM 7-85) | (FM 101-5-1) |
| (FM 5-71-2) | (FM 21-60) | (FM 101-5-2) |

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to linkup with another unit. Area of operations (AO), boundaries, restrictive fire lines (RFLs), axis of advance, general linkup point, chain of command upon linkup, and other control and coordination measures are established. The BN/TF and linking unit will move to the designated site. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) when equipped. All required overlays and graphics are provided in digital format, and all communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF performs the linkup in IAW the TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance, and conducts necessary planning, coordination, and liaison. The BN/TF moves to the linkup site, avoids decisive engagement, and conducts the linkup as directed. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as the result of friendly fire.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|-----------|--------------|
| <p>NOTE: It is possible for a digital force and an analog force to conduct operations together such as a linkup. Because of the differences in data transfer or communications equipment, liaison must take place early and continuously.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order, or anticipate a new mission, and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establish liaison between the two units during planning and continue liaison throughout the operation. b. Develop a plan in conjunction with the other unit (If joint development is not possible, ensure extensive coordination of the plan.) | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**GO NO-GO**

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>c. Conduct conventional map reconnaissance.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Identify primary and alternate linkup sites. (2) Identify rally point(s). (3) Identify an assembly area (AA) short of the linkup site (The distance between the AA and linkup site is determined by the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations [METT-TC].) (4) Identify likely enemy avenues of approach. (5) Identify routes to and from linkup site, AA, or rally point(s). (6) Mark tentative dismount points on digital and conventional maps. <p>d. Develop intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) plan, and employ ISR assets early in the MDMP process.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides a continuously updated and detailed picture of the enemy, allowing the BN/TF to maintain situational understanding (SU). (2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR) and accomplishes his intent. (3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous information flow between higher headquarters and the BN/TF. <p>e. (D) Task-organize units within the BN/TF to accomplish the mission (S3)</p> <p>NOTE: The BN/TF S3 must ensure the S6 receives task organization data in time to coordinate the unit task reorganization (UTR, the reorganization of the digital network to correspond with changes in unit organization) change within the BN/TF. The UTR change should be avoided during operations as it will result in the affected units' FBCB2 systems re-booting, causing a temporary loss of SA (a few minutes) and the need to verify connectivity and address groups. This does not prohibit commanders from changing task organization during operations, but leaders must recognize this message traffic will continue to flow IAW the original or previous task organization.</p> <p>f. Designate a quartering party to recon and secure AA.</p> <p>g. Develop a scheme of maneuver and control measures (contact points, checkpoints, phase lines, routes, and zones of actions).</p> <p>h. (D) Coordinate digital, visual, or voice recognition signals (far and near).</p> <p>i. (D) Coordinate frequencies, call signs, codes, and tactical internet architecture.</p> <p>j. Confirm command relationship with the linkup unit. (Who is in charge if the enemy attacks during linkup? Who is in charge after linkup?)</p> <p>k. Develop contingency plans.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Address enemy contact before, during, or after linkup. (2) Address how long to wait at the linkup site. (3) Address what to do when element(s) do not arrive at the linkup site. <p>l. Integrate and synchronize battlefield operating systems (BOS).</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Plan fire support. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) (D) Plan and coordinate indirect-fire support or close air support, if available, using the Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System (AFATDS; fire support officer [FSO]) (b) Assign direct fire responsibilities. (c) Position fire support assets to support the reconnaissance effort. (2) (D) Plan engineer support and develop the scheme of engineer operations (SOEO (BN/TF engineer) <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) (D) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed for planned breach sites, possible bypasses, and defending enemy positions or key weapons. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>(b) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the ISR plan.</p> <p>(c) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate brigade and infantry unit-wide dissemination including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units.</p> <p>(d) Identify required mobility tasks in depth throughout the BN/TF AO.</p> <p>(e) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to respond to a changing situation.</p> <p>(f) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for security.</p> <p>(3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.</p> <p>NOTE: Decontamination, smoke, and additional reconnaissance assets (other than division cavalry squadron chemical recon) will be corps assets task organized to the division and may not be FBCB2 equipped.</p> <p>(a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets in the ISR plan.</p> <p>(b) Ensure NBC reconnaissance assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations.</p> <p>(c) Disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the BN/TF.</p> <p>(d) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.)</p> <p>(e) (D) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate information that identifies planned and active decontamination site locations using FBCB2.</p> <p>(4) (D) Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support if available, integrating short-range air defense (SHORAD) and high to medium altitude air defense (HIMAD) employment considerations (air defense officer [ADO]).</p> <p>(a) Ensure adequate AD of the BN/TF during movement.</p> <p>(b) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as movements through restrictive terrain.</p> <p>(5) (D) Plan CSS operations utilizing FBCB2 to track unit status and maintain SU (S4)</p> <p>(a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.</p> <p>(b) Determine fuel requirements.</p> <p>(c) Determine duration of the operation.</p> <p>(d) Determine operations after the linkup is completed (For example, attack, withdraw, and defend.)</p> <p>(e) Determine transportation requirements for special purpose forces (For example, air assault, special operation forces [SOF], and so on.)</p> <p>(f) Identify lines of communication (LOC) security requirements.</p> <p>(g) Plan evacuation of equipment, wounded, and enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).</p> <p>(h) Plan resupply of stationary unit if applicable.</p> <p>m. (D) Share SA data between linkup units.</p> <p>(1) (D) Include intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) products and data in ASAS.</p> | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (2) Include digital or conventional overlays. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Indicate primary and alternate link up points. (b) Indicate checkpoints and waypoints information. (c) Indicate unit disposition and activity (friendly and enemy). (d) Indicate location and type of obstacles. (e) Indicate fire control measures including restricted fire line (RFL). (f) Indicate communications security (COMSEC) requirements and procedures. (3) (D) Include internet provider (IP) address databases if applicable. (4) (D) Include Single Channel and Ground Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) and Enhanced Position Locating and Reporting System (EPLRS) hop set data. (5) (D) Include positioning of EPLRS position server links. (6) (D) Include modifications to digital communications structure if applicable. m. Coordinate a passage of lines as required. n. Conduct risk management. 3. (D) BN/TF commander and staff publish the order and distribute all paragraphs, annexes, and supporting overlays throughout the BN/TF via FBCB2. 4. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinate commanders immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept. 5. BN/TF prepares for linkup. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. b. Conducts extensive ISR operations. c. Conducts preparation for combat. d. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are consistent with the BN/TF commander's intent and concept. e. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible. f. Dispatch quartering party to secure AA. g. Positions forces as necessary. 6. (D) BN/TF commander maintains SU to ensure conduct of the operation is consistent with established control measures. 7. BN/TF executes the linkup. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Begins movement to the AA short of the linkup site. b. Secures and occupies AA. c. (D) Establishes and maintains digital or FM voice communications throughout the operation. d. (D) Tracks progress in FBCB2. e. Avoids enemy contact if possible. f. Destroys or bypasses and reports enemy that cannot be avoided. g. Makes adjustments to the linkup plan based on the factors of METT-TC. h. Slows movement to maintain positive control and to prevent fratricide. i. Conducts the following actions (The FIRST element to arrive at the linkup point): j. Sends a security team forward to secure the linkup point (may be mounted or dismounted). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Clears the immediate area around the linkup point. (2) Marks the linkup point with the coordinated recognition signal. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>(3) Positions security team in covered and concealed positions that overwatch the linkup point.</p> <p>(4) Returns to the linkup AA and establishes a perimeter defense.</p> <p>(5) Establishes a perimeter defense.</p> <p>k. Conducts the following actions (the second element arrives at the linkup point):</p> <p>(1) Moves to a position short of the linkup point and gives any predetermined signals to the unit already at the linkup site.</p> <p>(2) Moves to the linkup site and conducts near recognition.</p> <p>(3) Security team leads second element to the first element's established perimeter.</p> <p>(4) Second element is incorporated into the perimeter defense.</p> <p>8. Establishes chain of command based on the higher command's order.</p> <p>9. BN/TF continues the mission IAW the OPORD, FRAGO, and/ or guidance from higher headquarters.</p> | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|------------|--|--|
| 07-1-1009 | Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-1081 | Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-1090A | Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1207 | Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-1216 | Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-2009 | Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|---|--|
| 07-1-2018 | Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2027 | Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2054 | Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-3000 | Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5036 | Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5054 | Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5081 | Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5162 | Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR *executes* the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Air Attack (07-OPFOR-0029)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers have been identified and are susceptible to air attack. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR's fixed-wing combat aircraft and attack helicopters are available to provide aerial fire support to ground maneuver forces.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes the air attack using fixed- and rotor-winged aircraft IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers are destroyed, delayed, or forced to retreat.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: ANTIARMOR CO INF BN RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
 HHC INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV)
 HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) TANK COMPANY, TK BN
 TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 HHC, TANK BN (XXI)

TASK: Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-1072)

(FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) (FM 7-85) (FM 101-5)
 (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) (FM 21-60) (FM 101-5-1)
 (FM 7-20)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF), is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operations order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a movement to contact. Higher Headquarters wants to develop the situation and establish or regain contact with the enemy. The order includes all applicable overlays or graphics, area of operation (AO) boundaries, control measures and criteria for attacking, defending, bypassing, delaying or withdrawing. The BN/TF common operating picture (COP) is uncertain. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS) if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts a movement to contact, search-and-attack, or the approach march technique, IAW the order, and the higher commander's guidance, or the BN/TF TSOP. The BN/TF maintains security while focusing all efforts on finding the enemy and is not surprised by the enemy. The security force locates and fixes the enemy, making contact with the smallest possible element. The commander develops the situation to allow selection and execution of the most advantageous maneuver option (attack, defend, bypass, retrograde). The BN/TF maintains contact with the enemy, complies with the ROE and ROI, and enforces measures to prevent fratricide that are consistent with mission constraints.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: **GO NO-GO**

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Unit leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. The BN/TF commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP), <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. b. Conduct a map reconnaissance. c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>NOTE: IPB is a staff responsibility. If possible, it must be conducted collaboratively among echelons.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets. (2) Define the battlefield environment. (3) Describe battlefield effects. (4) (D) Produce a modified combined obstacle overlay (MCOO). (5) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs). <p>d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces and target acquisition assets. (2) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserves. (3) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems. (4) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets. (5) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINES). (6) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems. (7) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs). <p>e. Develop intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) plan, and employ ISR assets to conduct a physical reconnaissance throughout the MDMP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates. (2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR) and accomplishes his intent. (3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information between the BN/TF and higher headquarters. (4) Sustain the ISR effort throughout planning and preparation phases, updating the plan and orders as required. <p>f. (D) Develop a flexible scheme of maneuver integrating multiple decision points (DPs) and triggers into the plan based on probable engagement locations. Incorporates graphics and orders into FBCB2 for dissemination to subordinate units.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Focus all efforts on finding the enemy by developing a strong reconnaissance, surveillance, and target acquisition effort and through the employment of robust security forces. (2) Make contact with electronic means first. If that is not possible, then make contact with the smallest force possible, consistent with protecting the force. (3) Task-organize the force and use movement formations that enable the BN/TF to rapidly deploy and attack in any direction. (4) Task-organize the force and use movement formations that enable the unit to deploy and attack rapidly in any direction. (5) Maintain the ability to mass fires rapidly in any direction. (6) Keep forces within supporting distances to facilitate a flexible response. (7) Integrate BN/TF security to the front, flank, and rear. (8) Maintain contact, once gained, regardless of the maneuver option adopted. (9) Enforce reliance on TSOPs and drills to develop the situation and maintain tempo (The key is to quickly develop the situation, then maneuver to mass available combat power against the enemy once the BN/TF is committed.) | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**GO NO-GO**

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (10) Develop a flexible scheme of maneuver since the location of the engagement with the enemy is not known (Flexibility is achieved by incorporating multiple decision points (DPs) and triggers into the plan based upon where engagements are likely.) (11) Support the higher commander's concept and intent. (12) Avoid mounted movement on terrain restricting maneuver (such as draws, ravines, narrow trails, or steep slopes). (13) Address actions at known or likely enemy locations. (14) Address methods for moving through and crossing dangerous areas. (15) Address formation and known locations where the formation will change. (16) Address actions and array of forces at the final objective or limit of advance (LOA). (17) Address decision points (DPs) and criteria for execution of maneuver options that may develop during execution. g. Integrate and synchronize battlefield operating systems (BOS). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) (D) Plan fire support (FS) using the Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System (AFATDS). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Plan responsive and decentralized fires for each phase of the operation. (b) Plan targets based on known or suspected enemy locations and danger areas and to support future operations. (c) Refine targets based on the reconnaissance effort as the operation progresses. (d) Maximize the use of priority targets along the axis of advance (Plan triggers to put these targets into effect and cancel them based on the movement of the unit.) (e) Ensure immediately responsive fire support to the lead elements by assigning priority of fires to the advance guard. (f) Position observers effectively and maximize the use of lead maneuver forces to call for fires since they often have the best view of the enemy (Observers must understand the essential fire-support tasks [EFSTs] for each phase of the operation.) (g) Synchronize the movement and positioning of artillery and mortars with the tempo of the unit and the FS requirements. (2) (D) Develop engineer operations to support the scheme of maneuver and update engineering overlay data in FBCB2. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Task-organize engineer forces well forward to support potential breaching operations. (b) Allocate additional mobility assets and engineer forces to the advance guard. (c) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan. (d) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) platforms and units. (e) Ensure terrain visualization products from the higher headquarters terrain section's Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) are available and distributed for planned breach sites, possible bypasses, defending enemy positions or key weapons, and friendly support by fire (SBF) positions. (f) Maintain the flexibility to mass engineers to breach significant obstacles. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (g) Plan obstacle belts, obstacle control measures, and situational obstacles to support flank security (Develop and adjust obstacle locations and triggers for execution based on BN/TF movement and enemy situation.) (h) Develop plans for the hand off of marked obstacles, lanes, and bypasses. (i) Consider the requirement for route maintenance, clearance, and repair. (j) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis. (k) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort or support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation. (l) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and defense as required. (3) (D) Plan and coordinate air defense artillery (ADA) support, if available, integrating short-range air defense (SHORAD) and high to medium altitude air defense (HIMAD) employment considerations through use of Forward Area Air Defense Command, Control, and Intelligence (FAAD2CI; air defense officer [ADO]). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) (D) Define process to disseminate early warning to all task force elements by FM voice communications. (b) Shift and reposition ADA assets based on the unit's movement, selected maneuver option, and changes in the enemy air situation. (c) Ensure adequate air defense of BN/TF during movements through choke points, breach lanes, bridges, and restrictive terrain. (4) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support. <p>NOTE: Decontamination, smoke, and additional reconnaissance assets (other than division cavalry squadron chemical recon) will be corps assets task organized to the division and may not be FBCB2 equipped.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the BN/TF ISR plan. (b) Ensure NBC reconnaissance assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations. (c) Using the Automated NBC Information System (ANBACIS), develop enemy NBC usage template and a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the BN/TF. (d) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions such as breaching or assaults (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.) (e) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites. (5) Plan combat service support (CSS). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements. (b) Ensure adequate CSS support to the reconnaissance effort (Timely resupply and evacuation support of forward reconnaissance assets is well planned and integrated into the reconnaissance plan by the logistics officer [S4].) (c) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>(d) Support a rapid reorganization by timing the arrival of CSS support forward once the unit secures the objective (Establish clear priorities of support during reorganization.)</p> <p>(e) Plan and coordinate the locations, displacements, and routes of CSS assets to maintain responsive support.</p> <p>(f) (D) Use FBCB2 and Combat Service Support Control System (CSSCS), if available, to maintain a continuous CSS estimate during all operations. (Ensure the CSS plan is responsive and flexible enough to support all maneuver options.)</p> <p>(g) Plan and coordinate for aerial resupply if available.</p> <p>(h) Plan casualty evacuation.</p> <p>h. Conduct risk management.</p> <p>i. Prepare for the movement to contact.</p> <p>(1) Refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.</p> <p>(2) Conduct extensive reconnaissance.</p> <p>(3) Conduct precombat checks.</p> <p>NOTE: Subordinate elements conduct parallel planning as well as begin preparation for the movement to contact upon receipt of the BN/TF warning order (WARNO).</p> <p>(4) Supervise or inspect subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.</p> <p>(5) (D) Conduct preprogrammed unit task reorganization (UTR) capability in FBCB2 (S3)</p> <p>(a) Address actions to cross known danger areas.</p> <p>(b) Address the advance guard making contact with a small enemy force.</p> <p>(c) Address the advance guard making contact with a large force beyond its capabilities to defeat.</p> <p>(d) Address advance guard COA for contact with an obstacle that ISR assets have not identified and reported.</p> <p>(e) Address a flank security force making contact with a small force.</p> <p>(f) Address a flank security force making contact with a large force beyond its capability to defeat.</p> <p>(g) Address actions to report and bypass an enemy force (based on the bypass criteria).</p> <p>(h) Address transition into a maneuver option.</p> <p>(6) (D) Conduct ISR operations to answer the commander's PIR and report activity via FBCB2 to develop the COP.</p> <p>(a) Determine the enemy's strength, disposition, and composition including reserves.</p> <p>(b) Determine size, location, and composition of obstacles and seeks bypasses or breach site.</p> <p>(c) Determine enemy vulnerabilities.</p> <p>(d) Focus on the enemy's security forces forward of the enemy's main defense to locate positions and obstacles along the unit's planned routes of advance.</p> <p>(e) Locate restrictive terrain and danger areas.</p> <p>(f) Maintain contact once gained.</p> <p>j. Prepare to initiate contact or continue the movement to contact at night or other periods of limited visibility.</p> | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>3. BN/TF executes approach march technique.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Uses movement formation(s) based on mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, civil considerations (METT-TC). b. Uses designated direction of attack or axis of advance to orient movement. c. Selects routes based on IPB and guidance from higher headquarters. d. Establishes a security force, advance, flank, and rear guards to protect the main body and enable it to deploy if the enemy attacks. e. Develops the situation early, but avoids decisive engagement (Once found; the enemy must be kept under surveillance and his activity reported.) f. Establishes a defense and seeks guidance from higher headquarters, if the Battalion reaches the objective or LOA before making contact with the enemy. g. Assists battalions by ensuring adequate supporting fires, mobile transportation assets, timely and accurate intelligence, and reserve forces are available. h. Ensures ISR elements provide security to the front during the approach march (ISR elements must be far enough ahead of the advanced guard to provide adequate warning and sufficient space to maneuver the main body.) i. Ensures flank security elements operate far enough out to prevent the enemy from placing direct or observed indirect fires on the main body. j. Ensures advance guard operates forward of the main body to provide security for the main body and ensure the main body's uninterrupted advance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Protects the main body from surprise attack and develops the situation to protect the deployment of the main body when it is committed to action. (2) Maintains SU of the entire BN/TF, especially the ISR element. (3) Reports enemy contact to the BN/TF commander. (4) Collects and reports all information about the enemy. (5) Selects tentative fighting positions for following units. (6) Attempts to penetrate enemy security elements and reach or identify the enemy main force. (7) Destroys or repels all enemy reconnaissance forces. (8) Prevents enemy ground forces from engaging the main body with direct fires. (9) Locates, bypasses, or breaches obstacles along the main body's axis of advance. (10) Executes tactical tasks such as fix, contain, or block against enemy forces to develop the situation for the main body, within the commanders intent. (11) Ensures that all pertinent information is available to the rest of the BN/TF. k. Ensures combat elements of the main body are prepared to rapidly deploy and attack, giving them the flexibility to maneuver rapidly to a decisive point on the battlefield in order to destroy the enemy or seize terrain. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Maintains intelligence of the advance guard's activities. (2) Contains the bulk of the unit's combat elements and is arrayed to achieve all-round security. (3) Uses standard formations that allow the Battalion commander, to rapidly shift combat power to the decisive point on the battlefield. (4) Uses movement formation(s) based on METT-TC. (5) Uses designated direction of attack or axis of advance to orient movement. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (6) Uses aerial maneuver, fire support assets and situational obstacles to fix the enemy in his current positions. (7) Execute an attack. (8) Execute a defense. (9) Terminates the movement to contact when the final objective or limit of advance has been reached. <p>4. BN/TF conducts search and attack technique.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Specifies where each company will operate, establishes measures to consolidate company or platoon before the attack, and establishes fire control measures for each company. b. Seeks the most likely locations of enemy base camps, command and control sites, and mortars. c. Designates a main effort and supporting efforts that enable the unit to maintain the amount of flexibility the situation dictates. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Designates the company most likely to make contact as the main effort and prepares to shift the main effort rapidly, if necessary. (2) Uses the reserve, priority of fire, and other available assets to weight the main effort. d. Uses AFATDS to plan concept of fire support and coordinates for responsive indirect fire in support of all CO/TMs (FSO) e. Ensures CSS supports the main effort while remaining responsive to the rest of the unit. f. Finds the enemy. g. Allows for decentralized actions and small-unit initiative. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Uses squads and platoons to locate the enemy. (2) Uses multiple coordinated patrols to seek out and find the enemy. h. Fixes the enemy using one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Prepares to block enemy escape or reinforcement routes for another unit's attack. (2) Maintains contact and positions its forces to isolate and fix the enemy so another unit can attack. (3) Conducts an attack (The BN/TF conducts an attack IAW with the commander's guidance given sufficient relative combat power.) (4) Maintains surveillance (The BN/TF employs stealth techniques to avoid detection and report enemy order of battle and activities.) (5) Remains undetected and follows the enemy (The unit does this to continue to gather information. It must be careful to avoid an enemy ambush.) i. Finishes the enemy rapidly. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Conducts an attack, or maneuvers to block enemy escape routes while another unit conducts the attack. (2) Conducts ISR activities and collects information to develop the situational template while remaining undetected. (3) Employs indirect fire or close air support (CAS) to destroy the enemy (The BN/TF may establish an area ambush and use indirect fire or CAS to direct enemy movements into the ambush area.) <p>5. BN/TF leaders assess the operation. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 6. Upon making contact with the enemy, the BN/TF commander decides on a COA (See unit task: Fight a Meeting Engagement.) <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Evaluates the situation b. Deploys, redeploys, or redirects reconnaissance assets to gain information. c. Considers a bypass. d. Considers a hasty ambush. e. Considers a force-orientated attack. f. Considers an attack by fire (ABF). g. Considers a defense. h. Issues a FRAGO and graphics for the selected COA to subordinate elements. 7. BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI. 8. BN/TF consolidates as necessary. 9. BN/TF reorganizes as necessary. 10. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties. 11. BN/TF processes captured documents or equipment as required. 12. BN/TF continues operations as directed. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-1207 | Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-1243 | Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2009 | Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2018 | Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2027 | Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|---|--|
| 07-1-2054 | Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-3000 | Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5000 | Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5027 | Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5036 | Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5054 | Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5081 | Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5162 | Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5198 | Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Movement to Contact (07-OPFOR-0035)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is ordered to conduct a movement to contact in order to locate and disrupt the unit. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire, artillery, and close air support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the movement to contact IAW the operation order or commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintains security throughout the operation and is not surprised by the enemy. The OPFOR locates and fixes the enemy, allowing the remaining OPFOR to deploy and destroy all the enemy in the area. The OPFOR maintains the ability to maneuver and continue the mission.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) ANTIARMOR CO INF BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
 HHC INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) TANK COMPANY, TK BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI) TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC, TANK BN (XXI)

TASK: Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-1081)

| | | |
|-------------------------|-------------|--------------|
| (FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) | (FM 5-71-2) | (FM 101-5) |
| (FM 3-55 [100-55])(TBP) | (FM 7-20) | (FM 101-5-1) |
| (FM 3-90 [100-40]) | (FM 7-85) | (FM 101-5-2) |
| (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) | (FM 34-130) | |

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) requiring the conduct of a passage of lines. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the passage of lines IAW the TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF coordinates with the stationary unit and ensures that the stationary unit establishes control and secures ample maneuver space within the area of operation (AO) to allow the BN/TF to pass through and form into a combat formation prior to gaining contact with the enemy. The BN/TF selects routes and lanes that provide cover and concealment, do not disrupt stationary unit defenses, and provide for rapid movement. The BN/TF reconnoiters passage points and passage lanes. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI. There are no fratricide incidents.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>NOTE: Units involved in a passage of lines must conduct detailed coordination to ensure they maintain positive control to avoid fratricide, speed the passage, and reduce vulnerability to enemy attack.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Unit leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. BN/TF ensures that the stationary unit establishes control, and secures the AO far enough to its front so the BN/TF can pass through and reform into a combat formation prior to contact with the enemy force. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>3. BN/TF commander and staff receive the order, begin the military decision-making process (MDMP)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. b. (D) Conduct a map reconnaissance. Select routes and lanes that provide cover and concealment, do not disrupt stationary unit's defense, and provide for rapid movement. c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets. (2) (D) Define the battlefield environment as it relates to the operation using line-of-sight analysis capability in FBCB2 and conventional terrain analysis tools. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Determine ground and air mobility corridors and avenues of approach to determine where the enemy can maneuver. (b) Determine the size of the enemy force that each avenue of approach and mobility corridor can support. (c) Identify limitations on friendly maneuver and positioning. (d) Identify areas dominated by key or defensible terrain that allows massing of fires. (e) Include adjacent sectors and areas forward and to the rear of the BN/TF. (3) Describe battlefield effects. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Identify the limitations and opportunities the environment offers on the potential operations of friendly and enemy forces. (b) Determine the effects of weather on operations. (c) Include general characteristics of the terrain, as well as such factors as politics, civilian press, local population, and demographics if applicable. (d) Produce or update the modified combined obstacle overlay (MCOO). (4) Evaluate the enemy. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Determine size of enemy operating in the area of operations if not known. (b) Identify enemy location(s). (c) Determine enemy composition. (d) Identify potential enemy vulnerabilities based on the enemy's tactics, friendly and enemy capabilities, the terrain, and the weather. (5) Determine enemy courses of actions (ECOAs). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Reflect the enemy's flexibility and true potential. (b) Include enemy composition, disposition, and strength. (c) Include time and distance factors for the enemy's maneuver through the area of operation. (d) Include likely employment of all enemy combat multipliers including artillery, air defense, obstacles, chemical strikes, dynamic obstacles, and attack aircraft. (e) Include likely use of all enemy reconnaissance assets and organizations to include likely reconnaissance objectives, reconnaissance avenues of approach, times to expect enemy reconnaissance, and likely locations of enemy observers and observation posts. (f) Include identification and likely locations of enemy high-value targets (HVTs), such as artillery formations, reserves, and command and control (C2) nodes. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**GO NO-GO**

| | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li style="margin-left: 40px;">(g) Include likely locations, compositions, strength, employment options, and time and distance factors for enemy reserves and follow-on forces. <li style="margin-left: 40px;">(h) Include locations of enemy decision points that determine selection of a specific COA. d. (D) Develop the situation template (SITEMP) and post it in ASAS (S2) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include likely enemy engagement areas (EAs). (2) Include location and orientation of enemy forces. (3) Include the location of the enemy reserve. (4) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems. (5) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets. (6) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets. (7) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINES). (8) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems. (9) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs). e. Develop the intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) plan and employ ISR assets early in the MDMP process. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develop an ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU and supports the planning process. (2) Seek to determine the enemy's strength and disposition. (3) Determine composition, disposition, and strength of enemy reserve force. (4) Determine enemy vulnerabilities. f. Organize the BN/TF to accomplish the mission (S3) g. (D) Conduct detailed coordination with the stationary unit using FBCB2, MCS, or conventional means. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Coordinate the exchange of intelligence and combat information. (2) Coordinate the current friendly dispositions and tactical plans, especially deception and obstacle plans. (3) Coordinate direct and indirect fires and close air support (CAS) plans. (4) Coordinate any necessary maneuver control measures and graphics not directed by the higher headquarters. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Include boundary changes. (b) Include the battle handover line (BHL). (c) Include emergency combat service support (CSS) points. (d) Include assembly area(s) to be used. (e) Include firing positions for artillery, air defense, and other units. (5) Coordinate long-range and short-range recognition symbols and vehicle markings to reduce the probability of fratricide. (6) Coordinate transfer of the (AO) from one BN/TF to the other at a time and place designated by higher common mutual agreement. (7) Coordinate provisions for movement control. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Include contact points. (b) Include start and release points. (c) Include route selection (primary and alternate). (d) Include priorities for using routes and facilities. (e) Include passage points. (f) Include provision for guides. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (8) Coordinate the ISR plan. (9) Coordinate communication architectures, digital systems, connectivity, recognition signals, and communication procedures and requirements, to ensure both elements maintain a common operational picture. (10) Coordinate security measures during the passage. Include nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) reconnaissance or biological detection systems. (11) Coordinate fires, obscurants, and any other combat, combat support (CS), and CSS provided by the stationary unit. (12) Coordinate measures to reduce both units' vulnerability to attack by enemy weapons of mass destruction (WMD). (13) Coordinate operational security measures required before or during the passage. (14) Coordinate allocation of terrain. (15) Coordinate air defense cover up to and forward of the BHL. (16) Coordinate logistics support that will be provided by the stationary unit, especially fuel and maintenance. <p>4. BN/TF prepares for the passage.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Collocates command posts (CPs) for ease of coordination, making direct liaison, updating plans, and sending changes to higher headquarters (if CPs were not collocated earlier in the planning process). b. Conducts extensive ISR operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Locates contact points on movement routes. (2) Reconnoiters passage points and passage lanes. (3) Verifies passage lanes are clear of obstacles, provide concealment, and allow for integration with the plan of attack or withdrawal. (4) Locates AA or attack positions that do not interfere with stationary units but provide cover, concealment, and enough room for dispersion. c. Obtains updated ISR information from the stationary unit and higher headquarters. d. (D) Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. e. (D) Transmits changes in the plan to the stationary unit. f. Employs operational security measures to deny the enemy information. g. Verifies communications (internal and with the stationary unit). h. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent. i. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible. j. Positions forces IAW the plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Verifies contact points (CPs). (2) Verifies overlay data received from stationary unit. <p>5. BN/TF conducts the passage.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provides the element designated to coordinate and assist the passage with a list of elements to go through designated passage points. b. Moves along assigned routes or lanes. c. Displays correct visual signals. d. Identifies and sends contaminated units to designated passage points. e. Passes through the stationary unit without halting. f. Maintains cover, concealment, and dispersion. g. Imposes minimum radio traffic or radio listening silence for forward passage. h. Orients subordinate elements and completes closure. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| 6. BN/TF leaders assess the operation. a. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation. b. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent. 7. BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI. 8. BN/TF secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) as required. 9. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties. 10. BN/TF processes captured documents and equipment as required. 11. BN/TF continues operations as directed. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-1063 | Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-1207 | Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2009 | Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2018 | Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2027 | Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|---|--|
| 07-1-2045 | Develop the Collection Management Plan (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP |
| 07-1-2054 | Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-3000 | Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-3009A | Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5000 | Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5018 | Conduct Battle Tracking (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP |
| 07-1-5027 | Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5054 | Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5135 | Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5162 | Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5207 | Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6009 | Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

- TASK:** Conduct Infiltration/Exfiltration (07-OPFOR-0018)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR infiltrates/exfiltrates personnel through the enemy lines. All necessary personnel and equipment are available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts the infiltration/exfiltration IAW the operation order or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR determines gaps in the enemy's lines/defenses and infiltrates/exfiltrates without being detected. The OPFOR accomplishes the commander's intent (gains information, attacks a position from the rear, conducts raids or ambushes, captures prisoners, seizes key terrain, or aids the main attack).
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.
-
- TASK:** Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) ANTIARMOR CO INF BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
 HHC INF BN (BFV)

TASK: Conduct a Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-1090A)

| | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| (FM 3-0 [100-5]) | (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) | (FM 21-60) |
| (FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) | (FM 5-71-2) | (FM 44-100 [44-1]) |
| (FM 3-21.91 [7-91]) | (FM 6-30) | (FM 101-5) |
| (FM 3-55 [100-55])(TBP) | (FM 7-85) | (FM 101-5-1) |
| (FM 3-90 [100-40]) | (FM 7-90) | (FM 101-5-2) |

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to assist an element with a passage of lines at the location and time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays or graphics. The passing unit's commander and key staff representatives have co-located with the unit command post to facilitate planning the passage and establishing a common situational understanding. The unit has a field artillery battery, engineer assets based on doctrine, and an air defense platoon in direct support (DS). Close air support (CAS) sorties have been allocated to the unit to facilitate the passage. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The unit conducts a passage of lines as the stationary unit in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit establishes control and secures the area of operations (AO) far enough to its front so that the passing force can pass through and reform into a combat formation prior to contact with the enemy force. The unit plans and coordinates the passage of lines with the passing unit. The unit provides security of the line of departure (LD) of the passing unit until it is able to assume that responsibility. The unit conducts battle handover without giving the enemy the advantage. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|-----------|--------------|
| 1. Unit leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. The unit establishes control and secures the AO far enough to its front so that the passing force can pass through and reform into a combat formation prior to contact with the enemy force. | | |
| 3. The two units involved develop a passage plan. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. b. Conduct a map reconnaissance. Select routes and lanes that provide cover and concealment, do not disrupt defense, and provide for rapid movement. c. Conduct IPB. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets. (2) Define the battlefield environment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Determine ground and air mobility corridors and avenues of approach to determine where the enemy can maneuver. (b) Determine the size of the enemy force that each avenue of approach and mobility corridor can support. (c) Identify limitations on friendly maneuver and positioning. (d) Identify areas dominated by key or defensible terrain that allows massing of fires. (e) Include adjacent sectors and areas forward and to the rear of the unit. (3) Describe battlefield effects. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Identify the limitations and opportunities the environment offers on the potential operations of friendly and enemy forces. (b) Determine the effects of weather on operations. (c) Include general characteristics of the terrain, as well as such factors as politics, civilian press, local population, and demographics if applicable. (d) Produce or update the modified combined obstacle overlay (MCOO). (4) Evaluate the enemy. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Determine size of enemy operating in the area of operations if not known. (b) Identify enemy location(s). (c) Determine enemy composition. (d) Identify potential enemy vulnerabilities based on the enemy's tactics, friendly and enemy capabilities, the terrain, and the weather. (5) Determine enemy courses of actions (COAs). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Reflect the enemy's flexibility and true potential. (b) Include enemy composition, disposition, and strength. (c) Include time and distance factors for the enemy's maneuver through the area of operation. (d) Include likely employment of all enemy combat multipliers including artillery, air defense, obstacles, chemical strikes, dynamic obstacles, and attack aircraft. (e) Include likely use of all enemy reconnaissance assets and organizations to include likely reconnaissance objectives, reconnaissance avenues of approach, times to expect enemy reconnaissance, and likely locations of enemy observers and observation posts. (f) Include identification and likely locations of enemy high-value targets (HVTs), such as artillery formations, reserves, and command and control (C2) nodes. (g) Include likely locations, compositions, strength, employment options, and time and distance factors for enemy reserves and follow-on forces. (h) Include locations of enemy decision points that determine selection of a specific COA. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include likely enemy engagement areas (EAs). (2) Include location and orientation of enemy forces. (3) Include the location of enemy the reserve. (4) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems. (5) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets. (6) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets. (7) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINES). (8) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems. (9) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAs). <p>e. Employ R&S assets early in the MDMP process.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated R&S plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates. (2) Seek to determine the enemy's strength and disposition. (3) Determine composition, disposition, and strength of enemy reserve force. (4) Determine enemy vulnerabilities. <p>f. Organize to accomplish the mission.</p> <p>g. Coordinate the following with the passing unit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Coordinate the exchange of intelligence and combat information. (2) Coordinate the current friendly dispositions and tactical plans, especially deception and obstacle plans. (3) Coordinate direct and indirect fires and close air support (CAS) plans. (4) Coordinate any necessary maneuver control measures and graphics not directed by the higher headquarters. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Include boundary changes. (b) Include the battle handover line (BHL). (c) Include emergency combat service support (CSS) points. (d) Include assembly area(s) to be used. (e) Include firing positions for artillery, air defense, and other units. (5) Coordinate long-range and short-range recognition symbols and vehicle markings to reduce the probability of fratricide. (6) Coordinate when and under what conditions control of the AO transfers from one headquarters to the other if not previously established. (7) Coordinate provisions for movement control. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Include contact points. (b) Include start and release points. (c) Include route selection (primary and alternate). (d) Include priorities for using routes and facilities. (e) Include passage points. (f) Include provision for guides. (8) Coordinate reconnaissance by elements of the passing unit. (9) Coordinate signal operating instruction (SOI) details such as call signs, frequencies, and recognition signals. (10) Coordinate security measures during the passage. Include nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) reconnaissance or biological detection systems. (11) Coordinate fires, obscurants, and any other combat, combat support (CS), and CSS provided by the stationary unit. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>(12) Coordinate measures to reduce both units' vulnerability to attack by enemy weapons of mass destruction (WMD).</p> <p>(13) Coordinate operational security measures required before or during the passage.</p> <p>(14) Coordinate allocation of terrain for use by the passing force.</p> <p>(15) Coordinate air defense cover up to and forward of the BHL.</p> <p>(16) Coordinate logistics support for the passing unit that will be provided by the stationary unit, especially fuel and maintenance.</p> <p>h. Use FRAGOs to control or change actions of subordinate elements.</p> <p>i. Report essential information to higher headquarters, subordinate elements, and other affected units.</p> <p>4. Unit prepares for the passage.</p> <p>a. Clears a lane through all obstacles from the assembly area (AA) or attack position (AP) through passage lanes or routes.</p> <p>b. Employ reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) assets to gather requested information for the passing unit.</p> <p>c. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.</p> <p>d. Employs operational security measures to deny the enemy information.</p> <p>e. Verifies communications.</p> <p>f. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.</p> <p>g. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.</p> <p>h. Positions forces and establishes contact points.</p> <p>5. Unit conducts the passage.</p> <p>a. Establishes contact at contact points.</p> <p>b. Stops or delays pursuing enemy at BHL.</p> <p>NOTE: The fight is transferred to the unit in position, which assumes responsibility for the BHL.</p> <p>c. Passes element through unit positions with no halts.</p> <p>d. Provides security of the LD of the forward passing unit until it is able to assume that responsibility.</p> <p>e. Engages all enemy elements that can fire on passing unit.</p> <p>f. Provides emergency resupply of Class III and VIII items and care of casualties to the passing unit to allow continued movement.</p> <p>g. Closes all passage lanes when the passing unit has completed passage.</p> <p>h. Reports to higher headquarters upon completion of passage.</p> <p>6. Unit supports by fire.</p> <p>a. Engages and suppresses all enemy elements in line of sight by direct or indirect fires IAW passing unit's fire plan.</p> <p>b. Responds to requests for supporting fires from passing elements.</p> <p>c. Avoids firing on friendly elements.</p> <p>7. Unit complies with the ROE and ROI.</p> <p>8. Unit secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) as required.</p> <p>9. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.</p> <p>10. Unit processes captured documents and equipment as required.</p> <p>11. Unit continues operations as directed.</p> | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-1207 | Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2009 | Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2018 | Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2027 | Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-3000 | Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5000 | Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5162 | Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5180 | Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

- TASK:** Conduct Reconnaissance (07-OPFOR-0010)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to obtain tactical information about the enemy's location, disposition, intent, and activities. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel as well as engineer support are available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducted the reconnaissance mission by penetrating the enemy's outposts with mounted or dismounted patrols, and then obtaining and reporting required information IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintained focus; continuity; aggressiveness; timeliness; camouflage, concealment, and deception; accuracy; and reliability. The OPFOR reconnaissance elements completed the reconnaissance mission undetected. **NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy unit commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.
- TASK:** Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 HHC, TANK BN (XXI) HHC INF BN (M113/ITV)
 ANTIARMOR CO INF BN RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
 HHC INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
 TANK COMPANY, TK BN

TASK: Conduct a Raid (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-1099)

| | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------|--------------|
| (FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) | (FM 6-0 [100-34]) | (FM 21-60) |
| (FM 3-55 [100-55])(TBP) | (FM 6-30) | (FM 101-5) |
| (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) | (FM 7-20) | (FM 101-5-1) |
| (FM 5-71-2) | (FM 7-85) | (FM 101-5-2) |

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a raid at the location and time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays or graphics. The unit has a field artillery battery, engineer assets based on doctrine, an air defense platoon, and a military intelligence team (ground surveillance radar [GSR]) in direct support (DS). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the raid IAW tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF conducts extensive intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR). The BN/TF establishes clear abort criteria for the raid. The BN/TF surprises the enemy, assaults the objective to achieve the desired end state, and does not become decisively engaged. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as a result of friendly fire.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: **GO NO-GO**

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Unit leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. b. Conduct a map reconnaissance. c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets. (2) Define the battlefield environment. (3) Describe battlefield effects. (4) Evaluate the enemy. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**GO NO-GO**

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (5) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs). d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces. (2) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserves. (3) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems. (4) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets. (5) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets. (6) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINES). (7) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems. (8) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach. e. Employ intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) assets early in the MDMP process. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates. (2) Develop a ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent. (3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit. f. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Designate the main effort. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Assign the main attack to the element with the greatest combat power. (b) Ensure all available resources are focused to support the main effort. (c) Allocate additional combat elements in task organization, if required. (d) Attach combat support elements in direct support (DS) (such as engineers). (e) Narrow the scope of the main effort's responsibility in terms of geographical area or specified tasks. (2) Designate the supporting effort. (3) Designate a breach element as required. (4) Designate an assault element as required. (5) Designate a reserve as necessary or as directed. g. Integrate and synchronize battlefield operating systems (BOS). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Plan fire support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Synchronize fires on the objective to suppress, neutralize, and destroy critical enemy forces that most affect the unit's closure on the objective. (b) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets. (c) Plan obscuration fires as required (mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) dependent). (d) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary. (e) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort. (f) Plan fires beyond the objective to support a hasty attack or defense. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (g) Plan fires in support of the approach to the objective (These fires engage enemy security forces, destroy bypassed enemy forces, and screen friendly forces.) (h) Plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves. (i) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets and prevent fratricide. (2) Plan engineer support. Consider the scheme of engineer operations (SOEO): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed for the point of penetration, planned breach sites, possible bypasses, defending enemy positions or key weapons, and friendly support by fire (SBF) positions. (b) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan. (c) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units. (d) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis. (e) Determine breach site location and required number of breach lanes based on the scheme of maneuver, actions on the objective, and the size of the assault force as required. (f) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation. (g) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required. (3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the BN/TF ISR plan. (b) Ensure NBC reconnaissance assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations. (c) Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit. (d) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions such as breaching or assaults (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.) (e) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites. (4) Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support if support has been provided by higher headquarters. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure adequate AD of the unit during movement to and actions on the objective. (b) Shift assets as required by phase of the operation. (c) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during breaching operations or movements through restrictive terrain. (5) Plan combat service support (CSS). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**GO NO-GO**

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (b) Ensure adequate CSS support to the ISR effort (The S4 plans and integrates timely resupply and evacuation support of forward ISR assets is well planned and integrated into the ISR plan.) (c) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets. (d) Support a rapid reorganization by timing the arrival of CSS support forward once the unit secures the objective (Establish clear priorities of support during reorganization.) (e) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation. h. Establish clear abort criteria for the raid. i. Plan rally points for units to assemble to prepare for the attack or to assemble after the mission is complete and the force is ready to withdraw. j. Designate the withdrawal sequence. k. Develop contingency plans for contact prior to and after actions on the objective. l. Coordinate for passage of lines, if necessary. m. Conduct risk management. <p>3. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.</p> <p>4. Unit prepares for the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. b. Conducts extensive ISR. Maintains constant surveillance of the raid objective to ensure the enemy situation remains unchanged and within the capability of the unit. c. Conducts precombat checks. d. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent. e. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible. f. Positions forces. Position fire support (FS) systems to provide immediate responsive fires during the approach, actions on the objective, and withdrawal. <p>5. Unit executes the plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Moves tactically to designated tactical assembly area (AA). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Conducts a passage of lines if required. (2) Bypasses the enemy when desired. (3) Secures and occupies AA. (4) Maintains IPB to prevent fratricide. b. Conducts a leader's reconnaissance. c. Recommends to higher headquarters' commander (unit commander). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Abort if the combat power of the enemy significantly alters the engagement ratio. (2) Abort if enemy activity in the target area is significantly increased, movement of outside elements in the area is detected, or increased air coverage is present. (3) Continue with the raid. d. Conducts approach to the objective. <p>NOTE: The commander may choose to execute the raid mounted. However, assault of the objective is NORMALLY conduct DISMOUNTED with infantry carrier vehicles (ICVs) providing support.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Maintains a steady controlled rate of movement. (2) Conducts the following based on the factors of METT-TC: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Bypasses or breaches obstacles. (b) Reacts to artillery, chemical strikes, air attack, and electronic warfare (EW). (c) Transitions to different formations based on the terrain and enemy situation. (d) Employs forces to screen or guard flanks that may become exposed or threatened during the approach. (e) Avoids terrain features that are likely enemy artillery reference points, locations for chemical strikes, or locations for situational obstacles. (f) Uses precision maneuver and fires to counter the effects of enemy security forces to ensure an unimpeded and concealed approach. (g) Minimizes the effects of enemy deception. e. Conducts actions on the objective. | | |
| <p>NOTE: The intelligence officer (S2) should have an updated intelligence summary available just prior to the unit beginning to attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Commits maneuver forces and fires to isolate then rupture a small vulnerable portion of the enemy's defense to gain a flank or create a penetration. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Employs fires to weaken the enemy's position and set the conditions for success prior to closure within direct fire range of the enemy. (b) Isolates and fixes the enemy targeted for destruction by preventing the enemy from laterally repositioning or reinforcing. (c) Employs screening or obscuring smoke to isolate enemy forces from friendly forces. (d) Uses assault positions, phase lines, Terrain Index Reference System (TIRS), or checkpoints to control the positioning of the forces not yet committed. (2) Conducts timely reporting, cross-talk, accurate assessments, and sharing of information (subordinate commanders). f. Conducts decisive maneuver. | | |
| <p>NOTE: Normally, the destruction of a defending enemy force dictates an assault of the objective.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Shifts direct and indirect fires and repositions supporting force as required to support the maneuver of assaulting forces. (2) Commits the assaulting force while the unit commander and staff ensure that intelligence is available and current. (3) Directs the assaulting force to conduct the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Assemble quickly into combat formations and rapidly maneuver to destroy the enemy forces and clear assigned objectives. (b) Move along covered and concealed routes to an exposed enemy flank, created penetration, or other position of advantage. (4) Limits enemy repositioning and massing against assaulting forces through supporting fires and close air support (CAS), a rapid assault, and employment of smoke. (5) Achieves the intent of the raid. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 6. Unit withdraws from the objective in the sequence designated in the order to a covered and concealed positions away from the objective area. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Requests indirect fire and smoke to cover withdrawal. b. Leaves no essential elements of friendly information (EEFI) behind. 7. Unit consolidates as necessary. 8. Unit reorganizes as necessary. 9. Unit secures enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) as required. 10. Unit reports PIR and information requirements (IR) to higher headquarters commander or staff. 11. Unit treats and evacuates casualties. 12. Unit returns to designated location. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Processes EPWs. b. Processes captured documents or equipment as required. 13. Unit continues operations as directed. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-1009 | Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-1081 | Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-1207 | Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2009 | Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2018 | Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2027 | Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|---|--|
| 07-1-2054 | Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-3000 | Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5036 | Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5054 | Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5081 | Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5126 | Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5144 | Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | |
| 07-1-5162 | Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5180 | Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5207 | Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

- TASK:** Execute Actions on Contact (07-OPFOR-0015)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR makes contact with the enemy by receipt of direct fires, indirect fires, or direct observation. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available. The OPFOR has indirect-fire, close air, and engineer support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR executed actions on contact IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR fired and maneuvered to rapidly rout the enemy, seize the initiative, and create advantageous conditions for subsequent operations.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Defend (07-OPFOR-0019)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting defensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is occupying key terrain and is in prepared fighting positions. All assigned equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire, close air, and engineer support are available to the OPFOR.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the defense IAW the operation order or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR defeats, repels, disrupts, or destroys the attacking enemy and retains key terrain.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) ANTIARMOR CO INF BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
 HHC INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) TANK COMPANY, TK BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI) TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC, TANK BN (XXI)

TASK: Conduct a Deliberate Relief in Place (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-1108)

| | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------|--------------|
| (FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) | (FM 6-0 [100-34]) | (FM 21-60) |
| (FM 3-55 [100-55])(TBP) | (FM 6-30) | (FM 101-5) |
| (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) | (FM 7-20) | (FM 101-5-1) |
| (FM 5-71-2) | (FM 7-85) | (FM 101-5-2) |

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a relief in place at a specified time and location. A not later than (NLT) time for passage of command is specified. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the relief in place IAW the TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF conducts necessary coordination or liaison, moves tactically to designated contact point(s), occupies relieved unit's positions, and assumes responsibility for the fight within the established time line. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as a result of friendly fire.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: **GO NO-GO**

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Unit leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determine the time when the unit assumes responsibility for the area of operations (AO). b. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. c. Conduct a map reconnaissance. d. Establish communications with the relieved unit through an exchange of liaison personnel or a other means to exchange information pertinent to the relief operations. e. Determine advance party composition and guidance. f. Determine advance party reconnaissance and coordination tasks. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>g. Plan to collocate command and control (C2) headquarters.</p> <p>h. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Obtain updated enemy information from relieved unit's intelligence (S2). (2) Employ all available information-gathering assets. (3) Define the battlefield environment. (4) Describe battlefield effects. (5) Evaluate the enemy. (6) Determine enemy courses of action (COAs). <p>i. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces. (2) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserves. (3) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems. (4) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets. (5) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets. (6) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINES). (7) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems. (8) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAs). <p>j. Determine technique to use for the relief and order in which subordinate forces are to move and conduct the relief.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Relieve units one at a time. <p>NOTE: This method is the most deliberate and time-consuming.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Relieve maneuver companies sequentially one at a time. (b) Label routes sequentially to correspond to the order in which the company executes them during the relief. (c) Move lead company (of the relieving unit) to its release point (RP), its platoons move to their designated positions. (d) Move the next company (of the relieving unit) along its designated route to relieve its counterpart after the lead company is in position. <p>NOTE: This technique is repeated until each company or element has been relieved.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (2) Relieve units at the same time after the two units' command posts (CPs) are collocated and plans exchanged. Move along different routes (relieving and relived units). <p>NOTE: This method is the fastest but risks revealing friendly unit intentions.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (3) Relieve units by occupying in-depth and adjacent positions. <p>NOTE: This technique requires sufficient terrain to accommodate at the same time positioning of two like-sized units.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Position relieving unit so as to observe and provide protective direct and indirect fires for the relieved unit using the relieved units' fire plans. (b) Conduct a detailed physical reconnaissance of the defensive positions with their counterparts from the relieved unit (all commanders). | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (c) Share gathered information from the reconnaissance throughout the relieving unit during the planning and troop-leading process (TLP). k. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission. l. Employ intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) assets early in the MDMP process. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates (2) Develop a ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent. (3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit. m. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating System (BOS). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Plan fire support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Plan obscuration fires as required (mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) dependent). (b) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary. (c) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort. (d) Plan fires to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves. (e) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical assets and prevent fratricide. (f) Conduct detail fire support coordination between fire-support elements (FSEs). (g) Exchange target lists. (h) Plan for early occupation of the outgoing unit's firing positions and fire in support of the relieved forces' supporting artillery. (i) Plan for fire support (FS) assets to remain in position to assist in the operation until all maneuver elements have been relieved. (j) Coordinate to relieve forward observers, fire-support teams (FIST), and combat observation lasing team (COLT). (k) Ensure new FS plan is coordinated with new engineer countermobility plan if applicable. (2) Plan engineer support (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follow.) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed. (b) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan. (c) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units. (d) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis. (e) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation. (f) Conduct detailed coordination with the relieved unit's engineers or designated staff section. (g) Coordinate with relieved unit to determine location of friendly mines, obstacles, and fortifications. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (h) Coordinate with relieved unit to determine location of prepared demolitions. (i) Coordinate with relieved unit to obtain prepare target folders. (j) Coordinate with relieved unit to determine location of all known enemy mines, obstacles, or fortifications. (k) Conduct reconnaissance to verify the accuracy and condition of the previously mentioned information. (l) Verify trafficability into the relieved unit's positions. (m) Task-organizes assets for the relief to support mobility and continue countermobility and survivability improvements. (n) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required. (3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the unit's overall ISR plan. (b) Ensure NBC reconnaissance assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations. (c) Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit. (d) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.) (e) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites. (f) Exchange information with the relieved unit's chemical officer about any known NBC strikes in the relieved unit's AO. (4) Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure adequate AD of the unit during movement. (b) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during breaching operations or movements through restrictive terrain. (c) Collocate assets with relieved unit's air defense artillery (ADA) until relief is complete. (5) Plan CSS. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Determine relief order of combat support (CS) elements. (b) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements. (c) Ensure adequate CSS support to the ISR effort (The S4 plans and integrates timely resupply and evacuation support of forward ISR assets is well planned and integrated into the ISR plan.) (d) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation. (e) Plan transfer of excess supplies to the relieving unit. n. Conduct risk management. 3. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept. 4. Unit prepares for the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Employs maximum operational security (OPSEC) to prevent the enemy from detecting the operation. b. Determines or confirms contact points. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. d. Conducts extensive ISR. e. Conducts precombat checks. f. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent. g. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible. h. Initiates movement. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Moves to predetermined contact points and meets guides from the relieved unit. (2) Moves into hide positions and coordinates any final information. i. Collocates the two unit's main CPs to form a single traffic control cell that coordinates all movement in and out of AO. j. Uses primary and alternate routes, assembly areas, and holding areas to assist movement. k. Establish traffic control points using scouts or guide traffic and prevent congestion. l. Position forces to protect the relief. m. Completes preparations and coordination with the relieving or relieved unit. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Updates the enemy situation. (2) Completes transfer of sector sketches and fire plans. (3) Completes transfer of obstacle target folders and hasty protective minefield forms. 5. Unit executes the plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains OPSEC. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Changes frequencies on all unit radios to the frequencies of the relieved unit. (2) Maintains radio listening silence (if specified in the OPORD or FRAGO). (3) Adheres to noise, light, and litter discipline. b. Executes the technique selected for the relief. c. Transfers equipment and supplies as required. d. Conducts battle handover . 6. Reliving and relieved units keep main CPs collocated until completion of the relief and share battle tracking and reports. 7. Unit maintains outgoing units previous schedule of fires so as not to alert the enemy of the relief. 8. If enemy attacks before completion of the relief, the incoming unit becomes under operational control (OPCON) to the relieved unit. 9. Incoming and outgoing commanders conduct passage of command. Complete passage of command by the NLT time specified in the order. NOTE: Passage of command normally occurs when front line commanders have assumed responsibility for their respective AOs and the incoming commander has sufficient communications assets to control the operation. 10. Unit provides closure report to higher headquarters. 11. Unit secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required. 12. Unit treats and evacuates casualties. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| 13. Unit processes captured documents or equipment as required. | | |
| 14. Unit continues operations as directed. | | |

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-3000 | Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**TASK:** Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)**CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.**STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.**NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct a Raid (07-OPFOR-0013)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. It is occupying an objective rally point (ORP) with orders to raid enemy elements. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executed the raid IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR used surprise, firepower, and maneuver to destroy enemy positions, capture prisoners, capture equipment, or free prisoners friendly to the OPFOR. It avoided decisive engagement and withdrew all personnel from the objectives within the specified time. The OPFOR obtained all priority intelligence requirements (PIR).

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: ANTIARMOR CO INF BN RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
 HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) HHC INF BN (BFV)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
 TANK COMPANY, TK BN HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI)
 HHC, TANK BN (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI)

TASK: Conduct a Screen (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-1117)

| | | |
|---------------------|-------------|--------------|
| (FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) | (FM 5-71-2) | (FM 21-60) |
| (FM 3-90 [100-40]) | (FM 7-20) | (FM 101-5) |
| (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) | (FM 7-85) | (FM 101-5-1) |

| | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|----------|
| ITERATION: | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | (Circle) |
| COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: | | | | | P | U | (Circle) |

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a screen mission for a larger force. The order designates the general trace of the screen, the duration of the screen, and the time it must be established. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the screen IAW the TSOP, the order, or commander's guidance. The BN/TF does not allow any enemy ground elements to pass through the screen undetected and unreported. The BN/TF maintains continuous surveillance, detects all enemy activity in the area of operations (AO), provides early warning to the screened force, maintains contact with the enemy, and reports any activity in the AO. The BN/TF maintains contact with the main body and any security forces operating on its flanks and destroys or repels all enemy reconnaissance patrols. The BN/TF impedes and harasses the enemy and destroys enemy reconnaissance elements. The BN/TF uses all available night and thermal observation devices and electronic surveillance devices during limited visibility. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as a result of friendly fire.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|-----------|--------------|
| 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. b. Conduct a map reconnaissance. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Identify screen trace, orientation, lateral and rear boundaries, and named areas of interest (NAIs). (2) Identify enemy avenues of approach and possible objectives for enemy reconnaissance and infiltrating elements. (3) Identify and mark tentative control measures and dismount and remount points. (4) Select routes or sectors to facilitate rearward displacement. c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets. (2) Define the battlefield environment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Determine location, orientation, type, depth, and composition of obstacles. (3) Describe battlefield effects. (4) Evaluate the enemy. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Seek to determine the enemy's strength and disposition. (b) Determine likely enemy counterattack or reinforcing routes. (5) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs). d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces. (2) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserves. (3) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems. (4) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets. (5) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets. (6) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINES). (7) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems. (8) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs). e. Employ intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) assets early in the MDMP process. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates. (2) Develop a ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent. (3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit. (4) Integrate use of unmanned aerial vehicle (UAV) and imagery forward of the screen line. f. Task organize organic and nonorganic elements to best accomplish higher commander's intent. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Request augmentation for the security force as needed to provide intelligence, engineer, air defense, signal, and combat service support (CSS). (2) Attach combat support elements such as engineers in direct support (DS). (3) Designate security forces to cover enemy approaches. g. Confirm which unit has responsibility for the area between the screening force's rear boundary and the main battle area (MBA). h. Ensure the initial screen line is forward of the general trace but within range of supporting artillery. i. Depict screen lines as phase lines. j. Include passage graphics in the overlay. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**GO NO-GO**

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> k. Designate the left and right limits of the screen as well as a phase line for the near boundary (This phase line can also become the on-order battle handover line [BHL].) l. Designate control measures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include sectors, areas, or boundaries for subordinate elements. (2) Include en route rally points, objective rally points (ORPs), linkup points, contact points, and checkpoints. (3) Include passage points and infiltration lanes. (4) Include routes for patrols or initial screen line. m. Develop engagement criteria. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Consider size of enemy force. (2) Consider type of enemy unit. (3) Consider activity of enemy unit. n. Designate general locations for observation posts (OPs) enabling observation of the avenues of approach into the sector. o. Annotate unit graphic control measures in Maneuver Control System (MCS) using higher headquarters FRAGO overlay as a guide. p. Establish engagement criteria, based on the size, type, and activity of the enemy unit. q. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating Systems (BOS). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Plan fire support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Synchronize fires to suppress, neutralize, and destroy enemy forces and protect all screen force positions. (b) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets. (c) Plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) (if available) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves. (d) Plan obscuration fires as required (mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) dependent). (e) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary. (f) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort. (g) Develop control measures to facilitate control and prevent fratricide. (h) Conduct a time-distance analysis covering the enemy's probable rate of advance and the time of flight of artillery or mortars. (2) Plan engineer support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure terrain visualization products from the higher headquarters terrain section's Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) are available and distributed for possible bypasses, defending enemy positions and key weapons, and friendly positions. (b) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan. (c) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination including supporting combat support (CS) and CSS platforms and units. (d) Design obstacles forward to delay reconnaissance elements temporarily and assist in their destruction. (e) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis. (f) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (g) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation. (3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the BN/TF ISR plan. (b) Ensure NBC reconnaissance assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations. (c) Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit. (d) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.) (e) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites. (4) Plan air defense (AD) support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure adequate AD of the unit during movement to screen location. (b) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as movements through restrictive terrain. (5) Plan CSS. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements. (b) Ensure adequate CSS support to the reconnaissance effort (Timely resupply and evacuation support of forward reconnaissance assets is well planned and integrated into the reconnaissance plan by the logistics officer [S4].) (c) Plan supply routes to each battle position. (d) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets. (e) Support a rapid reorganization by timing the arrival of CSS support forward once the unit secures the objective (Establish clear priorities of support during reorganization.) (f) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation. (g) Integrate refueling and resupply operations with the scheme of maneuver. (h) Establish drop points for movement of key CSS assets. (i) Plan on-order control measures, logistics release points (LRPs), unit maintenance collection points (UMCPs), and ambulance exchange points (if applicable). r. Develop contingency plan for chance contact with the enemy prior to reaching initial screen line. s. Coordinate for passage of lines if necessary. t. Conduct risk management. 3. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept. 4. Unit prepares for the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. b. Conducts extensive reconnaissance. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Conducts confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept. d. Conducts precombat checks. e. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent. f. Conducts rehearsal during day and reduced visibility conditions if possible. g. Positions forces. <p>5. Unit executes the screen. Positions ground surveillance radar (GSR) assets and integrates their locations and missions with the security action of the screening element(s).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Moves to and occupies initial screen line. b. Establishes OPs along or slightly forward of the initial screen line as dictated by terrain. c. Allows no enemy ground element to pass through the screen undetected and unreported. d. Maintains continuous surveillance of enemy elements in the AO. e. Detects all enemy activity in the area of operations (AO). f. Provides early warning to the screened unit. g. Maintains contact with the enemy, once contact is made. h. Reports any activity in the AO. i. Maintains contact with the main body and any security forces operating on its flanks. j. Destroys or repels all enemy reconnaissance patrols using available systems and support. k. Impedes and harasses the enemy using available systems and support. l. Destroys enemy reconnaissance elements using available systems and support. m. Moves to keep pace with the main body, of the screened force, by moving or displacing OPs or moving tactically at a designated interval from the main body (If a moving screen is being executed.) n. Guides higher headquarters reaction forces, if designated. o. Conducts patrols between OPs and in areas that cannot be observed, as the situation permits. p. Withdraws to the subsequent screen line on order. q. Uses all available night and thermal observation devices and electronic surveillance devices during limited visibility. r. Complies with ROE and ROI. <p>6. Unit commander and staff control the movement of the screen.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Direct elements to move, on order, to successive screen lines. b. Use FRAGOs and graphic control measures to direct the moves. c. Direct elements to report when they occupy new screen lines or OPs. <p>7. Unit consolidates as necessary.</p> <p>8. Unit reorganizes as necessary.</p> <p>9. Unit secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.</p> <p>10. Unit treats and evacuates casualties.</p> <p>11. Unit processes captured documents or equipment as required.</p> <p>12. Unit continues operations as directed.</p> | | |

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-1207 | Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-3000 | Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5000 | Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5036 | Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5054 | Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5081 | Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5162 | Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

- TASK:** Conduct Movement to Contact (07-OPFOR-0035)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is ordered to conduct a movement to contact in order to locate and disrupt the unit. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire, artillery, and close air support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts the movement to contact IAW the operation order or commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintains security throughout the operation and is not surprised by the enemy. The OPFOR locates and fixes the enemy, allowing the remaining OPFOR to deploy and destroy all the enemy in the area. The OPFOR maintains the ability to maneuver and continue the mission.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) HHC INF BN (BFV)
 HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) ANTIARMOR CO INF BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TK BN

TASK: Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-1126)

| | | |
|-------------------------|-------------|--------------|
| (FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) | (FM 7-20) | (FM 44-80) |
| (FM 3-55 [100-55])(TBP) | (FM 7-85) | (FM 101-5) |
| (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) | (FM 9-43-2) | (FM 101-5-1) |
| (FM 4-30.3 [9-43-1]) | (FM 21-60) | (FM 101-5-2) |
| (FM 5-71-2) | (FM 44-8) | |

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to relocate units in a combat zone. The BN/TF will move to an assembly area (AA) to prepare for combat operations. The order designates start point (SP) and release point (RP) times and the route may or may not be specified by higher headquarters. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Hostile contact is not anticipated. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the tactical road march IAW the TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF crosses and clears the SP and RP at the designated times. The BN/TF uses the designated formation and road march technique while maintaining the prescribed intervals and rates of speed. The BN/TF maintains security before the movement, during the movement, and at the AA, and reacts to contact during the move to defeat encountered enemy forces. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>1. Unit leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP).</p> <p>NOTE: The operations officer [S3] prepares a detailed movement plan (The S3 has responsibility for planning tactical road marches.)</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**GO NO-GO**

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determine requirements for the movement. b. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. c. Conduct a map reconnaissance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Identify the route if not provided. (2) Identify likely enemy avenues of approach. (3) Mark tentative dismount points as appropriate. (4) Identify critical areas; for example, danger areas, defiles, and choke points, traffic control points, as well as rest and maintenance areas. (5) Determine assembly area (AA) or bivouac areas. (6) Identify start point (SP) and release point (RP). d. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB; staff) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Define the battlefield environment as it relates to the road march. (2) Describe battlefield effects as it relates to the road march. (3) Evaluate the enemy that may be encountered during the road march or at the AA. (4) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOA) during the road march and at the AA. e. Develop the situation template (SITEMP; intelligence officer [S2]). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces. (2) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems. (3) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets. (4) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets. (5) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINES). (6) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems. (7) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs). f. Employ intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) assets early in the MDMP process. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates. (2) Develop a ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent. (3) Assigned reconnaissance task to the reconnaissance element and to the advance party. g. Analyze organic and nonorganic movement capabilities. h. Establish unit movement priorities. i. Determine the road march technique to be used. j. Determine security measures to be used before the movement, during the movement, and at the destination. k. Determine order of march. l. Determine rate of march. m. Determine march interval. n. Determine time at which the head or tail of the column is to pass the SP and critical points. o. Determine location of command post (CP) during movement. p. Determine quartering party requirements. q. Determine and coordinate combat service support (CSS) requirements. r. Assign direct fire responsibilities. s. Develop graphic control measures (for example, check points, phase lines, scheduled halt points.) t. Organize the unit into a reconnaissance element, quartering party, main body, and trail element. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> u. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy. v. Determine actions at the destination. w. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating System (BOS). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Plan fire support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets. (b) Plan obscuration fires as required (mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) dependent). (c) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary. (d) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort. (e) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions and to prevent fratricide. (2) Plan engineer support (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follow.) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Include engineers in the reconnaissance effort if possible. (b) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed. (c) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan. (d) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) platforms and units. (e) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis. (f) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation. (g) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required. (3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the BN/TF ISR plan. (b) Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit. (c) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites. (4) Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support (if support has been provided by higher headquarters). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure adequate AD of the unit during movement to and actions in the AA. (b) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as movements through restrictive terrain. (5) Plan CSS. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Plan equipment recovery operations. (b) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements (such as refueling). (c) Ensure adequate CSS support to the ISR effort (The S4 plans and integrates timely resupply and evacuation support of forward ISR assets is well planned and integrated into the ISR plan.) | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**GO NO-GO**

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (d) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation. x. Conduct risk management. 3. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept. 4. Unit commander or staff organizes and dispatches reconnaissance element (Reconnaissance effort should begin early in the planning process.) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Confirms available routes and conditions (routes may be specified by higher headquarters). b. Confirms SP and RP suitability. c. Confirms distance between checkpoints on the route and total distance from SP to RP. d. Confirms assembly or bivouac area location. e. Confirms checkpoint locations on the route, if required. f. Locates and marks obstacles. g. Determines the number of guides required and their route location. 5. Unit prepares for road march. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reconnoiters its (each march unit of a serial) route to the SP and determines the exact time to reach it. b. Performs preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on all vehicles before movement and identifies all non-mission capable (NMC) vehicles. c. Loads all vehicles IAW load plans and CSS plan. d. Briefs and posts road guides. e. Verifies communications in all vehicles prior to movement. f. Issues strip maps if not issued with order. g. Briefs and dispatches the quartering party to conduct the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Navigate by infiltration to the AA. (2) Move over the routes to be used by the unit and execute a route reconnaissance and time-distance check. Report times and distances to the main CP. (3) Provide guides along the route as necessary. (4) Report and engage any enemy observed IAW the commander's intent. (5) Identify potential CP locations based on tactical requirements such as cover and concealment and the line-of-sight signal requirements of FM radios. (6) Identify unit left and right limits of fire (Record this information and send updates to their commander.) (7) Verify subordinate unit locations and sectors of fire to ensure there are no gaps in coverage. (8) Ensure necessary routes are cleared. (9) Transmit changes and updates to the main CP to alert the main body to changes to the route or assembly area. (10) Adjust unit locations in the area assigned if it is unsuitable (If such adjustments do not correct the problem, the officer in charge (OIC) or non-commission officer in charge (NCOIC) immediately notifies the S3 or commander.) h. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent. i. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible. j. Positions elements in the correct march order. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>6. Unit executes road march.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Crosses the SP at the designated time IAW OPORD or FRAGO. b. Uses the designated formation, road march technique and, rate of march. Maintains proper march speed to reach checkpoints at times specified in the order. c. Uses visual signals or FM radio to communicate with unit elements IAW order or TSOP. d. Reports control measures IAW order or TSOP. e. Maintains 360 degree observation, including aerial observation while moving and at the halt. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Uses security elements to eliminate enemy elements and allow uninterrupted movement of the main body. (2) Detects enemy aircraft before they attack, engages them, and reports to higher headquarters. f. Conducts scheduled halts at regular intervals IAW the TSOP (as the tactical situation permits). Performs PMCS and refueling as required. g. Bypasses obstacles if possible. h. Reports the unit's position to higher headquarters as required. i. Reacts to hostile contact as appropriate. j. Maintains radio listening silence. <p>Note for Digitized Units:</p> <p>Army Battle Command System (ABCS) communications may be maintained during radio listening silence as long as the FBCB2 radio silence switch is activated and the precision lightweight global positioning system receiver (PLGR) is not transmitting.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Maintains net control. (2) Allows no radio traffic other than ABCS on internal nets. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> k. Performs recovery operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Repairs vehicles with minor damage. (2) Directs all vehicles to rejoin the unit or reports and moves them to designated maintenance collection points (MCPs) or main supply route (MSR) as directed by the order. l. Arrives at check points or release points at the time specified. m. Complies with the ROE and ROI. n. Arrives at and moves through the RP. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Reports arrival at and the completion of the move through the RP. (2) Passes through the release point without halting. (3) Meets and follows quartering party guides and move to their designated area. (4) Orients weapons to establish local security. (5) Enforces proper dispersion and camouflage. (6) Processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required. (7) Processes captured documents or equipment as required. <p>7. Unit continues operations as directed.</p> | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-2009 | Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2018 | Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2054 | Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-3000 | Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5000 | Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5054 | Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5207 | Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Air Attack (07-OPFOR-0029)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers have been identified and are susceptible to air attack. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR's fixed-wing combat aircraft and attack helicopters are available to provide aerial fire support to ground maneuver forces.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes the air attack using fixed- and rotor-winged aircraft IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers are destroyed, delayed, or forced to retreat.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) ANTIARMOR CO INF BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (M113) HHC INF BN (BFV)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TK BN

TASK: Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-1135A)

| | | |
|-------------------------|------------|--------------|
| (FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) | (FM 6-30) | (FM 101-5) |
| (FM 3-55 [100-55])(TBP) | (FM 7-20) | (FM 101-5-1) |
| (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) | (FM 7-85) | (FM 101-5-2) |
| (FM 5-71-2) | (FM 21-60) | |

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a terrain-oriented attack at the location and time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays or graphics. The unit has engineer assets based on doctrine, an air defense platoon, and a military intelligence team (ground surveillance radar [GSR]) in direct support (DS). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The unit conducts the attack in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit conducts extensive reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S). The unit avoids terrain features that are likely enemy artillery reference points, locations for chemical strikes, or locations for situational obstacles. The unit employs all available combat power to seize and retain the designated terrain or area. The unit complies with ROE or ROI.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|-----------|--------------|
| 1. Unit leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conduct a digital or conventional map reconnaissance. b. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets. (2) Define the battlefield environment. (3) Describe battlefield effects. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (4) Evaluate the enemy. (5) Determine enemy courses of actions (COAs). d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces. (2) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserves. (3) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems. (4) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets. (5) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets. (6) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINES). (7) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems. (8) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAs). e. Develop R&S plan and employ R&S assets early in the MDMP process. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated R&S plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates. (2) Develop a R&S plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent. (3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit. f. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Designate the main effort. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Assign the main attack to the element with the greatest combat power. (b) Ensure all available resources are focused to support the main effort. (c) Attach combat support elements such as engineers in direct support (DS). (d) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets. (e) Narrow the scope of the main effort's responsibility in terms of geographical area or specified tasks. (2) Designate the supporting effort. (3) Designate a breach element as required. (4) Designate an assault element as required. (5) Designate a reserve as necessary or as directed. g. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating System (BOS). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Plan fire support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Synchronize fires on the objective to suppress, neutralize, and destroy critical enemy forces that most affect the unit's closure on the objective. (b) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets. (c) Plan obscuration fires as required (METT-TC dependent). (d) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary. (e) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort. (f) Plan fires beyond the objective to support a hasty attack or defense. (g) Plan fires in support of the approach to the objective (These fires engage enemy security forces, destroy bypassed enemy forces, and screen friendly forces.) | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (h) Plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves. (i) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets and prevent fratricide. (2) Plan mobility, countermobility, and survivability (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follow.) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed for the point of penetration, planned breach sites, possible bypasses, defending enemy positions or key weapons, and friendly support by fire (SBF) positions. (b) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan. (c) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units. (d) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis. (e) Determine breach site location and required number of breach lanes based on the scheme of maneuver, actions on the objective, and the size of the assault force as required. (f) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation. (g) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required. (3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the unit's overall R&S plan. (b) Ensure NBC reconnaissance assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations. (c) Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit. (d) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions such as breaching or assaults (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.) (e) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites. (4) Plan air defense (AD) support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure adequate AD of the unit during movement to and actions on the objective. (b) Shift assets as required by phase of the operation. (c) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during breaching operations or movements through restrictive terrain. (5) Plan CSS. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements. (b) Ensure adequate CSS support to the R&S effort (The S4 plans and integrates timely resupply and evacuation support of forward R&S assets is well planned and integrated into the R&S plan.) | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (c) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets. (d) Support a rapid reorganization by timing the arrival of CSS support forward once the unit secures the objective (Establish clear priorities of support during reorganization.) (e) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation. h. Conduct risk management. i. Develop a well-resourced and coordinated R&S plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates. <p>3. Unit commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.</p> <p>4. Unit prepares for the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. b. Continues extensive R&S. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Determines the enemy's strength and disposition. (2) Determines composition, disposition, and strength of enemy forces along a flank or at an area selected for penetration. (3) Determines composition; disposition; and strength of security forces, reserve forces, defending combat formations within the enemy's main battle area (MBA), and key combat multipliers (such as artillery, engineers, and AD). (4) Determines location, type, depth, and composition of obstacles and bypasses around obstacles. (5) Determines likely enemy counterattack or reinforcing routes. (6) Determines type of enemy fortifications and survivability effort. (7) Anticipates the enemy's engagement areas (EAs). (8) Determines enemy vulnerabilities. (9) Determines gaps in the enemy's defense. (10) Determines exposed or weak flanks. (11) Determines enemy units that lack mutual support. (12) Determines unobserved or weakly defended avenues of approach to the enemy's flank or rear. (13) Determines cover and concealed routes that allow friendly forces to close on the enemy's defense. (14) Determines weak obstacles or fortifications in the enemy defense, especially along a flank. c. Conducts precombat checks. d. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent. e. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible. f. Positions forces. <p>5. Unit executes the plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducts approach to the objective. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Attacks only those enemy forces that directly affect the seizure of the objective or that may impact on future operations. (2) Supports the unit's approach to the objective (R&S assets). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Focuses on the enemy's security forces forward of the enemy's main defense to locate positions and obstacles along the unit's planned routes of advance. (b) Locates obstacles, restrictive terrain, and danger areas. (3) Breaches or bypasses obstacles. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (4) Transitions to different formations based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). (5) Employs forces to screen or guard flanks that may become exposed or threatened during the approach. (6) Avoids terrain features that are likely enemy artillery reference points, locations for chemical strikes, or locations for situational obstacles. (7) Uses available combat power to weaken enemy positions. (8) Shifts fires and smoke to suppress enemy forces and obscure friendly forces. (9) Minimizes the effects of enemy deception. b. Conducts actions on the objective. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Occupies positions. (2) Secures all major facilities or structures if applicable. (3) Positions forces to best defend the objective while allowing a rapid transition to follow-on operations. (4) Pushes reconnaissance and security forces forward of the objective to provide early warning of approaching enemy forces. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Focuses on areas that the enemy may use to reposition forces, commit reserves, and counterattack. (b) Reports enemy reactions, repositioning, and battle damage assessment as the unit develops the engagement. (5) Calls forward CSS assets. 6. Unit commander and staff maintain command and control (C2) and report the developing situation to higher headquarters. Reposition main and TAC command posts (CPs) to sustain constant monitoring and tracking of subordinate units and to evaluate information that impacts on decision points. 7. Unit consolidates as necessary. 8. Unit reorganizes as necessary. 9. Unit secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) as required. 10. Unit processes captured documents and equipment as required. 11. Unit treats and evacuates casualties. 12. Unit continues operations as directed. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|---|--|
| 07-1-1207 | Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5036 | Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5081 | Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5144 | Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5171 | Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6081 | Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Defend (07-OPFOR-0019)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting defensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is occupying key terrain and is in prepared fighting positions. All assigned equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire, close air, and engineer support are available to the OPFOR.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the defense IAW the operation order or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR defeats, repels, disrupts, or destroys the attacking enemy and retains key terrain.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

- TASK:** Defend a Battle Position (07-OPFOR-0032)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is in a hasty or deliberate occupation of a battle position which may or may not be supported by obstacles. It observes the advancing enemy or is alerted to the enemy in the area by a spot report from higher headquarters. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR has automatic weapons, antiarmor systems, and indirect-fire support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR completes all defensive preparations not later than (NLT) the time specified IAW the operation order or commander's guidance. The enemy does not surprise the OPFOR main body. The OPFOR destroys, blocks, or canalizes the enemy when they enter the engagement area. The OPFOR retains control of the designated terrain and forces the withdrawal of the enemy. The OPFOR prevents destruction of obstacles.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: ANTIARMOR CO INF BN RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
 HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV)
 HHC INF BN (BFV) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI) TANK COMPANY, TK BN
 TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI)

TASK: Conduct a Withdrawal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-1144)

| | | |
|-------------------------|------------|--------------|
| (FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) | (FM 7-20) | (FM 101-5) |
| (FM 3-55 [100-55])(TBP) | (FM 7-85) | (FM 101-5-1) |
| (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) | (FM 20-32) | (FM 101-5-2) |
| (FM 5-71-2) | (FM 21-60) | |

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Task Force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disengage and withdraw from the enemy and reposition for another mission. The BN/TF is task-organized as appropriate for mission conditions. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the withdrawal in accordance with (IAW) TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF provides its own security during the withdrawal. The BN/TF disengages the main body and moves to a designated location where the enemy cannot observe friendly forces or engage them with direct fire. The BN/TF disengages the security force. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as a result of friendly fire.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|-----------|--------------|
| 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive the order and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). | | |
| a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. | | |
| b. Conduct a map reconnaissance. | | |
| (1) Select primary and alternate withdrawal routes. | | |
| (2) Select tentative successive battle positions. | | |
| c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). | | |
| (1) Ensure that all available information-gathering assets are employed. | | |
| (2) Define the battlefield environment. | | |
| (3) Describe battlefield effects. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (4) Evaluate the enemy. (5) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs). d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces. (2) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems. (3) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets. (4) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets. (5) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINEs). (6) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems. (7) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs). e. Employ intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) assets early in the MDMP process. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates. (2) Develop a ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent. (3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit. f. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Designate composition and strength of the security element. (2) Designates a detachment left in contact (DLIC) as required (Usually when the unit is in close combat with the enemy and a security zone does not exist.) (3) Designate composition and strength of the main body. (4) Designate composition and strength of the reserve (if used). (5) Designate a quartering party for future assembly area (AA). g. Integrate and synchronize battlefield operating systems (BOS). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Plan fire support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Plan priority of fires to the security force. (b) Augment fires for security force with snipers, scatterable mines (SCATMINEs), or Striker assets necessary for the security force to focus fires on multiple routes. (c) Plan obscuration fires as required. (d) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary. (e) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort. (f) Plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves. (g) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets to prevent fratricide. (2) Plan engineer support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed. (b) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan. (c) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units. (d) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (e) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation. (f) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required. (g) Plan to site obstacles behind the security force to complicate pursuit. (3) Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as movements through restrictive terrain. (b) Plan support for security force. (4) Plan combat service support (CSS). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements. (b) Ensure maintenance collection points are active only long enough to transfer damaged vehicles to other recovery vehicles. (c) Ensure maintenance collection points avoid the collection of vehicles greater than their ability to transport them. (d) Plan to prestock Classes III and IV adjacent to successive positions. (e) Plan to withdraw CSS assets before maneuver elements. (f) Plan casualty evacuation. h. Determine specific tasks for subordinate elements. i. Determine disengagement criteria (time, friendly situation, enemy situation). j. Plan for a deliberate break in contact from the enemy. k. Plan for deception to conceal the withdrawal for as long as possible. l. Plan the rapid displacement of the main body, safeguarded from enemy interference. m. Plan for protection of withdrawal routes and alternates. n. Determine the withdrawal and linkup plan for the security force. o. Coordinate with adjacent units as required. 3. BN/TF prepares for the withdrawal. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. b. Provides specific tasks to subordinate elements c. Supervises subordinate troop leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent. d. Conducts rehearsals and inspections (mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) dependent). Rehearses contingencies for reverting to a delay, commitment of the reserve, and enemy interdiction of movement routes. e. Briefs and dispatches quartering party to future AA. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Conducts reconnaissance of positions to which unit will withdraw. (2) Selects subordinate element positions or sectors. (3) Provides guides as necessary. (4) Coordinates with the unit or element through which the company will conduct a rearward passage of lines, if required. f. Positions security force. g. Supervises subordinate troop leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the commander's intent. h. Prepares wounded Soldiers and damaged equipment and nonessential supplies for movement. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. Moves nonessential combat support (CS) and CSS units to the rear. j. Conducts ISR IAW the ISR plan. k. Positions guides for traffic control if necessary. <p>4. R&S assets screen the flanks and conduct reconnaissance of withdrawal routes to allow unhindered maneuver by the main body (within their capability).</p> <p>5. Unit executes the withdrawal.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Executes the deception plan and begins withdrawal (May want to move casualties out first). b. Maintains contact with the enemy unit and simulates the continued presence of the main body until ordered to disengage or until another force takes over the task (security force). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Conceals the withdrawal. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Maintains the defensive pattern of the whole force across the sector. (b) Maintains communication and information security. (c) Avoids establishing patterns of movement that may indicate friendly intentions. (d) Focuses security forces on destroying enemy reconnaissance forces. (e) Uses multiple withdrawal routes. (f) Moves during limited visibility and along covered and concealed routes if the situation allows. (2) Conducts actions on contact during the withdrawal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Delays, attacks, or defends as required by the situation. (b) Shifts to alternate routes or bypasses interdicted routes or areas. c. Disengages main body. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Maintains deception using security force or detachment left in contact (DLIC) and fires. (2) Maintains cohesiveness of the overall operation. (3) Moves rapidly on multiple routes to designated positions (intermediate or final). (4) Avoids fixation on the close-in fight. (5) Enforces the disciplined use of routes during the withdrawal. (6) Reports mobility corridor status. d. Provides the unit flexibility to deal with unexpected enemy actions by taking limited offensive action such as spoiling attacks to disorganize or disrupt the enemy or by countering enemy attacks, reinforcing threatened areas, and protecting withdrawal routes (reserve, if designated). e. Breaks contact and moves as a rear guard (security force). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Balances security and deception with speed as it disengages (2) Maintains tactical movement and security techniques until it is clear that the enemy is not pursuing and contact has been broken and then withdraws as rapidly as possible. (3) Counters any enemy attempts to disrupt the withdrawal or pursue the unit. <p>6. BN/TF completes withdrawal within times specified in higher headquarters orders.</p> <p>7. BN/TF consolidates as necessary.</p> <p>8. BN/TF reorganizes as necessary.</p> | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| 9. BN/TF secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) as required. | | |
| 10. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties. | | |
| 11. BN/TF processes captured documents or equipment as required. | | |
| 12. BN/TF continues operations as directed. | | |

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|------------|---|--|
| 07-1-1009 | Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-1036A | Conduct a Delay (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-1207 | Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2009 | Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-2018 | Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2027 | Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2054 | Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-3000 | Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5000 | Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5036 | Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5081 | Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|---|--|
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5144 | Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5162 | Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5171 | Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5207 | Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.

- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.
- TASK:** Conduct Air Attack (07-OPFOR-0029)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers have been identified and are susceptible to air attack. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR's fixed-wing combat aircraft and attack helicopters are available to provide aerial fire support to ground maneuver forces.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR executes the air attack using fixed- and rotor-winged aircraft IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers are destroyed, delayed, or forced to retreat.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI)
RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
HHC, TANK BN (XXI) TANK COMPANY, TK BN
HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) ANTIARMOR CO INF BN
RIFLE CO INF BN (M113) HHC INF BN (BFV)
RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV)

TASK: Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-1162)

(FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) (FM 5-71-2) (FM 21-60)
(FM 3-55 [100-55])(TBP) (FM 7-20) (FM 101-5)
(FM 3-90 [100-40]) (FM 7-85) (FM 101-5-1)
(FM 3-90.2 [71-2])

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a force-oriented attack against a moving force at the location and time specified. The attack may be conducted during a counterattack, as a spoiling attack, as exploitation, or as a result of a movement to contact. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the attack IAW the TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF conducts extensive intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) operations. The BN/TF gains and maintains contact with the enemy force, and fully employs all available combat power to isolate, fix, and destroy the enemy force. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as a result friendly fire.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|-----------|--------------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. b. Conduct a map reconnaissance. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Identify tactical assembly area (AA). (2) Identify rally points. (3) Identify tentative support by fire and assault positions. (4) Identify likely enemy avenues of approach (AAA). | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>(5) Identify routes to and from the tactical AA and objective. (6) Mark tentative dismount points.</p> <p>c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets. (2) Define the battlefield environment. (3) Describe battlefield effects. (4) Evaluate the enemy. (5) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs).</p> <p>d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP). (1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces. (2) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserves. (3) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems. (4) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets. (5) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets. (6) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINES). (7) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems. (8) Include likely enemy AAA.</p> <p>e. Employ ISR assets early in the MDMP process. (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates. (2) Develop a ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent. (3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit.</p> <p>f. Determine where to fight the enemy. (1) Select the most advantageous location to fight the engagement and then determine alternate locations. (2) Develop decision points (DPs) for the commitment of the unit at each selected engagement location based on rates of movement of the unit and the enemy (Commander, operations officer [S3], and intelligence officer [S2]). (3) Select named areas of interest (NAIs) to identify the enemy's rate and direction of movement (S2).</p> <p>NOTE: Digitally equipped units possess the unique ability to rapidly shift from a direction of attack, reorient the attack, and mass combat power to fight a dynamic and fluid battle. They achieve this dominance through situational understanding (SU) that feeds into the common operational picture (COP).</p> <p>g. Maximize the advantage of the terrain. Select avenues of approach that allow the unit to strike the enemy from a flank or rear.</p> <p>h. Maintain flexibility. Develop a plan that is flexible enough to allow the unit to attack the enemy regardless of where the engagement develops (The scheme must include provisions to fight the enemy at alternate engagement areas (EAs).</p> <p>i. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission. (1) Designate the main effort as required. (a) Assign the main attack to the element with the greatest combat power. (b) Ensure all available resources are focused to support the main effort.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (c) Attach combat support elements such as engineers in direct support (DS). (d) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets. (e) Narrow the scope of the main effort's responsibility in terms of geographical area or specified tasks. (2) Designate the supporting effort. (3) Designate a breach element as required. (4) Designate an assault element as required. (5) Designate a reserve as necessary or as directed. j. Integrate and synchronize battlefield operating systems (BOS). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Plan fire support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Synchronize fires on the objective to suppress, neutralize, and destroy critical enemy forces that most affect the unit's closure on the objective. (b) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets. (c) Plan obscuration fires as required (mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) dependent). (d) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary. (e) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort. (f) Plan fires beyond the objective to support a hasty attack or defense. (g) Plan fires in support of the approach to the objective (These fires engage enemy security forces, destroy bypassed enemy forces, and screen friendly forces.) (h) Plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves. (i) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets to prevent fratricide. (2) Plan engineer support (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follow.) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed for planned breach sites, possible bypasses, defending enemy positions or key weapons, and friendly support by fire (SBF) positions. (b) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan. (c) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) platforms and units. (d) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis. (e) Determine breach site location and required number of breach lanes based on the scheme of maneuver, actions on the objective, and the size of the assault force as required. (f) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation. (g) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required. (3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**GO NO-GO**

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the unit's overall R&S plan if assets are available. (b) Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations. (c) Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit. (d) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions such as breaching or assaults (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.) (e) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites. <p>(4) Plan air defense (AD) support (if support has been provided by higher headquarters).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure adequate AD of the unit during movement to and actions on the objective. (b) Shift assets as required by phase of the operation. (c) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during breaching operations or movements through restrictive terrain. <p>(5) Plan CSS.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements. (b) Ensure adequate CSS support to the ISR effort (The S4 plans and integrates timely resupply and evacuation support of forward ISR assets is well planned and integrated into the ISR plan.) (c) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets. (d) Support a rapid reorganization by timing the arrival of CSS support forward once the unit secures the objective (Establish clear priorities of support during reorganization.) (e) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation. (f) Integrate refueling and resupply operations with the scheme of maneuver. (g) Establish drop points for movement of key CSS assets. <p>k. Conduct risk management.</p> <p>l. Coordinate for passage of lines if necessary.</p> <p>3. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.</p> <p>4. BN/TF prepares for the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. b. Conducts extensive reconnaissance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Focuses reconnaissance effort on answering intelligence requirements (IR) to support the commander's decisions on where to fight the enemy, when and where to initiate fires, and how best to maneuver the unit against the enemy. (2) Gains and maintains contact with the enemy. (3) Supports the unit's movement. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Moves well forward to reconnoiter obstacles and areas that may slow the unit's movement and that could de-synchronize the timing and planned location of the attack. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>(b) Seeks to detect contaminated areas, enemy security forces, and suitable routes for the unit's use.</p> <p>(4) Reports enemy actions on contact.</p> <p>(a) Occupies positions that provide good observation of the EA and that are survivable during the engagement (Reconnaissance assets).</p> <p>(b) Continue to report enemy actions, battle damage assessment, and locations.</p> <p>c. Conducts precombat checks.</p> <p>d. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.</p> <p>e. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.</p> <p>f. Positions forces.</p> <p>5. BN/TF executes the plan.</p> <p>a. Gains contact with the enemy force through the reconnaissance effort.</p> <p>b. Maximizes the approach to the objective.</p> <p>(1) Adjusts the speed of the unit to ensure it arrives at the destination EA at the proper time in relation to the enemy.</p> <p>(2) Conceals movement to maintain surprise. Maximizes the use of covered and concealed routes to mask movement.</p> <p>(3) Employs a robust reconnaissance and security effort to detect and destroy enemy security forces.</p> <p>(4) Ensures subordinate unit leaders maintain positive control of formations to ensure the unit's ability to mass combat power at the decisive point and time.</p> <p>c. Conducts actions on the objective.</p> <p>(1) Employs indirect fires reinforced with situational obstacles to set the conditions for the EA fights by disrupting and weakening the enemy before he gets to the EA.</p> <p>(2) Defeats enemy security forces.</p> <p>(a) Attacks the enemy's forward or flank security to develop the situation (advance guard).</p> <p>(b) Engages and defeats the enemy's security forces and gains contact with the enemy's main body before the enemy can effectively react (advance guard).</p> <p>NOTE: The BN/TF commander weighs using the advance guard with maneuver forces and fires to destroy enemy security forces.</p> <p>(3) Fixes the enemy.</p> <p>(a) Fixes the enemy main body to create the conditions for the main body's attack (Normally, this task is executed by the unit's advance guard once it destroys the opposing enemy security force.)</p> <p>(b) Employs indirect fires against the lead enemy forces to allow the advance guard to deploy and gain contact with the enemy main body.</p> <p>(4) Maneuvers the main body.</p> <p>(a) Positions the unit to attack the enemy formation from an assailable flank where its total combat power can be massed against an enemy weakness to reach a quick decision.</p> <p>(b) Shifts indirect fires to suppress the enemy force that directly opposes the main body's attack.</p> <p>(c) Strikes the enemy force with overwhelming strength and speed.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**GO NO-GO**

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| (d) Adjusts fire support coordination measures (FSCMs) to provide continuous support and ensure force protection (fire support officer [FSO]). (e) Maneuvers to quickly destroy or penetrate any enemy forces attempting to fix or delay the unit and strikes the bulk of the evading enemy force from the flank or rear. (f) Defeats or destroys the enemy force IAW the commander's intent. 6. BN/TF consolidates as necessary. 7. BN/TF reports as required. 8. BN/TF reorganizes as necessary. 9. BN/TF secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required. 10. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties. 11. BN/TF processes captured documents or equipment as required. 12. BN/TF continues operations as directed. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|--|--|
| 07-1-1072 | Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-1207 | Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2009 | Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2018 | Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2027 | Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2054 | Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-3000 | Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5036 | Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5054 | Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5081 | Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5144 | Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5162 | Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5171 | Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5180 | Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

- TASK:** Conduct Movement to Contact (07-OPFOR-0035)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is ordered to conduct a movement to contact in order to locate and disrupt the unit. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire, artillery, and close air support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts the movement to contact IAW the operation order or commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintains security throughout the operation and is not surprised by the enemy. The OPFOR locates and fixes the enemy, allowing the remaining OPFOR to deploy and destroy all the enemy in the area. The OPFOR maintains the ability to maneuver and continue the mission.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TK BN ANTIARMOR CO INF BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (M113) HHC INF BN (BFV)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV)

TASK: Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-1171)

(FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) (FM 6-30) (FM 101-5)
 (FM 3-55 [100-55])(TBP) (FM 7-20) (FM 101-5-1)
 (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) (FM 7-85) (FM 101-5-2)
 (FM 5-71-2) (FM 21-60)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a force-oriented attack against a stationary force at the location and time specified. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The unit received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the attack IAW the TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF integrates and synchronizes battlefield operating systems (BOS). The BN/TF conducts extensive intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) operations to determine composition, disposition, and strength of enemy forces. The BN/TF employs forces to screen or guard flanks that may become exposed or threatened during the approach, and avoids terrain features that are likely enemy artillery reference points, locations for chemical strikes, or locations for situational obstacles. The BN/TF destroys or forces the withdrawal of opposing enemy security forces. The BN/TF limits enemy repositioning and massing against assaulting forces through supporting fires, a rapid assault, quick breaching operations, and effective employment of smoke. The BN/TF fully employs all available combat power to isolate and destroy the enemy force. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as a result of friendly fire.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: **GO NO-GO**

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and develop a fully synchronized plan that masses all available combat power against the enemy using the military decision-making process (MDMP). a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**GO NO-GO**

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Conduct a map reconnaissance. c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets. (2) Define the battlefield environment. (3) Describe battlefield effects. (4) Evaluate the enemy. (5) Determine enemy courses of actions (ECOAs). d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces. (2) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserves. (3) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems. (4) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets. (5) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets. (6) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINES). (7) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems. (8) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs). e. Employ ISR assets early in the MDMP process. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates. (2) Develop a ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements and accomplishes his intent. (3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit. f. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Designate the main effort as required. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Assign the main attack to the element with the greatest combat power. (b) Ensure all available resources are focused to support the main effort. (c) Attach combat support elements such as engineers in direct support (DS). (d) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets. (e) Narrow the scope of the main effort's responsibility in terms of geographical area or specified tasks. (2) Designate the supporting effort. (3) Designate a breach element as required. (4) Designate an assault element as required. (5) Designate a reserve as necessary or as directed. g. Integrate and synchronize battlefield operating systems (BOS). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Plan fire support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Synchronize fires on the objective to suppress, neutralize, and destroy critical enemy forces that most affect the unit's closure on the objective. (b) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets. (c) Plan obscuration fires as required (mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) dependent). (d) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (e) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort. (f) Plan fires beyond the objective to support a hasty attack or defense. (g) Plan fires in support of the approach to the objective (These fires engage enemy security forces, destroy bypassed enemy forces, and screen friendly forces.) (h) Plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves. (i) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets and prevent fratricide. (2) Plan engineer support (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follow.) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed for the point of penetration, planned breach sites, possible bypasses, defending enemy positions or key weapons, and friendly support by fire (SBF) positions. (b) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan. (c) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units. (d) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis. (e) Determine breach site location and required number of breach lanes based on the scheme of maneuver, actions on the objective, and the size of the assault force as required. (f) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation. (g) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required. (3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the BN/TF ISR plan. (b) Ensure NBC reconnaissance assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations. (c) Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the BN/TF. (d) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions such as breaching or assaults (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.) (e) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites. (4) Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support (if support has been provided by higher headquarters). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure adequate AD of the unit during movement to and actions on the objective. (b) Shift assets as required by phase of the operation. (c) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during breaching operations or movements through restrictive terrain. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**GO NO-GO**

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (5) Plan combat service support (CSS). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements. (b) Ensure adequate CSS support to the reconnaissance effort (Timely resupply and evacuation support of forward reconnaissance assets is well planned and integrated into the reconnaissance plan by the logistics officer [S4].) (c) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets. (d) Support a rapid reorganization by timing the arrival of CSS support forward once the unit secures the objective (Establish clear priorities of support during reorganization.) (e) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation. h. Conduct risk management. 3. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept. 4. BN/TF prepares for the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. b. Conducts extensive reconnaissance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Determines the enemy's strength and disposition. (2) Determines composition, disposition, and strength of enemy forces along a flank or at an area selected for penetration. (3) Determines composition; disposition; and strength of security forces, reserve forces, defending combat formations within the enemy's main battle area (MBA), and key combat multipliers (such as artillery, engineers, and AD). (4) Determines location, type, depth, and composition of obstacles and bypasses around obstacles. (5) Determines likely enemy counterattack or reinforcing routes. (6) Determines type of enemy fortifications and survivability effort. (7) Anticipates the enemy's engagement areas (EAs). (8) Determines enemy vulnerabilities. (9) Determines gaps in the enemy's defense. (10) Determines exposed or weak flanks. (11) Determines enemy units that lack mutual support. (12) Determines unobserved or weakly defended avenues of approach to the enemy's flank or rear. (13) Determines cover and concealed routes that allow friendly forces to close on the enemy's defense. (14) Determines weak obstacles or fortifications in the enemy defense, especially along a flank. c. Conducts precombat checks. d. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent. e. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible. f. Positions forces. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>5. BN/TF conducts movement to the line of departure (LD).</p> <p>NOTE: When attacking from positions not in contact, units often stage in rear assembly areas, road march to attack positions behind friendly units in contact with the enemy, conduct passage of lines, and begin the attack.</p> <p>6. BN/TF executes the plan.</p> <p>a. Conducts approach to the objective.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Breaches or bypasses obstacles. (2) Transitions to different formations based on the factors of METT-TC. (3) Employs forces to screen or guard flanks that may become exposed or threatened during the approach. (4) Avoids terrain features that are likely enemy artillery reference points, locations for chemical strikes, or locations for situational obstacles. (5) Destroys or forces the withdrawal of opposing enemy security forces. (6) Uses available combat power to weaken enemy positions. (7) Shifts fires and smoke to suppress enemy forces and obscure friendly forces. (8) Minimizes the effects of enemy deception. <p>b. Conducts actions on the objective.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Employs firepower. Shifts fires and smoke to suppress enemy forces and obscure friendly forces as the unit approaches the enemy defense. (2) Conducts shaping operations. Isolates the enemy force targeted for destruction by preventing him from laterally repositioning and reinforcing. (3) Conducts decisive operations. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Updates the assaulting force with critical information about the enemy and friendly situation. (b) Limits enemy repositioning and massing against assaulting forces through supporting fires, a rapid assault, quick breaching operations, and effective employment of smoke. (c) Shifts direct and indirect fires and repositions as required to support the maneuver of assaulting forces (supporting force). (d) Assaults exposed enemy flanks through a created penetration or other position of advantage (assault force). (e) Rapidly maneuvers using covered and concealed routes and breaches protective obstacle(s; assaulting force). (f) Commits the reserve as necessary to reinforce the momentum of the attack, block enemy counterattacks, or exploit success. (4) Pushes reconnaissance and security forces forward to provide critical information to the unit. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Focuses on areas that the enemy may use to reposition forces, commit reserves, and counterattack. (b) Reports enemy reactions, repositioning, and battle damage assessment as the unit develops the engagement. (5) Calls forward CSS assets. <p>7. BN/TF commander and staff assess the situation.</p> <p>a. Conduct command and control (C2) and report the developing situation to higher headquarters.</p> <p>b. Reposition command post (CP) to sustain constant monitoring and tracking of subordinate units and to evaluate information that impacts on decision points.</p> <p>8. BN/TF consolidates as necessary.</p> | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| 9. BN/TF reorganizes as necessary. | | |
| 10. BN/TF secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) as required. | | |
| 11. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties. | | |
| 12. BN/TF processes captured documents and equipment as required. | | |
| 13. BN/TF continues operations as directed. | | |

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-1072 | Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-1207 | Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-3000 | Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5036 | Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5081 | Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5171 | Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5180 | Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|---|--------------------------------------|
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-6081 | Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Defend (07-OPFOR-0019)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting defensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is occupying key terrain and is in prepared fighting positions. All assigned equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire, close air, and engineer support are available to the OPFOR.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the defense IAW the operation order or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR defeats, repels, disrupts, or destroys the attacking enemy and retains key terrain.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Defend a Battle Position (07-OPFOR-0032)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is in a hasty or deliberate occupation of a battle position which may or may not be supported by obstacles. It observes the advancing enemy or is alerted to the enemy in the area by a spot report from higher headquarters. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR has automatic weapons, antiarmor systems, and indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR completes all defensive preparations not later than (NLT) the time specified IAW the operation order or commander's guidance. The enemy does not surprise the OPFOR main body. The OPFOR destroys, blocks, or canalizes the enemy when they enter the engagement area. The OPFOR retains control of the designated terrain and forces the withdrawal of the enemy. The OPFOR prevents destruction of obstacles.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TK BN ANTIARMOR CO INF BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (M113) HHC INF BN (BFV)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV)

TASK: Conduct an Attack of a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-1180)

| | | |
|-------------------------|-------------|--------------|
| (FM 3-06) | (FM 5-71-2) | (FM 21-60) |
| (FM 3-06.11) | (FM 7-20) | (FM 101-5) |
| (FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) | (FM 7-85) | (FM 101-5-1) |
| (FM 3-55 [100-55])(TBP) | (FM 20-32) | (FM 101-5-2) |
| (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) | | |

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct an attack on a built-up area at the location and time specified. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BT/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the attack IAW the TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF conducts extensive intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) operations. The BN/TF employs all available assets against the enemy to isolate and secure the objective(s). The BN/TF destroys, captures, or forces the enemy force to withdraw. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as a result of friendly fire.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|-----------|--------------|
| 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). | | |
| NOTE: The focus of planning is to develop a fully synchronized plan that masses all available combat power against the enemy. | | |
| a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. | | |
| b. Conduct a map reconnaissance. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>NOTE: Should involve the analysis of aerial imagery, photographs, or any other detailed information about the building(s) or other urban terrain for which the unit is responsible.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Obtain maps and diagrams. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Obtain maps of subway systems, railways, and mass transit routes. (b) Obtain diagrams of underground water, sewer, and utility systems. (c) Obtain diagrams of electrical power stations and emergency services. (d) Obtain diagrams of fuel supply and storage facilities. (e) Obtain maps and diagrams of mass communications facilities such as cellular phones, computer hubs, radio, and telephone. c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets. (2) Define the battlefield environment and describe battlefield effects. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Identify covered and concealed approaches to the urban area. (b) Identify key and decisive terrain inside and outside of the built-up area. (c) Identify mobility corridors to include air, building level, intra-building level, street level, and subterranean level. (d) Identify buildings protected by the law of land warfare such as churches, medical facilities, historic monuments, and other facilities dedicated to arts and sciences, provided they are not being used for military purposes. (e) Identify areas and facilities restricted by current ROE. (f) Identify stadiums, parks, open fields, playgrounds, and other open areas that may be used for landing zones, holding areas, or engagement areas. (g) Identify location of prisons and jails. (h) Identify construction sites that may contain barrier materials. (i) Identify significant fire hazards and locations of other hazardous material (HAZMAT), such as hazardous industrial waste. (j) Identify areas that limit the unit's ability to employ maximum combat power due to the need to minimize damage and rubble effects. (k) Identify other logistics infrastructure that could affect the operation such as sources of potable water, bulk fuel and transport systems, and so forth. (3) Evaluate the enemy. (4) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs). Identify what the enemy will do and what information is needed to confirm the enemy's action (Intelligence officer [S2]). d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces. (2) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserves. (3) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems. (4) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets. (5) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets. (6) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINES). (7) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**GO NO-GO**

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (8) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs). e. Develop the ISR plan, and employ ISR assets to conduct reconnaissance throughout the MDMP process. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU, and to support the planning process. (2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR), and accomplishes his intent. (3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit. f. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Designate the main effort. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Assign the main attack to the element with the greatest combat power. (b) Ensure all available resources are focused to support the main effort. (c) Allocate additional combat elements in task organization if required. (d) Attach combat support elements such as engineers in direct support (DS). (e) Narrow the scope of the main effort's responsibility in terms of geographical area or specified tasks. (f) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets. (g) Narrow the scope of the main effort's responsibility in terms of geographical area or specified tasks. (2) Designate the supporting effort. (3) Designate a breach element as required. (4) Designate an assault element as required. (5) Designate a reserve as necessary or as directed. g. Integrate and synchronize battlefield operating systems (BOS). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Plan fire support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Synchronize fires on the objective to suppress, neutralize, and destroy critical enemy forces that most affect the unit's closure on the objective. (b) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets. (c) Plan suppression and obscuration fires in support of breaching operations. (d) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as to the location of the main effort. (e) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort. (f) Plan fires beyond the objective to support a hasty attack or defense. (g) Plan fires in support of the approach to the objective (These fires engage enemy security forces, destroy bypassed enemy forces, and screen friendly forces). (h) Plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves. (i) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (2) Plan engineer support (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follows.) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed for the point of penetration, planned breach sites, possible bypasses, defending enemy positions or key weapons, and friendly support by fire (SBF) positions. (b) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL is immediately disseminated to all BN/TF units and supporting elements. (c) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) platforms and units. (d) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis. (e) Address each task and assign responsibility when developing the SOEO. (f) Determine breach site location and required number of breach lanes based on the scheme of maneuver, actions on the objective, and the size of the assault force. (g) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort or support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation. (h) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required. (3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the ISR plan. (b) Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations. (c) Disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit. (d) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions such as breaching or assaults (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.) (e) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites. (4) Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support if support has been provided by higher headquarters. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure adequate AD coverage of the BN/TF during movement to, and during actions on, the objective. (b) Shift assets as required by phase of the operation. (c) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during breaching operations or movements through restrictive terrain. (5) Plan CSS. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements. (b) Ensure adequate CSS support to the reconnaissance effort (Timely resupply and evacuation support of forward reconnaissance assets is well planned and integrated into the reconnaissance plan by the logistics officer [S4].) (c) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>(d) Support a rapid reorganization by timing the arrival of CSS support forward once the unit secures the objective (Establish clear priorities of support during reorganization.)</p> <p>(e) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation.</p> <p>h. Develop contingency plans for contact prior to and after actions on the objective.</p> <p>i. Establish clear abort criteria.</p> <p>j. Conduct risk management.</p> <p>3. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.</p> <p>4. BN/TF prepares for the mission.</p> <p>a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.</p> <p>b. Conducts extensive ISR operations. Seeks to determine the enemy's strength and disposition.</p> <p>c. Conducts precombat checks.</p> <p>d. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.</p> <p>e. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.</p> <p>f. Positions forces.</p> <p>g. Moves tactically to designated tactical assembly area (AA) or other designated area.</p> <p>(1) Conducts a passage of lines if required.</p> <p>(2) Secures and occupies AA.</p> <p>(3) Maintains commander's critical information requirements (CCIR) to prevent fratricide.</p> <p>(4) Leads movement through built-up areas with dismounted infantry Tanks or Bradley fighting vehicles [BFVs], follow and provide close overwatch.</p> <p>5. BN/TF conducts the attack.</p> <p>a. Moves to the objective.</p> <p>(1) Moves as rapidly as possible without sacrificing security.</p> <p>(2) Uses covered and concealed routes.</p> <p>(3) Detects enemy forces, positions, and obstacles to prevent them from interfering with the attack plan (reconnaissance element or security element).</p> <p>(4) Breaches or bypasses encountered obstacles.</p> <p>(5) Defeats enemy elements encountered.</p> <p>b. Isolates the objective.</p> <p>(1) Seizes terrain that dominates the area so that the enemy cannot supply, reinforce, or withdraw its defenders.</p> <p>(2) Uses terrain that provides the ability to place suppression on the objective.</p> <p>(3) Controls avenues of approach into and away from the objective.</p> <p>(4) Uses direct and indirect-fire support to suppress and kill the enemy, screen the assault element, protect breaching actions, and isolate the enemy by blocking reinforcements and counterattacks.</p> <p>c. Assaults to gain a foothold on the objective.</p> <p>NOTE: A foothold is normally one to two city blocks and is usually a company intermediate objective.</p> <p>(1) Creates an entry point that provides cover from enemy fire and a location for attacking troops to enter the urban area.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (2) Fixes the defense or enemy. (3) Assaults the objective. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Uses supporting fires to suppress enemy elements that can place effective fires on the assaulting force or breach force. (b) Uses obscuration to cover breach and assault force actions. (c) Breaches obstacles that can not be bypassed. (d) Continues reconnaissance in support of the attack. (e) Uses maneuver, mobility, shock action, and massed firepower to secure a foothold and rupture established defenses. (f) Kills, captures, destroys, or forces the withdrawal of all enemy on objectives as required by the commander's intent. (g) Attempts to minimize collateral damage and noncombatant casualties. (4) Clears the built-up area using the appropriate technique based on commander's intent. <p>6. BN/TF commander commits the reserve to accomplish one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Exploit success or an enemy weakness. b. Support a forward element with fire or maneuver. c. Assume the mission of another element (building clearance). d. Maintain the momentum of the attack (seize a key building). e. Hold buildings seized by another element. f. Defeat or block enemy counterattacks. <p>7. BN/TF commander reports the situation to the higher headquarters commander as necessary.</p> <p>8. BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.</p> <p>9. BN/TF consolidates, as necessary.</p> <p>10. BN/TF reorganizes, as necessary.</p> <p>11. BN/TF secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.</p> <p>12. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties.</p> <p>13. BN/TF processes captured documents or equipment as required.</p> <p>14. BN/TF continues operations as directed.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|---|--|
| 07-1-1207 | Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-1225 | Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-3000 | Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5036 | Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5054 | Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5081 | Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5162 | Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5171 | Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5180 | Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6072 | Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

- TASK:** Defend a Battle Position (07-OPFOR-0032)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is in a hasty or deliberate occupation of a battle position which may or may not be supported by obstacles. It observes the advancing enemy or is alerted to the enemy in the area by a spot report from higher headquarters. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR has automatic weapons, antiarmor systems, and indirect-fire support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR completes all defensive preparations not later than (NLT) the time specified IAW the operation order or commander's guidance. The enemy does not surprise the OPFOR main body. The OPFOR destroys, blocks, or canalizes the enemy when they enter the engagement area. The OPFOR retains control of the designated terrain and forces the withdrawal of the enemy. The OPFOR prevents destruction of obstacles.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.
-
- TASK:** Defend (07-OPFOR-0019)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is conducting defensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is occupying key terrain and is in prepared fighting positions. All assigned equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire, close air, and engineer support are available to the OPFOR.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts the defense IAW the operation order or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR defeats, repels, disrupts, or destroys the attacking enemy and retains key terrain.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.
-
- TASK:** Defend an Obstacle (07-OPFOR-0020)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has employed obstacles and is covering them with direct and indirect fires. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The enemy has indirect-fire support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR defends obstacles IAW the operation order or commander's guidance. The OPFOR covers the obstacles by fire. The OPFOR fixes the enemy in the obstacles and destroys the enemy by fire.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

- TASK:** Defend a Building (07-OPFOR-0022)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has received an order to defend a building. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. Automatic weapons, antiarmor systems, and indirect-fire support are available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR defends the building IAW the operation order or commander's guidance. The OPFOR prevents the enemy from isolating and entering the building. The OPFOR blocks or canalizes the enemy to destroy them or force them to withdraw. The OPFOR retains control of the designated building or counterattacks to regain and maintain control.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: ANTIARMOR CO INF BN RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
 HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
 TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV)
 HHC INF BN (BFV)

TASK: Conduct an Infiltration or Exfiltration (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-1189)

| | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|--------------|
| (FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) | (FM 6-0 [100-34]) | (FM 21-60) |
| (FM 3-55 [100-55])(TBP) | (FM 6-0.6 [100-34-1]) | (FM 101-5) |
| (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) | (FM 7-20) | (FM 101-5-1) |
| (FM 5-71-2) | (FM 7-85) | (FM 101-5-2) |

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct an infiltration or exfiltration. The purpose of the infiltration or exfiltration (gather information, attack an enemy position from the rear, conduct a raid or ambush, capture prisoners, seize key terrain, or aid the main attack) is identified in the order. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the infiltration and exfiltration in IAW the TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF employs reconnaissance patrols to find routes, gaps, and weaknesses in enemy positions, and moves through the enemy area without being detected. The BN/TF accomplishes the purpose of the mission, and complies with ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as a result of friendly fire.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|-----------|--------------|
| 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. b. Conduct a map reconnaissance. (1) Mark rally points that are easily identifiable. (2) Identify likely enemy avenues of approach. (3) Identify routes to and from rally points. (4) Identify a linkup point or assembly area (AA). | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**GO NO-GO**

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets. (2) Define the battlefield environment. (3) Describe battlefield effects. (4) Evaluate the enemy. (5) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs). d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces. (2) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserves. (3) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems. (4) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets. (5) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets. (6) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINES). (7) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems. (8) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs). e. Develop the ISR plan, and employ ISR assets to conduct reconnaissance throughout the MDMP process. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU, and to support the planning process. (2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR), and accomplishes his intent. (3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit. f. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission. g. Conduct risk management. h. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating System (BOS). Plan fire support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Plan fires and effects to provide immediate responsive fires. (2) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets. (3) Plan obscuration fires as required (mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations [METT-TC] dependent). (4) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary. (5) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort. (6) Plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) (if available) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves. (7) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets to prevent fratricide. i. Plan engineer support (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follow.) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed for the point of infiltration or exfiltration, planned breach sites, possible bypasses, defending enemy positions or key weapons, and friendly support by fire (SBF) positions. (2) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL is immediately disseminated to all BN/TF units and supporting elements. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (3) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units. (4) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis. (5) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation. (6) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required. j. Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the BN/TF ISR plan. (2) Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations. (3) Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit. (4) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke based on METT-TC (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.) (5) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites. k. Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support (if support has been provided by higher headquarters). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ensure adequate AD coverage of the BN/TF during movement to, and during actions on, the objective. (2) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during breaching operations or movements through restrictive terrain. l. Plan CSS. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements. (2) Ensure adequate CSS to the reconnaissance effort (Timely resupply and evacuation of forward reconnaissance assets is planned and integrated into the ISR plan.) (3) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation. m. Develop contingency plans for chance enemy contact. n. Designate rally points to prepare for attack or to assemble after the mission is complete. o. Coordinate for passage of lines if necessary. p. Assign lanes and release points (RP) to subordinate elements. 3. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept. 4. BN/TF prepares for the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. b. Conducts extensive ISR operations. c. Conducts precombat checks. d. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparation efforts are consistent with the BN/TF commander's intent. e. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible. f. Positions forces as per the plan. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**GO NO-GO**

| | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>5. BN/TF executes the plan.</p> <p>a. INFILTRATES.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Conducts forward passage of lines. (2) Maintains communications during movement. (3) Separates into infiltrating elements at designated rally points. (4) Takes advantage of gaps and weaknesses in enemy positions as well as limited visibility, adverse weather, and broken terrain affording cover and concealment. (5) Avoids enemy contact if possible. <p>NOTE: If contact is made, avoids becoming decisively engaged, breaks contact, and continues movement to the rally point.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (6) Maintains dispersion and strict noise, light, and camouflage discipline. (7) Infiltrates by entire company or by separate platoons as specified during planning. (8) Uses battlefield noise (including artillery) to mask movement. (9) Engages the enemy as necessary using support by fire or indirect fires. <p>b. Conducts linkup.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Conducts long range (far) recognition. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Establishes communications before entering direct fire weapons range. (b) Authenticates correctly or responds to challenges IAW the signal operating instructions (SOI), as necessary. (c) Confirms short range recognition signals. (2) Completes linkup. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Conducts short range (near) recognition. (b) Completes movement to assembly area. <p>c. Completes actions at the linkup point or assembly area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Consolidates and reorganizes. (2) Secures enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required. (3) Reports completion of linkup to the higher commander. (4) Treats and evacuates casualties. (5) Secures captured documents or equipment as required. (6) Continues operations as directed. (7) Sends updated situation reports (SITREPs) to the higher commander as necessary. <p>d. EXFILTRATES.</p> <p>NOTE: Planning and performance steps for exfiltration generally mirror those for infiltration. A rearward passage of lines would be conducted.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Consolidates and reorganizes as necessary. (2) Secures EPW as required. (3) Conducts movement to the designated area after the rearward passage of lines. (4) Reports completion of exfiltration to higher commander. (5) Treats and evacuates casualties. (6) Processes captured documents or equipment as required. <p>6. BN/TF continues operations as directed.</p> | | |

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-1063 | Conduct a Linkup (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-1081 | Conduct a Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1207 | Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5000 | Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5036 | Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5081 | Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5162 | Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5180 | Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5207 | Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Defend (07-OPFOR-0019)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting defensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is occupying key terrain and is in prepared fighting positions. All assigned equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire, close air, and engineer support are available to the OPFOR.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the defense IAW the operation order or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR defeats, repels, disrupts, or destroys the attacking enemy and retains key terrain.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: ANTIARMOR CO INF BN HHC INF BN (M113/ITV)
RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI)
RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) TANK COMPANY, TK BN
HHC INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)

TASK: Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-1198)

(FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) (FM 7-20) (FM 21-60)
(FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) (FM 7-85)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters, and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a dismounted tactical movement at a specified time and location. The battalion has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts dismounted tactical movement IAW the TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF crosses the line of departure (LD) at the designated time. The BN/TF moves using the route or axis of advance, formations, and techniques of movement, as specified. The BN/TF adjusts routes or axis, formation, or movement technique(s) in response to the changing probability of enemy contact, or to changes in the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as a result of friendly fire.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: **GO NO-GO**

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>NOTE: Usually the BN/TF does not move as a unit using one movement technique. However, when moving as a unit along a single avenue, the BN/TF commander designates the movement technique to be used by the lead unit(s) based on the likelihood of enemy contact.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using Army Battle Command System (ABCS), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. b. Conduct a map reconnaissance. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Identify routes that provide protection from direct and indirect fires. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Offer concealment from ground and air. (b) Avoid skylining. (c) Avoid open areas and potential kill zones. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**GO NO-GO**

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (d) Avoid obvious enemy avenues of approach. (e) Select routes that provide for mutual support if multiple routes are selected. (2) Identify coordination points, passage points, and boundaries. (3) Identify adjacent units. (4) Plot waypoints on easily recognizable terrain and on significant turns on the route for ease in navigation. c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets. (2) Define the battlefield environment. (3) Describe battlefield effects. (4) Evaluate the enemy. (5) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs). d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces. (2) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems. (3) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets. (4) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets. (5) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINES). (6) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons including the ranges of delivery systems. (7) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs). e. Develop the ISR plan, and employ ISR assets to conduct reconnaissance throughout the MDMP process. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU, and to support the planning process. (2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR), and accomplishes his intent. (3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the battalion. f. Organize the task force (TF) to accomplish the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Designate elements to provide forward, flank, and rear security. (2) Designate advance guard for each axis. g. Plan to make initial contact with the smallest forces possible if contact is the intent. h. Develop control measures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Designate sufficient control and coordination measures to facilitate reporting and FRAGOs. (2) Develop limited visibility markings to aid in command and control at night. (3) Develop graphics. (4) Designate guides. (5) Plan to use night vision devices and thermal devices. i. Develop a movement plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Select a tentative formation based on the factors of METT-TC. (2) Coordinate formation with subordinate elements if using a different formation than the main body. (3) Select the tentative movement technique based on the factors of METT-TC. (4) Designate danger areas and contingencies for likely danger areas or locations where lead elements must switch (formations change). | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (5) Position mortars and engineers forward in the column. (6) Position air defense (AD), if available, forward for security and for covering movement across exposed areas, coordinating for additional coverage with the brigade. (7) Position combat trains to provide protection and rapid combat service support (CSS). j. Develop graphic control measures using the higher headquarters FRAGO overlay as a guide. k. Develop a security plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Assign each subordinate element a sector of responsibility (They are responsible for their sector during movement and at the halt.) l. Coordinate passage of lines as necessary. m. Address actions on chance contact with the enemy. n. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating System (BOS) based on the factors of METT-TC. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Plan fire support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate indirect-fire support. (b) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets. (c) Assign direct fire responsibilities. (d) Plan obscuration fires as required. (e) Plan deception fires as necessary. (f) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort. (g) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions and to prevent fratricide. (2) Plan engineer support (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follow.) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Include engineers in the reconnaissance effort if possible. (b) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed. (c) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan. (d) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL is immediately disseminated to all BN/TF units and supporting elements. (e) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the battalion zone or axis. (f) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation. (g) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense. (3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the ISR plan. (b) Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations. (c) Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the battalion. (d) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites. (4) Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support if support has been provided by higher headquarters. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure adequate AD coverage of the BN/TF during movement to, and during actions on, the objective. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**GO NO-GO**

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>(b) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the battalion is most vulnerable to air attacks such as movements through restrictive terrain.</p> <p>(5) Plan CSS.</p> <p>(a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements.</p> <p>(b) Ensure adequate CSS to the reconnaissance effort (Timely resupply and evacuation of forward reconnaissance assets is planned and integrated into the ISR plan.)</p> <p>(c) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets.</p> <p>(d) Support a rapid reorganization by timing the arrival of CSS support forward once the battalion reaches its objective (Establish clear priorities of support during reorganization.)</p> <p>(e) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation.</p> <p>o. Conduct risk management.</p> <p>3. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.</p> <p>4. BN/TF prepares for tactical movement.</p> <p>a. Briefs movement plan.</p> <p>(1) Specifies conditions under which the battalion will change movement techniques or formations.</p> <p>(2) Designates bounding and overwatch elements based on factors of METT-TC.</p> <p>(3) Briefs waypoints for checkpoints, boundaries, and so forth.</p> <p>(4) Briefs signals or FM commands used for command and control.</p> <p>b. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparation efforts are consistent with the BN/TF commander's intent.</p> <p>c. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.</p> <p>5. Battalion executes tactical movement. Initiates movement from the assembly area to the line of departure (LD).</p> <p>NOTE: Command group is positioned where it can best control the operation.</p> <p>a. Conducts passage of lines if required.</p> <p>b. Moves using the following fundamentals:</p> <p>(1) Moves as fast as the situation allows.</p> <p>(2) Positions weapons platoons, squads, or teams where they can provide responsive fires in the event of enemy contact (i.e. mortars).</p> <p>(3) Moves undetected to the designated point specified in the OPORD.</p> <p>(4) Positions advance guards so that they can maneuver to support each other when two companies are used.</p> <p>(5) Positions lead elements of the main body so they can move to positions to support the advance guard.</p> <p>6. BN/TF crosses the LD and moves using the appropriate formation based on METT-TC.</p> <p>a. Reports crossing to higher headquarters.</p> <p>b. Uses the formation that provides the proper control, security, and speed.</p> <p>c. Adjusts formation during limited visibility to maintain visual contact between elements and to maintain the rate of movement.</p> | | |
|---|--|--|

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>d. Executes the movement technique based on the factors of METT-TC.</p> <p>(1) Adjust the movement technique to provide greater security as the probability of enemy contact increases.</p> <p>NOTE: Movement techniques are used when not in contact with the enemy. In effect, once contact is made, movement techniques end and fire and maneuver are used to eliminate the enemy threat.</p> <p>(2) Employs traveling technique as directed (lead unit[s]).</p> <p>(a) Maintains separation.</p> <p>(b) Maintains integrity as much as possible and organizes the formation for ease of deployment during the upcoming mission.</p> <p>(3) Employs traveling overwatch technique as directed (lead unit[s]).</p> <p>(a) Moves in a column or wedge formation.</p> <p>(b) Positions an element as lead and elements as trail.</p> <p>(c) Maintains 360 degree security.</p> <p>(4) Employs bounding overwatch technique as directed (lead unit[s]).</p> <p>(a) Designates the initial bounding and initial overwatch element(s) and specify either the alternate or successive bounding method (commander).</p> <p>(b) Specifies either the alternate or successive bounding method (commander).</p> <p>7. BN/TF elements maintain formation with correct interval, speed, or lateral dispersion IAW commander's guidance or TSOP.</p> <p>8. BN/TF elements maintain security.</p> <p>a. Maintain security forward, to flanks, and rear.</p> <p>b. Avoid gaps between the main body and security elements.</p> <p>c. Keep all likely high-speed approaches into the main body under observation.</p> <p>d. Locate and warn of approaching enemy forces in time to deploy.</p> <p>9. BN/TF leaders assess the operation.</p> <p>a. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation.</p> <p>b. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.</p> <p>10. BN/TF takes actions at halts IAW TSOP.</p> <p>11. BN/TF transitions to fire and maneuver if enemy contact is made.</p> <p>12. BN/TF consolidates as necessary.</p> <p>13. BN/TF reorganizes as necessary.</p> <p>14. BN/TF secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.</p> <p>15. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties.</p> <p>16. BN/TF processes captured documents or equipment as required.</p> <p>17. BN/TF continues operations as directed.</p> | | |

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--------------------------------------|
| 07-1-3000 | Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-5000 | Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5027 | Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5054 | Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Movement to Contact (07-OPFOR-0035)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is ordered to conduct a movement to contact in order to locate and disrupt the unit. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire, artillery, and close air support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the movement to contact IAW the operation order or commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintains security throughout the operation and is not surprised by the enemy. The OPFOR locates and fixes the enemy, allowing the remaining OPFOR to deploy and destroy all the enemy in the area. The OPFOR maintains the ability to maneuver and continue the mission.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Execute Actions on Contact (07-OPFOR-0015)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR makes contact with the enemy by receipt of direct fires, indirect fires, or direct observation. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available. The OPFOR has indirect-fire, close air, and engineer support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executed actions on contact IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR fired and maneuvered to rapidly rout the enemy, seize the initiative, and create advantageous conditions for subsequent operations.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) ANTIARMOR CO INF BN
RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
HHC INF BN (BFV) TANK COMPANY, TK BN
HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)

TASK: Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-1207)

(FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) (FM 5-71-2) (FM 101-5-1)
(FM 3-55 [100-55])(TBP) (FM 21-60) (FM 101-5-2)
(FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) (FM 101-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters, and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct mounted tactical movement at a specified time and place. The TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Enemy contact is likely. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts mounted tactical movement IAW the TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF crosses the line of departure (LD) at the designated time. The BN/TF moves using the route or axis of advance, formations, and techniques of movement as specified in the order. The BN/TF adjusts routes or axis, formation or movement technique(s) in response to the changing probability of enemy contact, or to changes in the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>NOTE: Usually the BN/TF will not move as a unit using one movement technique. However, when moving as a unit along a single avenue, the BN/TF commander designates the movement technique to be used by the lead unit(s) based on the likelihood of enemy contact.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. b. Conduct a map reconnaissance. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Identify routes that provide protection from direct and indirect fires. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Offer concealment from ground and air. (b) Avoid skylining. (c) Avoid open areas and potential kill zones. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (d) Avoid obvious enemy avenues of approach. (e) Select routes that provide for mutual support if multiple routes are selected. (2) Identify coordination points, passage points, and boundaries. (3) Identify adjacent units. (4) Plot waypoints on easily recognizable terrain and on significant turns on the route for ease in navigation. (5) Mark tentative dismount points on digital and conventional maps as appropriate. c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets. (2) Define the battlefield environment. (3) Describe battlefield effects. (4) Evaluate the enemy. (5) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs). d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces. (2) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems. (3) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets. (4) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets. (5) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINES). (6) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons including the ranges of delivery systems. (7) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs). e. Develop the ISR plan, and employ ISR assets to conduct reconnaissance throughout the MDMP process. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU, and to support the planning process. (2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR), and accomplishes his intent. (3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the BN/TF. f. Organize the BN/TF to accomplish the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Designate elements to provide forward, flank, and rear security. (2) Designate advance guard for each axis. g. Plan to make initial contact with the smallest forces possible if contact is the intent. h. Develop control measures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Designate sufficient control and coordination measures to facilitate reporting and FRAGOs. (2) Develop limited visibility marking to aid in command and control at night. (3) Develop graphics. (4) Designate guides. (5) Plan to use night vision devices and thermal devices. i. Develop a movement plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Select a tentative formation based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, civil considerations (METT-TC). (2) Coordinate formation with subordinate elements if using a different formation than the main body. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**GO NO-GO**

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (3) Select the tentative movement technique based on the factors of METT-TC. (4) Designate danger areas and contingencies for likely danger areas or locations where lead elements must switch (formations change). (5) Position mortars and engineers forward in the column. (6) Position air defense (AD), if available, forward for security and for covering movement across exposed areas, coordinating for additional coverage with the higher headquarters. (7) Position combat trains to provide protection and rapid combat service support (CSS). j. Develop graphic control measures using the higher headquarters FRAGO overlay as a guide. k. Plan the use of dismounts when any of the following conditions apply: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Detailed reconnaissance is required. (2) Stealth is required. (3) Enemy contact is expected or visual contact has been made. (4) Vehicle movement is restricted by terrain. (5) Time is not limited. (6) Security is the primary concern. l. Develop a security plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Assign each subordinate element a sector of responsibility (They are responsible for their sector during movement and at the halt.) m. Coordinate passage of lines as necessary. n. Address actions on chance contact with the enemy. o. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating System (BOS) based on the factors of METT-TC. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Plan fire support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate indirect-fire support for mounted and dismounted tactical movement. (b) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets. (c) Assign direct fire responsibilities. (d) Plan obscuration fires as required. (e) Plan deception fires as necessary. (f) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort. (g) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions and to prevent fratricide. (2) Plan engineer support (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follow.) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Include engineers in the reconnaissance effort if possible. (b) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed. (c) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan. (d) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL is immediately disseminated to all BN/TF units and supporting elements. (e) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the TF zone or axis. (f) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation. (g) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense. (3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the ISR plan. (b) Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations. (c) Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the TF. (d) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites. <p>(4) Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support if support has been provided by higher headquarters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure adequate AD coverage of the BN/TF during movement to, and during actions on, the objective. (b) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the BN/TF is most vulnerable to air attacks such as movements through restrictive terrain. <p>(5) Plan CSS.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Plan recovery operations. (b) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements (such as refueling). (c) Ensure adequate CSS to the reconnaissance effort (Timely resupply and evacuation of forward reconnaissance assets is planned and integrated into the ISR plan.) (d) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets. (e) Support a rapid reorganization by timing the arrival of CSS support forward once the TF reaches its objective (Establish clear priorities of support during reorganization.) (f) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation. <p>p. Conduct risk management.</p> <p>3. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.</p> <p>4. BN/TF prepares for tactical movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performs preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on all vehicles before movement and identifies all non-mission capable (NMC) vehicles. b. Loads all vehicles IAW load plans and CSS plan. c. Briefs movement plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Specifies conditions under which the BN/TF will change movement techniques or formations. (2) Designates bounding and overwatch elements based on factors of METT-TC. (3) Briefs waypoints for checkpoints, boundaries, and so forth. (4) Briefs signals or FM commands used for command and control. d. Verifies communications in all vehicles prior to movement. e. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the BN/TF commander's intent. f. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible. g. Positions elements for the movement. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**GO NO-GO**

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>5. BN/TF executes tactical movement.</p> <p>a. Initiates movement from the assembly area to the line of departure (LD).</p> <p>NOTE: Command group is positioned where it can best control the operation.</p> <p>(1) Conducts passage of lines if required.</p> <p>(2) Moves using the following fundamentals:</p> <p>(a) Moves as fast as the situation allows.</p> <p>(b) Positions weapons platoons, squads, or teams where they can provide responsive fires in the event of enemy contact (for example, mortars).</p> <p>(c) Moves undetected to the designated point specified in the OPORD.</p> <p>(d) Positions advance guards so that they can maneuver to support each other when two companies are used.</p> <p>(e) Positions lead elements of the main body so they can move to positions to support the advance guard.</p> <p>6. BN/TF crosses the LD and moves using the appropriate formation based on the factors of METT-TC.</p> <p>a. Reports crossing to higher headquarters.</p> <p>b. Uses the formation that provides the proper control, security, and speed.</p> <p>c. Selects column formation.</p> <p>(1) Selected when speed is critical, when the BN/TF is moving through restricted terrain on a specific route, and when enemy contact is not likely.</p> <p>(2) Integrates traveling overwatch movement for its lead element and traveling movement for its following companies/company teams.</p> <p>(3) Requires flank security.</p> <p>d. Selects wedge formation.</p> <p>(1) Selected when contact is possible or the enemy situation is unclear.</p> <p>e. Selects "V" formation.</p> <p>(1) Selected when enemy contact is possible.</p> <p>f. Selects echelon formation.</p> <p>(1) Selected to maintain security and observation of one flank and enemy contact is not likely.</p> <p>g. Select line formation.</p> <p>(1) Selected when assaulting a weakly defended objective or crossing danger areas and maximum firepower is needed to the front.</p> <p>h. Selects box formation.</p> <p>(1) Selected if the commander wants to arrange the BN/TF with two companies forward and two companies trailing</p> <p>(2) Selected when speed of movement ease of control is desired or required.</p> <p>i. Adjusts formation during limited visibility to maintain visual contact between elements and to maintain the rate of movement.</p> <p>j. Executes the movement technique based on the factors of METT-TC.</p> <p>(1) Adjusts the movement technique to provide greater security as the probability of enemy contact increases.</p> <p>NOTE: Movement techniques are used when not in contact with the enemy. In effect, once contact is made, movement techniques end and fire and maneuver are used to eliminate the enemy threat.</p> <p>(2) Employs traveling technique as directed (lead unit[s]).</p> <p>(a) Maintains separation.</p> | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>(b) Maintains integrity as much as possible and organizes the formation for ease of deployment during the upcoming mission.</p> <p>(3) Employs traveling overwatch technique as directed (lead unit[s]).</p> <p>(a) Moves in a column or wedge formation.</p> <p>(b) Positions an element as lead and elements as trail.</p> <p>(c) Maintains 360 degree security.</p> <p>(4) Employs bounding overwatch technique as directed (lead unit[s]).</p> <p>(5) Designates the initial bounding and initial overwatch element(s) and specify either the alternate or successive bounding method (commander).</p> <p>7. BN/TF elements maintain formation with correct interval, speed, or lateral dispersion IAW commander's guidance or TSOP.</p> <p>8. BN/TF elements maintain security.</p> <p>a. Maintain security forward, to flanks, and rear.</p> <p>b. Avoid gaps between the main body and security elements.</p> <p>c. Keep all likely high-speed approaches into the main body under observation.</p> <p>d. Locate and warn of approaching enemy forces in time to deploy.</p> <p>9. BN/TF leaders assess the operation.</p> <p>a. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation.</p> <p>b. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.</p> <p>10. BN/TF elements take actions at halts IAW TSOP.</p> <p>11. BN/TF transitions to fire and maneuver if enemy contact is made.</p> <p>12. BN/TF consolidates as necessary.</p> <p>13. BN/TF reorganizes as necessary.</p> <p>14. BN/TF secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.</p> <p>15. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties.</p> <p>16. BN/TF processes captured documents or equipment as required.</p> <p>17. BN/TF continues operations as directed.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|--|--------------------------------------|
| 07-1-2009 | Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|---|-------------------|
| 07-1-2018 | Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2027 | Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2054 | Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-3000 | Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-3009A | Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5000 | Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5027 | Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5054 | Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5198 | Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

- TASK:** Conduct Movement to Contact (07-OPFOR-0035)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is ordered to conduct a movement to contact in order to locate and disrupt the unit. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire, artillery, and close air support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts the movement to contact IAW the operation order or commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintains security throughout the operation and is not surprised by the enemy. The OPFOR locates and fixes the enemy, allowing the remaining OPFOR to deploy and destroy all the enemy in the area. The OPFOR maintains the ability to maneuver and continue the mission.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.
- TASK:** Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.
- TASK:** Execute Actions on Contact (07-OPFOR-0015)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR makes contact with the enemy by receipt of direct fires, indirect fires, or direct observation. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available. The OPFOR has indirect-fire, close air, and engineer support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR executed actions on contact IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR fired and maneuvered to rapidly rout the enemy, seize the initiative, and create advantageous conditions for subsequent operations.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

- TASK:** Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.
- TASK:** Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (M113) ANTIARMOR CO INF BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) TANK COMPANY, TK BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI) HHC INF BN (BFV)
 HHC INF BN (M113/ITV)

TASK: Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-1216)

| | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------|--------------|
| (FM 3-06) | (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) | (FM 101-5) |
| (FM 3-06.11) | (FM 7-20) | (FM 101-5-1) |
| (FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) | (FM 7-85) | (FM 100-14) |
| (FM 3-55 [100-55])(TBP) | (FM 90-7) | |

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters, and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to defend in the forward portion of an urban main battle area (MBA) to defeat the enemy forward and prevent penetration of the MBA. Higher headquarters has positioned a security force forward of the BN/TF to delay the enemy and give early warning of the enemy's approach. The security force withdraws and conducts battle handover to the BN/TF. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and the rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF defends a built-up area IAW TSOP, the appropriate field manual, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF assists the rearward passage of lines for security forces. The BN/TF occupies and prepares defensive positions. The BN/TF engages and defeats the enemy forward, and prevents penetration of the MBA. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as the result of fratricide.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: **GO** **NO-GO**

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>NOTE: The BN/TF can conduct the full range of defensive operations within a single built-up area (BUA) or in an area of operations (AO) that contains several small towns or villages. However, there are special considerations that the commander and staff must consider when defending in a BUA.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Express the commander's visualization of anticipated enemy actions integrated with the staff's intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). b. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. c. Conduct a map reconnaissance. d. Conduct IPB. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets. (2) Produce a modified combined obstacle overlay (MCOO). (3) Conduct a detailed analysis of the enemy and civilian population. Include the following as a minimum: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Determine size and capability of enemy within the BUA. (b) Determine known and potential tactics of enemy forces operating outside and within the BUA. (c) Determine nature and makeup of local civil population. (4) Conduct a detailed terrain analysis including the following as a minimum: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Analyze current intelligence and aerial photographs. (b) Analyze civilian maps and diagrams. (c) Analyze natural defensive characteristics of the terrain considering three-dimensional environment of urban areas: airspace, surface, and subsurface. (d) Analyze subway systems, railways, and mass transit routes. (e) Analyze underground water, sewer, and utility systems. (f) Analyze electrical power stations and emergency services. (g) Analyze fuel supply and storage facilities. (h) Analyze mass communications facilities. (i) Analyze areas and facilities restricted by current ROE. (j) Determine mobility restrictions for both mounted and dismounted operations. (k) Coordinate with the brigade to obtain information update on civil population. e. Develop the situation template (SITEMP). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include likely enemy engagement areas (EAs). (2) Include location and orientation of enemy forces. (3) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserve. (4) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems. (5) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets. (6) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets. (7) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINES). (8) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems. (9) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs). f. Develop the ISR plan, and employ ISR assets to conduct reconnaissance throughout the MDMP process. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU, and to support the planning process. (2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR), and accomplishes his intent. (3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (4) Seek to determine the enemy's strength and disposition. (5) Identify what the enemy will do and what information is needed to confirm the enemy's action (intelligence officer [S2]). (6) Determine composition, disposition, and strength of enemy reserve force. (7) Determine enemy vulnerabilities. g. Distribute all intelligence products to the entire staff and subordinate units to support parallel planning. h. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Determine how to array forces based on higher commander's guidance and factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). (2) Determine the task organization and command and control (C2) arrangement of subordinate headquarters. i. Develop a defensive scheme of maneuver. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Define how the commander intends to mass the effects of direct and indirect fires with obstacles and use of terrain to shape the battlefield and defeat or destroy the enemy. (2) Develop a plan that focuses on a defeat mechanism. (3) Analyze forces and available assets with particular attention to obstacle assets and fire support assets. (4) Define the engineer and fire support allocation in terms of capability. (5) Determine what effect forces, fires, and obstacles must achieve on enemy formations by avenue of approach and how these effects will support the defeat mechanism. (6) Define the task(s) and purpose for subordinate units. (7) Establish priorities for combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS). (8) Develop obstacle and fire support plans concurrently with the defensive force array, again defining a task and purpose for each obstacle and target in keeping with the commander's stated essential fire-support tasks (EFSTs) and intended obstacle effects. (9) Identify where and when the commander will accept risk. (10) Identify critical events and, if required, phases of the operation. (11) Designate the main effort with associated task(s) and purpose(s), by phase. (12) Designate supporting efforts with associated task(s) and purpose(s), defining how they support the main effort. (13) Designate reserve planning priorities if a reserve has been designated. (14) Define ISR and unit security operations. (15) Outline the movement and positioning of forces. (16) Describe the concept of fires. (17) Integrate obstacle effects with maneuver and fires. (18) Identify the maneuver options that may develop during execution. (19) Identify means and mechanisms for exploiting defensive success. j. Coordinate the battle handover and a rearward passage of lines by the security force. k. Develop a communications plan giving special consideration to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Address communications restrictions in urban terrain. (2) Address antenna positioning. (3) Address fire direction and air defense nets. (4) Address supplementary signals. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**GO NO-GO**

| | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>I. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating Systems (BOS).</p> <p>(1) Plan fire support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Designate priority of fires. (b) Plan targets along enemy reconnaissance avenues of approach. (c) Plan to engage approaching enemy formations at maximum range with indirect fires and close air support (CAS) if available. (d) Develop clear triggers to adjust fire support coordinating measures (FSCMs) and priority of fires. (e) Coordinate the movement of indirect-fire assets to support the EFSTs. (f) Ensure movement of indirect-fire assets is coordinated with the scheme of maneuver. (g) Develop and rehearse the observation plan to ensure all targets are adequately observed. (h) Ensure integration of fires in support of critical obstacle effects. (i) Plan fires to support actions in the rear as required. (j) Plan final protective fires (FPF). <p>(2) Plan engineer support (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follows.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Plan the transition to countermobility and survivability efforts in detail. (b) Plan to site situational obstacles early. (c) Plan multiple locations for situational obstacles to support depth and flexibility. (d) Plan and coordinate adequate security for obstacle emplacement. (e) Integrate triggers for obstacles in the decision support template (DST). (f) Coordinate obstacle effort along unit and adjacent unit boundaries. (g) Plan the countermobility effort to shape the enemy's maneuver into positions of vulnerability. (h) Plan adequate mobility support for the reserve and repositioning of MBA forces. (i) Develop obstacle plans that are synchronized with maneuver and fires and maximize all resources. <p>(3) Plan or coordinate air defense artillery (ADA) support if available.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Plan to position ADA assets and radar along air avenues of approach to provide early detection and engagement of enemy aircraft. (b) Plan for radar masking and degraded communications. (c) Plan all-around air defense protection to the unit with mutual supporting and over lapping fires (Weight fires toward likely air avenues of approach.) (d) Plan primary, alternate, and supplementary firing positions to support defensive positions in depth, delays, and counterattacks. (e) Establish priorities of air defense protection based on the criticality, vulnerability, and recuperability of units and the enemy. <p>(4) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the ISR plan. (b) Position NBC R&S assets (if available) forward and at likely locations for enemy employment of chemical agents (Support to counterattacking forces is especially important.) | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (c) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities. (d) Establish decontamination priorities of support and effort. (e) Integrate the employment of smoke to support the defense. (f) Ensure all subordinate elements clearly understand changes in the priority of support, task organization, and positioning of NBC assets. <p>(5) Plan CSS.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Address casualty evacuation, equipment recovery, and resupply for security forces. (b) Plan the resupply of critical classes of supply for security forces to support a quick transition from their security mission to follow-on missions. (c) Plan pre-positioned stocks of critical supplies. (d) Determine or plan primary and alternate main supply routes (MSRs) to support the full depth of the defense. (e) Coordinate MSRs to avoid interfering with maneuver or obstacle plans. (f) Stockpile limited amounts of class III and class V supplies in centrally located battle positions (BPs) or locations. (g) Institute a C2 plan for CSS vehicles in the unit area. (h) Plan to send forward push packages of critically needed supplies on a scheduled basis. (i) Plan resupply during limited visibility to reduce the chances of enemy interference. (j) Plan to dispatch maintenance assets forward to reduce the need to evacuate equipment. (k) Plan for the use of aviation assets (if available) to resupply critical supplies. (l) Plan for the increased demand on decontaminants and mission oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear. (m) Plan for high expenditure of class V and increased demand of class IV (barrier materials). (n) Plan casualty evacuation. (o) Coordinate with higher headquarters' civil affairs (CA) teams concerning refugee control and CSS requirements. <p>m. Conduct risk management.</p> <p>3. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.</p> <p>4. BN/TF prepares for the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. b. Conducts extensive ISR operations. c. Conducts precombat checks and inspections. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Inspects and monitors the progress of defensive preparations to ensure they met the commander's timeline. (2) Seeks to identify shortfalls early enough to shift resources. (3) Pays special attention to the array of forces, fires, and obstacles along flanks, seams between subordinate elements, or other areas that enemy will likely try to penetrate. (4) Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**GO NO-GO**

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (5) Use the preparation time prior to the enemy's attack to build the strongest defense possible. (6) Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible. (7) Positions forces IAW the plan. <p>5. BN/TF occupies and improves defensive positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Initiates occupation of defensive positions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Issues a FRAGO and graphics to subordinate elements. At a minimum, the FRAGO includes the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Includes changes in friendly and enemy situations. (b) Includes changes to unit tasks and purpose and general changes to the scheme of maneuver that facilitate occupation of the defensive position. (2) Enters defensive positions from the flank or rear. (3) Ensures that subordinate element sectors of fire and observation overlap and connect with adjacent units. (4) Designates defensive control measures and disseminates the information to subordinate commanders. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Identifies tentative locations for each company's primary defensive position. (b) Identifies target reference points (TRPs), engagement areas (EAs) and direct fire responsibilities for primary positions. (c) Identifies tentative locations for the subordinate unit's supplementary defensive position. (d) Identifies TRPs, EAs, and direct fire responsibilities for supplementary defensive position. (5) Adjusts positions as necessary to cover TRPs, EAs, or sectors of fire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Verifies direct fire plans and proofs positions. (b) Adjusts primary positions as required. (c) Adjusts alternate and supplementary positions as required. (d) Selects covered and concealed displacement routes between primary, alternate, and supplementary positions as necessary. (6) Completes occupation of the defensive positions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Reports progress of the fight to higher headquarters. (b) Implements changes based on guidance from higher headquarters. (c) Refines direct fire plan including trigger lines, engagement criteria, fire patterns, breakpoints, and disengagement criteria as time permits. (d) Directs the unit to continue improvement of the defensive position with additional steps of a deliberate occupation as time permits. (7) Maintains security by employing scout platoon, observation posts (OPs), and so forth. (8) Provides security for elements working forward in sector such as engineers emplacing obstacles. (9) Secures obstacles. (10) Observes templated enemy landing zones (LZs). (11) Clears possible enemy OP locations. b. Continues to prepare or upgrade defensive <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Marks vehicle positions. (2) Marks fire control measures in the engagement area. (3) Digs survivability positions within the unit's capability. (4) Position ammunition caches. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (5) Emplaces protective obstacles. (6) Reports progress to higher headquarters. c. Conducts ISR in front of defensive positions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Designates reconnaissance group. (2) Designates overwatch elements for the reconnaissance group. (3) Moves to a vantage point to view defensive position from enemy's perspective if possible. (4) Uses covered and concealed routes. (5) Moves through engagement area and identifies all likely enemy avenues of approach and key and defensive terrain. (6) Evaluates any lateral routes. (7) Determines how the enemy will attack. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Considers how the enemy will employ reconnaissance assets. (b) Considers where and when the enemy will change formations or establish support by fire positions. (c) Considers where and when the enemy will conduct a breach or assault. (d) Considers where and when the enemy will commit follow on forces. (e) Considers effects of the enemy's combat multipliers. (f) Considers enemy's rate of movement (8) Updates fire plans and sector sketches and annotates graphic control measures. (9) Marks TRPs that match the enemy's scheme of maneuver through the depth of the sector. (10) Identifies terrain that corresponds to the unit's control measures. (11) Identifies alternate, supplementary, or successive defensive positions. (12) Identifies covered and concealed routes between alternate, supplementary, or successive defensive positions. (13) Identifies possible OP locations for indirect fire observation. d. Reports occupation of defensive positions to higher headquarters. e. Submits the completed fire plan to higher headquarters. 6. BN/TF integrates obstacles into the defense. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies obstacles assigned to the unit by higher headquarters if any. b. Directs obstacle emplacement. c. Provides security during emplacement. d. Identifies locations for massing direct and indirect fires. e. Identifies and marks the necessary control measures on the ground. f. Identifies tentative locations of key weapon systems to provide obstacle coverage. g. Sites obstacle group(s). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ensures that obstacles are covered by direct and indirect fires. (2) Identifies dead space. (3) Marks general limits and orientation of obstacle group(s). (4) Sites and reports obstacles. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Reports completion of obstacle emplacement, integration, and turnover or transfer. (b) Reports grid locations of the obstacle group and fire control measures. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>7. BN/TF elements continue to improve defensive positions and conducts defensive priorities of work as time allows.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Improve primary positions. b. Improve camouflage. c. Maintain security. d. Conduct rehearsals based on time available. e. Clear fields of fire. f. Establish thermal TRPs IAW TSOP. g. Establish wire communications. h. Emplace other early warning systems. i. Emplace chemical alarms. j. Improve alternate, supplementary, or successive defensive positions. <p>8. BN/TF executes the defense.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Withdraws OPs and unit security elements. b. Assists the rearward passage of lines for higher headquarters' security forces. c. Engages the enemy on order or when engagement criteria are met. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Employs and focuses direct fires, repositioning to alternate positions as necessary to destroy enemy forces and maintain survivability (subordinate elements). (2) Shifts, refocuses, and redistribute direct fires to defeat identified enemy elements (unit commander and company commanders). (3) Employs indirect fires IAW defensive fire plan to achieve desired effects on the enemy force (unit commander, fire support officer [FSO], or company commanders). (4) Directs the lifting and shifting of indirect fires (unit commander, FSO, or company commanders). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Shifts indirect fires to suppress or destroy enemy elements. (b) Lifts indirect fires to facilitate movement of friendly elements or when desired target effects on the enemy have been achieved. (5) Issues additional FRAGOs to direct or retask subordinate elements as required (unit commander). (6) Issues FRAGO to displace when enemy advances in sufficient force to meet the specified displacement criteria. (7) Moves to alternate, supplementary, or successive defensive positions as required to maintain flexibility and survivability (subordinate units). (8) Sends spot reports (SPOTREPs), SITREPs, and makes recommendations to higher headquarters (unit commander). d. Consolidates and reorganizes to continue the defense or transitions to the attack. e. Complies with ROE and ROI. <p>9. BN/TF leaders assess the operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation. b. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent. <p>*10. BN/TF commander commits reserves for counterattack IAW the higher commander's intent.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Recognizes enemy deception efforts aimed at causing the premature or indecisive commitment of the reserve. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Uses decision points and named areas of interest (NAIs) developed during construction of the decision support template to trigger execution of a counterattack. c. Defeats the targeted enemy force before being attacked by subsequent enemy forces. d. Seeks to avoid the enemy's strength (The most effective attacks are against exposed enemy flanks or rear). e. Takes advantage of the protection and concealment offered by the terrain or limited visibility. f. Attacks with long-range direct fires from concealed positions synchronized with all available fire support. g. Launches counterattacks around other committed units rather than through them when feasible. h. Provides for the removal of the reserve or the integration of the reserve into the defense after the counterattack. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 11. BN/TF defeats the enemy forward and prevents his penetration of the MBA. 12. BN/TF secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required. 13. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties. 14. BN/TF processes captured documents or equipment as required. 15. BN/TF continues operations as directed. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5018 | Conduct Battle Tracking (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP |
| 07-1-5027 | Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5171 | Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|---|--------------------------------------|
| 07-1-6009 | Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-6072 | Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6081 | Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Reconnaissance (07-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to obtain tactical information about the enemy's location, disposition, intent, and activities. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel as well as engineer support are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducted the reconnaissance mission by penetrating the enemy's outposts with mounted or dismounted patrols, and then obtaining and reporting required information IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintained focus; continuity; aggressiveness; timeliness; camouflage, concealment, and deception; accuracy; and reliability. The OPFOR reconnaissance elements completed the reconnaissance mission undetected.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy unit commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

- TASK:** Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) ANTIARMOR CO INF BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
 HHC INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
 TANK COMPANY, TK BN

TASK: Employ a Reserve Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-1225)

(FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) (FM 7-85) (FM 101-5)
 (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) (FM 21-60) (FM 101-5-1)
 (FM 7-20)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to defend. The order requires the unit commander to designate a reserve force. The order includes all applicable overlays or graphics. The unit has a field artillery battery, engineer assets based on doctrine, and, an air defense platoon in direct support (DS). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF employs a reserve force IAW TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF commander designates the reserve force, incorporates the force into the defensive plan, designates on-call missions, and commits the reserve at the decisive place and time. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as a result of friendly fire.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: **GO NO-GO**

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designate the reserve. b. Develop criteria for the commitment of the reserve. c. Address actions on chance contact with the enemy. d. Integrate and synchronize battlefield operating systems (BOS). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Plan fire support for anticipated reserve missions. (2) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy. e. Plan engineer support (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follows.) <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Consider mobility requirements for the reserve. (2) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort or support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (3) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required. f. Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit. (2) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.) (3) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites. g. Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support if support has been provided by higher headquarters. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ensure adequate AD of the reserve during movement to and actions on the objective. (2) Shift assets as required by phase of the operation. h. Plan combat service support (CSS). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements. (2) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as assaults by forward positioning of support assets. (3) Include reserves in the casualty evacuation plan. i. Conduct risk management. j. Prepare for the reserve operation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. (2) Provide the reserve planning priority. (3) Conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept. (4) Incorporate reserve force in rehearsal. (5) Conduct precombat checks. (6) Supervise subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent. 3. BN/TF commander or designated staff positions reserve force. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Position to weight the main effort. b. Position to allow the unit commander to react to unanticipated events. 4. BN/TF commander or designated staff coordinates and synchronizes actions of the reserve force and other unit elements. 5. BN/TF commander uses FRAGOs to direct the actions of the reserve force. 6. BN/TF commander commits the reserve at the decisive place and time. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Exploits success. b. Reinforces or maintains the momentum. c. Deals with enemy counterattacks. d. Provides security. e. Preserves the commander's flexibility. f. Reinforces fires. g. Adds depth. h. Blocks penetrations. i. Restores positions. j. Counterattack to destroy enemy forces and seize the initiative. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>NOTE: When the reserve conducts the counterattack, it normally becomes the main effort and is given priority of fires.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 7. BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI. 8. BN/TF consolidates as necessary. 9. BN/TF reorganizes as necessary. 10. BN/TF secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required. 11. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties. 12. BN/TF processes captured documents or equipment as required. 13. BN/TF continues operations as directed. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-1207 | Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2009 | Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2018 | Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2027 | Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2054 | Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-3000 | Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--------------------------------------|
| 07-1-5000 | Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-5036 | Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5054 | Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5081 | Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Defend (07-OPFOR-0019)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting defensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is occupying key terrain and is in prepared fighting positions. All assigned equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire, close air, and engineer support are available to the OPFOR.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the defense IAW the operation order or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR defeats, repels, disrupts, or destroys the attacking enemy and retains key terrain.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

| | | |
|------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| ELEMENTS: | HHC INF BN (BFV) | HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) |
| | HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) | RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) |
| | ANTIARMOR CO INF BN | RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) |
| | TANK COMPANY, TK BN | RIFLE CO INF BN (M113) |

TASK: Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-1234)

| | | |
|-------------------------|-------------|--------------|
| (FM 3-06.11) | (FM 5-71-2) | (FM 101-5) |
| (FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) | (FM 7-20) | (FM 101-5-1) |
| (FM 3-55 [100-55])(TBP) | (FM 7-85) | (FM 101-5-2) |
| (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) | (FM 34-130) | |

| | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|----------|
| ITERATION: | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | (Circle) |
| COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: | | | | | P | U | (Circle) |

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) has conducted entry operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to establish a base of operation within its assigned area of operations (AO). The order includes environmental, construction, and restoration constraints. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF establishes a base camp IAW the TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF organizes itself into contiguous or noncontiguous subunit sectors and base(s) with a defined, defensible perimeter. The BN/TF clears or marks minefields or booby traps before occupation. The BN/TF establishes and maintains local security on a 24-hour basis. The BN/TF constructs or restores base camp installations and facilities within environmental, fiscal, and legal constraints. The BN/TF determines security or force protection assets and needs. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|-----------|--------------|
| <p>NOTE: The BN/TF can use several techniques to establish a base area: a base cluster; a single unit base with a defined, defensible perimeter; or several smaller bases, each with a defined, defensible perimeter.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive the order and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Determines availability of installations, facilities, terrain sites, and civilian labor force if information is not provided by higher headquarters (This task may be completed by the civil affairs team.) c. Conduct a map reconnaissance and select base camp site if not assigned by higher. d. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets. (3) Research intelligence database(s). (4) Determine nature, makeup, and urban concentrations of local civil or military population. (5) Determine natural defensive characteristics of terrain. (6) Determine movement corridors throughout area of operations (AO) for both mounted and dismounted operations. (7) Determine conditions of existing roads, railways, pipelines, and waterways for use as military lines of communication (LOCs) and local civil or military movement. (8) Determine potential base camp installations or facilities or suitable terrain. (9) Determine proximity of threat to potential civil or military facilities and installations. (10) Conduct analysis of security vulnerabilities. (11) Address human intelligence (HUMINT). (12) Define the battlefield environment. (13) Describe battlefield effects. (14) Evaluate the enemy (Enemy refers to any belligerent force, faction, individual, or group that can impact negatively on unit operations.) (15) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs). e. Develop the situation template (SITEMP). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces. (2) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems if applicable. (3) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets if applicable. (4) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets if applicable. (5) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINES) if applicable. (6) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems. (7) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs) if applicable. f. Develop the ISR plan, and employ ISR assets to conduct reconnaissance throughout the MDMP process. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU, and to support the planning process. (2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR), and accomplishes his intent. (3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit. g. Address security of main supply routes (MSRs). h. Identify other forces or organizations operating in area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Address coordination with other organizations. (2) Identify possible civil affairs (CA) or civil military operations (CMO) activities. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**GO NO-GO**

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. Develop a communications plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Determine proximity to lines of communications (LOCs). (2) Address communication architecture. (3) Designate location of command post (CP). j. Determine distances from urban areas. k. Determine location of possible landing zones and pickup zones. l. Designate priorities for protection of civil or military personnel, facilities, installations, and key terrain. m. Determine security or force protection assets and needs. n. Determine availability of host nation (HN) support. o. Plan fire support based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT TC). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Plan fires to suppress, neutralize, and destroy critical enemy forces that affect the unit's mission. (2) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets. (3) Plan obscuration fires as required. (4) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary. (5) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort. (6) Plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves. (7) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets to prevent fratricide. p. Plan engineer support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed. (2) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan. (3) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate BN/TF-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units. (4) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis. (5) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation. (6) Plan construction of CPs, bunkers, and observation posts (OPs). (7) Plan construction of force-protection structures such as earth revetments, wire obstacles, and defensive positions. (8) Plan the clearing or marking of minefields (including minefield-fence maintenance). (9) Plan the clearing of booby traps. (10) Plan to provide backup support for identifying, marking, removing, or destroying explosive ordnance. q. Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the ISR plan. (2) Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations. (3) Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (4) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions such as breaching or assaults (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.) (5) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites. r. Plan air defense (AD) support (if support has been provided by higher headquarters). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ensure adequate AD coverage of the BN/TF during movement to, and during actions on, the objective. (2) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during breaching operations or movements through restrictive terrain. (3) Plan coverage for base camp defense. s. Develop a combat service support (CSS) plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Determine existing facilities or services. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Identify storage bunkers. (b) Identify maintenance and refueling areas. (c) Identify mess areas, showers, and latrines. (d) Identify aid stations. (e) Identify or verify contracted services. (2) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements. (3) Ensure adequate CSS to the reconnaissance effort (Timely resupply and evacuation of forward reconnaissance assets is planned and integrated into the ISR plan.) (4) Coordinate with higher headquarters' logistics officer (S4), and requests assistance in planning contract requirements for logistics and base camp development. (5) Coordinate with higher headquarters' S4 for construction of additional facilities and installations. (6) Coordinate procurement and contracting within the unit. (7) Develop a health and morale, welfare, and recreation (MWR) plan. (8) Determine environmental concerns, constraints, waste disposal, and so forth. (9) Develop an administrative support plan for non-United States (US) civilian augmentees. (10) Integrate refueling and resupply operations with the scheme of maneuver. (11) Establish drop points for movement of key CSS assets. t. Plan on-order control measures, logistics release points (LRPs), unit maintenance collection points (UMCPs), and ambulance exchange points (if applicable). u. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Designate a quartering or advance party as required. (2) Assign subunit sectors. v. Plan for integrating other forces operating in the AO. w. Plan for integration of fixed or rotary wing assets if available. x. Identify and request additional assets required from higher headquarters. y. Develop site recommendations and control measures (additional ground or aerial reconnaissance may be required). | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**GO NO-GO**

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> z. Obtain information concerning availability of civil and military sites and terrain. aa. Conduct risk management. 3. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept. 4. BN/TF prepares for mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Dispatches quartering party or advance party. b. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. c. Conducts extensive ISR operations. d. Conducts precombat checks if required. e. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent. f. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible. g. Coordinates with higher headquarters' operations officer (S3) and deconflicts proposed terrain and site assignments. h. Obtains clearance for use of site if required. 5. Unit executes the plan (occupies base camp). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Moves IAW the controlling headquarters' order. NOTE: The BN/TF may initially move to an assembly area in the AO or it may begin to occupy the base camp directly from the march. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Establishes local security. c. Clears or marks minefields or booby traps before occupation. d. Establishes communications across the AO. e. Refuels vehicles and recovers any inoperable equipment. f. Establishes logistical facilities and medical aid stations. g. Continues ISR efforts in the area. h. Adjusts fire support plan and repositions fire support assets as necessary. i. Constructs protective shelters for key facilities. j. Emplaces vehicle barriers. k. Clears standoff zones around facilities. l. Erects pre-detonation screens to protect units and installations. m. Constructs or coordinates for construction of secure Class IV and V supply points and CPs. n. Rebuilds or coordinates for rebuilding LOCs if required. o. Repairs and clears airfields and helicopter landing zones for use in air evacuation and other operations if required. 6. Commander and staff provide command and control (C2). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Position headquarters to provide constant monitoring of subordinate units. b. Updates communications support plan. c. Refine area security plan. d. Ensure base development timelines are met. e. Plan contingencies and rehearse employment of quick reaction force (QRF). f. Identify shortfalls. g. Cross-level assets. 7. BN/TF coordinates construction of temporary facilities and structures for displaced persons if required. 8. BN/TF leaders assess the operation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| b. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent. 9. BN/TF commander vigorously engages in making personal contacts with supported groups, partners in the operation, and community representatives. 10. BN/TF force complies with peace agreement guidelines, higher headquarters directives, and environmental constraints. 11. BN/TF and subordinate elements comply with ROE and ROI. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-1126 | Conduct a Tactical Road March (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-1207 | Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2009 | Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2018 | Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2027 | Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2054 | Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-3000 | Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5000 | Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5027 | Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|--|--|
| 07-1-5054 | Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5144 | Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5180 | Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5198 | Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Reconnaissance (07-OPFOR-0010)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to obtain tactical information about the enemy's location, disposition, intent, and activities. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel as well as engineer support are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducted the reconnaissance mission by penetrating the enemy's outposts with mounted or dismounted patrols, and then obtaining and reporting required information IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintained focus; continuity; aggressiveness; timeliness; camouflage, concealment, and deception; accuracy; and reliability. The OPFOR reconnaissance elements completed the reconnaissance mission undetected.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy unit commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (07-OPFOR-0016)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. It has dispatched small teams into the enemy rear area to disrupt combat service support (CSS) operations. All necessary personnel and equipment are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR locates the enemy rear support bases and command and control facilities. It destroys supplies and equipment, delays and disrupts CSS operations, or inflicts casualties through probes IAW the operation order and the commander's guidance.

- TASK:** Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.
- TASK:** Conduct Air Attack (07-OPFOR-0029)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers have been identified and are susceptible to air attack. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR's fixed-wing combat aircraft and attack helicopters are available to provide aerial fire support to ground maneuver forces.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR executes the air attack using fixed- and rotor-winged aircraft IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers are destroyed, delayed, or forced to retreat.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.
- TASK:** Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

- TASK:** Conduct a Raid (07-OPFOR-0013)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. It is occupying an objective rally point (ORP) with orders to raid enemy elements. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR executed the raid IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR used surprise, firepower, and maneuver to destroy enemy positions, capture prisoners, capture equipment, or free prisoners friendly to the OPFOR. It avoided decisive engagement and withdrew all personnel from the objectives within the specified time. The OPFOR obtained all priority intelligence requirements (PIR).
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI)
RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
HHC, TANK BN (XXI) TANK COMPANY, TK BN

TASK: Fight a Meeting Engagement (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-1243)

(FM 3-90.2 [71-2])

(FM 7-20)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters. A lack of situational understanding (SU) has caused the advance guard of the BN/TF to unexpectedly encounter an enemy force. Time is available for the BN/TF commander to decide on a course of action (COA) and for the main body to fully deploy in support of the COA. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available.
The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF fights the meeting engagement IAW the TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF commander and staff evaluate the situation and decide on a course of action (COA). The BN/TF deploys, redeploys, or redirects reconnaissance assets to gain information. The BN/TF executes the selected COA IAW the higher commander's intent. The BN/TF maneuvers quickly to overcome the enemy before he can react. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as the result of fratricide.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|-----------|--------------|
| 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. BN/TF advance guard performs actions on contact and develops the situation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Deploys, reports, and determines the enemy's dispositions and intentions. b. Avoids a decisive engagement IAW commander's intent. c. Prevents a defending enemy from improving forward defenses. | | |
| 3. BN/TF commander reports contact to the higher headquarters. | | |
| 4. BN/TF commander or designated representative requests indirect fire and close air support (CAS) from the higher headquarters. | | |
| 5. BN/TF commander decides on a COA. | | |
| NOTE: BN/TF operations officer (S3) may forward time-critical details of the FRAGO to higher headquarters. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Evaluates the situation (BN/TF commander and designated staff). b. Deploys, redeploys, or redirects reconnaissance assets to gain information. c. Considers a bypass. d. Considers a hasty ambush. e. Considers a force-orientated attack. f. Considers an attack by fire (ABF). g. Considers a hasty defense. h. Issues a FRAGO and graphics for the selected COA to subordinate elements. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Includes changes in friendly and enemy situations. (2) Includes changes to unit tasks and purpose and general changes to the scheme of maneuver. i. Considers a retrograde. <p>6. BN/TF bypasses the enemy using one or both of the following bypasses techniques.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Avoids the enemy and bypasses. b. Fixes the enemy by fire and bypasses. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Fixes the enemy with part of the maneuver elements and bypasses with the balance of the force using one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Directs the fixing element to fix and maintain contact with the enemy until relieved by follow-and-support forces. (b) Directs the fixing element to block the enemy by employing defensive, delaying, limited offensive action, and all available fire support until ordered to rejoin the bypassing force. (2) Reports status to higher headquarters. <p>7. BN/TF executes a hasty ambush.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directs companies or subordinate elements to occupy hasty firing positions. b. Maneuvers quickly to overcome the enemy before he can react. c. Assigns companies or subordinate elements sectors of fire into an engagement area. d. Masses fire upon enemy targets once the majority of the enemy formation is in the engagement area IAW the commander's intent. e. Reports status to higher headquarters. <p>8. BN/TF executes a force-orientated attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Deploys and engages the enemy to develop the situation quickly (element in contact). Maneuvers quickly to overcome the enemy before he can react. b. Suppresses known and suspected positions (designated overwatch element). c. Pushes forward and observes likely enemy counterattack routes (scouts; BN/TF commander maintains constant communication with scouts.) d. Requests indirect fires to block enemy routes of reinforcement and withdrawal or to provide smoke to screen or deceive (fire support officer [FSO]). e. Directs engineers (if available) to be prepared to conduct a breach of hasty protective and delaying obstacles (BN/TF commander or designated staff). f. Directs employment of situational obstacles to protect the Unit's flanks and to help isolate enemy forces (BN/TF commander or designated staff). g. Attacks a stationary force and destroys the enemy in position. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> h. Attacks a moving force and destroys the enemy in a designated engagement area. i. Attacks a withdrawing force and destroys the enemy by pursuit by fire, movement, or both. j. Reports status to higher headquarters. <p>9. BN/TF executes an attack by fire (ABF).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selects ABF positions that allow the unit to effectively engage the enemy and provide adequate cover and concealment (BN/TF commander and designated staff). b. Directs companies or subordinate elements to occupy designated ABF positions (BN/TF commander). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Uses covered and concealed routes if available to prevent the enemy force from effectively engaging the unit (CO/TM). (2) Secures the ABF position prior to occupation if time permits (CO/TM). c. Determines location of enemy elements using reconnaissance, and surveillance (R&S) assets and updated common operational picture (COP; BN/TF commander and designated staff). d. Places a continuous and consistent rate of fire on the enemy positions (CO/TM). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Calls for and adjusts indirect fires to suppress, destroy, or obscure the enemy force (BN/TF commander or FSO). (2) Directs the shifting, refocusing, and redistribution of fires as necessary to destroy enemy forces (BN/TF commander or designated staff). (3) Directs the lifting of fires to facilitate the movement of friendly elements or when desired target effects on the enemy have been achieved (BN/TF commander or designated staff). e. Alternates firing positions as necessary (Unit commander, designated staff, or subordinate commander). f. Reports status to higher headquarters. <p>10. BN/TF executes a defense.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selects defensive positions that allow the BN/TF to effectively engage the enemy and provide adequate cover and concealment (BN/TF commander and designated staff). b. Designates and distributes defensive control measures and disseminates the information to subordinate commanders. c. Designates target reference points (TRPs), engagement areas, and direct fire responsibilities. d. Occupies defensive positions (companies or subordinate elements). e. Engages the enemy on order or when engagement criteria are met. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Employs and focus direct fires, repositioning to alternate positions as necessary to destroy enemy forces and maintain survivability (subordinate leaders). (2) Directs the shifting, refocusing, and redistribution of direct fires to defeat identified enemy elements (Unit commander and company commanders). (3) Employs indirect fires IAW defensive fire plan or OPORD or FRAGO to achieve desired effects on the enemy force (Unit commander, FSE, or company commanders). (4) Directs the lifting and shifting of indirect fires (BN/TF commander, FSE, or company commanders). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Shifts indirect fires to suppress or destroy enemy elements. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (b) Lifts indirect fires to facilitate movement of friendly elements or when desired target effects on the enemy have been achieved. (5) Unit commander issues additional FRAGOs to direct or retask subordinate elements as required. (6) Issues FRAGO to displace when enemy advances in sufficient force to meet the displacement criteria specified. (7) Reports status to higher headquarters. f. Defeats the enemy or conducts battle handover with follow-on forces IAW the higher headquarters commander's intent. <p>11. BN/TF executes a retrograde (The BN/TF commander directs a retrograde when the BN/TF lacks the combat power to attack or defend, improve a tactical situation, or prevent a worse one from developing.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establishes initial defensive positions (lead elements). b. Repositions to the rear (nonessential combat support [CS] and combat service support [CSS]). c. Employs indirect fires, obstacles, and smoke to assist forward elements with disengagement and displacement. d. Avoids becoming decisively engaged. e. Disengages and displaces to the rear (forward elements). f. Reports status to higher headquarters. <p>12. BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.</p> <p>13. BN/TF consolidates as necessary.</p> <p>14. BN/TF reorganizes as necessary.</p> <p>15. BN/TF secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required.</p> <p>16. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties.</p> <p>17. BN/TF processes captured documents or equipment as required.</p> <p>18. BN/TF continues operations as directed.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-1009 | Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|---|--|
| 07-1-1027 | Conduct a Defense (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-1072 | Conduct a Movement to Contact (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1135A | Conduct a Terrain Oriented Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1162 | Conduct an Attack Against a Moving Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1171 | Conduct an Attack Against a Stationary Force (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1207 | Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-3000 | Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5036 | Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5081 | Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Movement to Contact (07-OPFOR-0035)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is ordered to conduct a movement to contact in order to locate and disrupt the unit. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR has indirect fire, artillery, and close air support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the movement to contact IAW the operation order or commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintains security throughout the operation and is not surprised by the enemy. The OPFOR locates and fixes the enemy, allowing the remaining OPFOR to deploy and destroy all the enemy in the area. The OPFOR maintains the ability to maneuver and continue the mission.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

- TASK:** Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.
- TASK:** Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: ANTIARMOR CO INF BN RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
 HHC INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
 TANK COMPANY, TK BN TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC INF BN (M113/ITV)

TASK: Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-1252)

(FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) (FM 7-85)
 (FM 3-34.2) (FM 5-71-2) (FM 20-32)
 (FM 3-55 [100-55])(TBP) (FM 7-20) (FM 21-60)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters, and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to immediately breach an obstacle that cannot be bypassed. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the breach IAW tactical TSOP, the appropriate field manual, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF incorporates the breach tenets (intelligence, breach organization, breach fundamentals, mass, and synchronization) throughout its planning and execution. The BN/TF breaches the obstacles using the fundamentals of suppress, obscure, secure, reduce, and assault (SOSRA). The BN/TF provides security (near and far side), reduces the obstacle, marks lanes, and passes through the obstacle. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI. No casualties occur.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|-----------|--------------|
| 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. b. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets. (2) Define the battlefield environment. (3) Describe battlefield effects. (4) Evaluate the enemy. (5) Develop the situation template (SITEMP). (a) Include likely enemy engagement areas (EAs). (b) Include location and orientation of enemy forces. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**GO NO-GO**

| | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (c) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserve (d) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems. (e) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets. (f) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets. (g) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINES). (h) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems. (i) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs). c. Employ intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) of the obstacle system. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Determine the width, depth, and composition of the obstacle system. (2) Locate the following during reconnaissance of the obstacle: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Overwatch or support-by-fire (SBF) positions to support the breach. (b) All vehicle positions, antiarmor weapons, and enemy positions covering the obstacles. (c) All reinforcing and existing obstacles. (d) Covered and concealed routes to overwatch or SBF positions. (e) Covered and concealed routes to the initial breach points. (f) Tentative initial breach points. (3) Prevent reconnaissance from disclosing the time, location, or plan for the breach by using unmanned aerial vehicle (UAV) and other overhead platforms if available. (4) Provide early warning of changes in the obstacle system through continuous surveillance of the obstacle system and supporting positions. d. Use the detailed reverse planning process, SITEMP, and terrain products produced during mission analysis to determine the size and composition of support, breach, and assault elements. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Designate a support element. (2) Designate a breach element. (3) Designate an assault element. e. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating Systems (BOS). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Plan fire support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Plan direct and indirect fires on the breach site to suppress, neutralize, and destroy critical enemy forces. (b) Plan suppression and obscuration fires in support of breaching operations. (c) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as to the location of the breach. (d) Plan fire support to support the reconnaissance effort. (e) Plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves. (f) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect the force from fratricide. (g) Integrate snipers. (2) Plan engineer support (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follows.) | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are distributed for the point of penetration, planned breach sites, possible bypasses, defending enemy positions or key weapons, and friendly support by fire (SBF) positions if available. (b) Determine breach site location and required number of breach lanes based on the scheme of maneuver, actions on the objective, and the size of the assault force. (c) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort or support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation. (d) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required. (3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the ISR plan. (b) Ensure NBC reconnaissance assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations. (c) Disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit. (d) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.) (e) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites. (4) Coordinate air defense (AD) to cover the breach and passage of units through the obstacles. (5) Plan combat service support (CSS). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Coordinate additional resources as required. (b) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets. (c) Coordinate casualty evacuation. (d) Plan and coordinate recovery and evacuation of vehicles or equipment. f. Develop course of action (COA) using suppress, observe, secure, reduce, and assault (SOSRA). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develop COA using suppress. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Identify the support element's axis of advance to support by fire (SBF) positions. (b) Establish SBF positions that will allow the support element to fire simultaneously from different directions. (c) Establish target reference points (TRPs) to control the support and breach elements' direct fires. (d) Determine the location and size of critical friendly zones (CFZs) to protect the support element. (e) Plan essential indirect fire targets to assist in suppressing the enemy. (f) Develop a plan for lifting and shifting fires. (2) Develop COA using obscure. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Determine the location of smoke targets. (b) Identify terrain features that mask the company's point of breach and limit the number of enemy forces that can effectively observe and fire on the breach element. (c) Consider conducting the breach during limited visibility conditions, such as fog or darkness. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (d) Determine smoke requirements. (3) Develop COA using secure. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Plan direct fire control measures as necessary. (b) Use terrain and the positioning of near-side and far-side security SBF near the point of breach to facilitate the survivability of the breach element. (c) Plan local security at the breach site to suppress overwatching enemy forces that are close to the obstacle. (4) Develop COA using reduce. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Identify primary and alternate reduction technique, such as explosive, mechanical, electronic, and manual. (b) Determine tentative location of lane(s) and the separation between the lanes, if applicable. (c) Identify tentative positions and routes for the breach element as it maneuvers toward the obstacle. (5) Develop COA using assault. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Develop objectives for the assault element. (b) Identify SBF positions to be occupied by the assault element to facilitate passage of follow-on elements. (c) Plan direct and indirect fire control measures that support the seizure of the far-side objective(s). (d) Develop SBF positions to be occupied by the assault element to facilitate passage of follow-on forces. (e) Determine if the assault element requires engineer support to reduce enemy protective obstacles and fortifications. g. Develop graphic control measures using higher headquarters' order overlay as a guide. h. Develop commitment criteria for the breach element. i. Conduct risk management. 3. BN/TF prepares for the breach. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Continues to collect intelligence throughout preparations for the breaching operation. b. Updates and revises SITEMP and ISR plan. c. Supervises subordinate element preparations. d. Conducts rehearsals. <p>NOTE: At a minimum, rehearsals should include a leader and key personnel walk-through by support, breach, and assault elements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Issues the order and graphics to subordinate units. 4. BN/TF command group is positioned where it can best control and synchronize the operation and react to changes in mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). 5. Each element accomplishes its assigned tasks as the unit executes the breach. 6. Support element moves to and occupies assigned overwatch or SBF positions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Uses available cover and concealment during movement. b. Suppresses enemy elements capable of placing direct fires on the point of breach to protect the breach element. c. Suppresses enemy elements capable of placing direct fires on the assault element. d. Adjusts SBF positions as necessary to continue to provide effective supporting fires. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Calls for and adjusts indirect fires, including obscuration (An airborne laser designator or Striker will be required for Copperhead munitions.) f. Maintains all-round security. g. Fixes enemy forces that are capable of repositioning (if not being fixed by higher headquarters). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 7. Breach element moves to breach site and reduces obstacle. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reduces lanes in the obstacle. b. Provides local security (far and near sides). c. Provides additional suppression of enemy forces overwatching the obstacle. d. Marks and reports the location of created lanes. e. Assists the passage of the assault force through created lanes. 8. Assault element passes through cleared lanes and assaults the objective. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Seizes the far-side objective. b. Reduces protective obstacles. c. Assaults the enemy's position. d. Prevents enemy direct fire from interfering with follow-on forces. e. Provides clear routes to the battle handover line (BHL) for follow-on forces. f. Secures terrain that is essential to the passage of the follow-on force. g. Conducts battle handover with follow-on forces. 9. All subordinate elements continually update the unit commander or staff during mission execution. 10. BN/TF creates more lanes as necessary to speed the passage of follow-on forces. 11. BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI. 12. BN/TF consolidates as necessary. 13. BN/TF reorganizes as necessary. 14. BN/TF secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required. 15. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties. 16. BN/TF processes captured documents or equipment as required. 17. BN/TF continues operations as directed. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|--|--|
| 07-1-1009 | Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-1198 | Conduct Tactical Movement (Dismounted) (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1207 | Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2009 | Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2018 | Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2027 | Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2054 | Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-3000 | Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5000 | Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5027 | Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5054 | Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5162 | Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

- TASK:** Defend an Obstacle (07-OPFOR-0020)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has employed obstacles and is covering them with direct and indirect fires. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The enemy has indirect-fire support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR defends obstacles IAW the operation order or commander's guidance. The OPFOR covers the obstacles by fire. The OPFOR fixes the enemy in the obstacles and destroys the enemy by fire.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.
-
- TASK:** Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: ANTIARMOR CO INF BN RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (M113) HHC INF BN (BFV)
 HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) TANK COMPANY, TK BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI) TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC, TANK BN (XXI) HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)

TASK: Conduct an Air Assault (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-1261)
 (FM 90-4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters, and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to perform an air assault at a specified location and time. The latest extended weather forecast, up-to-date intelligence (with emphasis on known or suspected enemy air defense systems), and initial fire planning is provided by higher headquarters. The BN/TF commander is designated as the air assault task force (AATF) commander. The pickup zone(s) (PZ) and landing zone(s) (LZ) are adequate to support the air assault. The LZs and objective area are lightly defended. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts the air assault IAW the TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF elements arrive at the LZ with sufficient personnel, equipment, and time to accomplish the assigned mission. The BN/TF secures the LZ and repulses enemy attacks or counterattacks. The BN/TF completes consolidation and reorganization, moves to objective as directed in the order, or moves to PZs for extraction. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as the result of fratricide.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|-----------|--------------|
| 1. Air assault task force (AATF) leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. AATF commander and staff receive the order and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. b. Conduct a map reconnaissance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1)Identify tentative primary and alternate pickup zone (PZ). (2)Identify tentative primary and alternate landing zone (LZ). c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>NOTE: When an infantry unit is given an air assault mission, the assigning echelon provides the latest extended weather forecast, up-to-date intelligence (with emphasis on known or suspected enemy air defense systems), initial fire planning, and many of the terrain considerations relevant to the operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets. (2) Define the battlefield environment. (3) Describe battlefield effects. (4) Evaluate the enemy. (5) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs). <p>d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces. (2) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems. (3) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets. (4) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets. (5) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems. (6) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs). <p>e. Develop the intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) plan, and employ ISR assets to conduct reconnaissance throughout the MDMP process.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU, and to support the planning process. (2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR), and accomplishes his intent. (3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the BN/TF. <p>f. Develop ground tactical plan.</p> <p>g. Task-organize for combat.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Maximize combat power. (2) Ensure main effort element can mass forces on the LZ. (3) Ensure air assault force has sufficient assets for sustainment. (4) Ensure air assault force has general ground scheme of maneuver. (e) Ensure air assault force has Army aviation support to the ground maneuver plan. (f) Ensure air assault force has fire support (FS) plan. <p>h. Develop a landing plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include landing times, distribution, sequence and formations into the LZ. (2) Ensure fighting unit integrity during the air assault. (3) Address reconnaissance and overwatch or screening instructions for attack helicopter forces during the landing phase. (4) Identify location of LZs (primary and alternate) based on factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). (5) Identify troops, equipment, and supplies to be used in the air assault and sequence. (6) Include fire support during the landing phase that covers LZ preparation, lifting of supporting fires, and shifting the support to attack helicopters. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. Develop air movement plan in coordination with the air mission commander (AMC). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Provide instructions for air movement of troops, equipment, and supplies required for the mission, from the pickup zones (PZs) to the LZ. (2) Include start points (SPs), passage points (PPs), checkpoints (CPs), and release points (RPs). (3) Address coordination of flight routes with adjacent or forward units (to avoid potential fratricide). (4) Address airspace management (air speeds, altitudes, and formations) if applicable. (5) Address actions en route, suppression of enemy air defense (SEAD), close air support (CAS) operations, reconnaissance and air assault security en route, and downed aircraft or abort procedures. (6) Designate an element(s) to guard downed aircraft as a result of the air-assault. (7) Include known or suspected enemy locations. 3. AATF prepares for airlift. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performs final coordination and briefing between air mission commander (AMC), staff, and the helicopter unit commander. b. Formulates and disseminates finalized plan to all units involved with the air assault. c. Performs rehearsals of actions at the PZ, LZ, as well as loading, unloading, and staging. d. Annotates graphic control measures in Maneuver Control System (MCS) overlays (digital equipped units). e. Builds essential information into MCS report and text files (digital equipped units). f. Coordinates passage of lines if applicable. g. Coordinates fire support. 4. AATF stages for airlift. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Begins movement to arrive at the PZ at the designated time. b. Performs reconnaissance and establishes security. c. Task-organizes IAW the plan. 5. AATF performs PZ operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Loads aircraft in accordance with (IAW) load plan and task organization. b. Adjusts to changes in aircraft types and numbers. <p>NOTE: Bump plan- for movement, a plan that describes, in detail, which individuals and equipment in each designated load or chalk has priority over others. This (bump) plan is used when means of transportation cannot carry all of a particular load.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Implements bump plan. d. Controls stragglers. e. Maintains local security during loading. f. Loads all personnel supplies and equipment. g. Releases available attack and reconnaissance assets from PZ security as soon as the PZ has been secured by ground security elements. h. Dispatches attack and reconnaissance assets to perform air route reconnaissance and establish mobile flank screens for air movement to LZs. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. Uses aviation assets to provide overwatch during ground movement to and on the objective. <p>6. AATF arrives at and secures LZs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establishes an aerial overwatch or screen of LZs for insertion of BN/TF. b. Establishes perimeter security to complete LZ activities and prevent surprise by the enemy. c. Establishes blocking positions on all high speed or high threat avenues of approach into the LZs. d. Repulses enemy attacks or counterattacks. e. Consolidates and reorganizes if necessary. f. Arrives at the objective area with sufficient combat power to perform the specified mission. g. Uses aviation assets to provide overwatch during ground movement to and on the objective. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-1207 | Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2009 | Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2018 | Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2027 | Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2054 | Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-3000 | Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|---|--|
| 07-1-3009A | Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP |
| 07-1-5000 | Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5009 | Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5027 | Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5036 | Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5054 | Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5081 | Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5135 | Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5162 | Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

- TASK:** Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.
- TASK:** Conduct Air Attack (07-OPFOR-0029)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers have been identified and are susceptible to air attack. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR's fixed-wing combat aircraft and attack helicopters are available to provide aerial fire support to ground maneuver forces.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR executes the air attack using fixed- and rotor-winged aircraft IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers are destroyed, delayed, or forced to retreat.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: HHC, TANK BN (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TK BN TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI)
 ANTIARMOR CO INF BN RIFLE CO INF BN (M13)
 HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV)
 HHC INF BN (BFV)

TASK: Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-1270)

| | | |
|---------------------|-------------------------|--------------|
| (FM 3-0 [100-5]) | (FM 3-55 [100-55])(TBP) | (FM 19-15) |
| (FM 3-06) | (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) | (FM 34-130) |
| (FM 3-06.11) | (FM 5-71-2) | (FM 101-5) |
| (FM 3-11.4 [3-4]) | (FM 7-20) | (FM 101-5-1) |
| (FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) | (FM 7-85) | (FM 101-5-2) |

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct security operations at a specified location and time. The order requires the BN/TF to establish a reserve force. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All required overlays and graphics are provided in digital format and all communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Local populace and factions may or may not be cooperative. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts security operations IAW the TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF maintains stability and reacts to hostile actions. The commander and staff establish priorities for protection of civil or military personnel, facilities, installations, and key terrain within the area of operations (AO). The commander designates a reserve force. The commander and staff enforce the rules of engagement (ROE) and the rules of interaction (ROI).

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|-----------|--------------|
| <p>NOTE: The term "enemy" is used, in this outline, to signify an actual enemy force, a belligerent, or an individual or group that is or may become hostile to US forces. The term "battlefield", when used in this outline, is synonymous with the area of operations (AO).</p> <p>1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using Army Battle Command System (ABCS), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP) with emphasis on the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. b. Conduct a map reconnaissance. c. Clarify any questions on the ROE and ROI. d. Determine documentation to be presented by persons passing through a checkpoint, roadblock, and so forth (may be addressed in higher headquarters order). e. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets. (2) Determine current intelligence gained through civil affairs and civil-military operations (CMO) activities. (3) Define the battlefield environment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Identify locations of population centers. (b) Identify contentious issues between factions and ethnic groups. (c) Identify extent of authority and effectiveness of local governments throughout the AO. (d) Identify key leaders and centers of influence (local government, factional, religious, business, and so forth). (e) Identify US units, foreign military elements operating in areas adjacent to the unit's AO. (f) Identify areas where US forces should not go (for example religious shrines, areas where the peace mandate or other agreement restrict US access). (4) Describe battlefield effects and how they may affect unit operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Evaluate infrastructure. (b) Evaluate terrain and weather. (c) Evaluate factors such as politics, civilian press, local population, and demographics. (5) Evaluate the enemy. (6) Identify factions that are active in the AO, to include strengths and weaknesses of each. (7) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs). (8) Determine what the enemy is capable of and what he prefers to do in like situations if unconstrained by the battlefield environment. g. Develop the situation template (SITEMP). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces. (2) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems. (3) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets. (4) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets. (5) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons including the ranges of delivery systems. (6) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs). h. Develop the ISR plan, and employ ISR assets to conduct reconnaissance throughout the MDMP process. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU, and to support the planning process. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR), and accomplishes his intent. (3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit. i. Identify force requirements to execute the mission and establish a reserve. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Designate the reserve element. (2) Designate control measures. (3) Define linkup procedures. (4) Identify conditions for employment. j. Identify special equipment requirements. j. Identify force protection requirements. k. Establish performance criteria for continuous patrolling and reconnaissance. l. Established route clearance and control measures. m. Plan checkpoints or roadblocks. n. Plan for conventional rear area security. o. Plan CMO activities. p. Established priorities for protection of civil or military personnel, facilities, installations, and key terrain within the AO. q. Integrate and synchronize battlefield operating systems (BOS; based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations [METT-TC]). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Plan fire support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Plan for use of smoke and other nonlethal munitions. (b) Plan triggers for suppression and smoke. (c) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets. (d) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort. (e) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical assets and to prevent fratricide. (2) Plan engineer support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed. (b) Identify survivability tasks. (c) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis. (d) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan. (e) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL is immediately disseminated to all BN/TF units and supporting elements. (f) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation. (3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support (based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the ISR plan. (b) Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations. (c) Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit. (d) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (e) Develop decontamination plans and disseminate planned and active sites. (4) Plan and coordinate air defense (AD) support if support has been provided by brigade. (5) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as movement through restrictive terrain. (6) Plan combat service support (CSS). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements. (b) Ensure adequate CSS support to the ISR effort (The S4 plans and integrates timely resupply and evacuation support of forward ISR assets is well planned and integrated into the ISR plan.) (c) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation. (d) Integrate refueling and resupply operations with the scheme of maneuver. 3. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept. 4. BN/TF prepares for security operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. b. Conducts extensive ISR operations. c. Provides intelligence requirements to patrols, observation posts (OPs) and other US elements operating in the AO. d. Coordinates for liaison officers, local guides, and interpreters as required. e. Coordinates fire support plans with adjacent or supported units. f. Coordinates for augmentations such as civil military detachments, military police teams, military working dogs, and so forth. g. Conducts precombat checks as required. h. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent. i. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible (includes TCF). 5. BN/TF executes security operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assigns subelement AOs. b. Establishes zones of separation if necessary. c. Conducts CMO activities as required. d. Implements plans to protect civil or military personnel, facilities, installations, and key terrain. e. Provides the following to subordinate elements that will accomplish security missions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Provides purposes of mission. (2) Provides special constraints. (3) Provides unique tasks associated with the mission. (4) Provides updates to local situation. (5) Provides additional guidance as required. (6) Provides necessary attachments and special equipment. f. Assigns security missions to subordinate elements. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Assigns mission to patrol. (2) Assigns mission to establish and operate checkpoint or roadblock operations. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (3) Assigns mission to open and secure routes. (4) Assigns mission to establish observation posts (OPs). (5) Assigns mission to conduct weapons site inspections. (6) Assigns mission to provide escorts for military or civilian movements. (7) Assigns mission to plan and conduct civil disturbance operations. (8) Assigns mission to conduct a cordon and a search. (9) Assigns mission to secure selected sites (voting sites, refugee camps, schools, churches, and so forth). (10) Assigns mission to enforce curfews. (11) Assigns mission to stabilize areas that have escalating tension. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 6. BN/TF headquarters controls stability operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Enforces ROE and ROI. b. Maintains communications with higher headquarters and subordinate units. c. Conducts or monitors meetings with community and factional leaders. d. Debriefs subordinates involved in operations as necessary. e. Demonstrates resolve, confidence, commitment, and sensitivity for local customs and people living in the AO by attending local events. f. Coordinates for disposition of detained personnel, documents, equipment, and weapons. g. Commits the reserve as required. h. Submits reports IAW higher headquarters order, TSOP, or commander's guidance. 7. BN/TF leaders assess the operation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation. b. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent. 8. BN/TF consolidates as necessary. 9. BN/TF reorganizes as necessary. 10. BN/TF secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required. 11. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties. 12. BN/TF processes captured documents or equipment as required. 13. BN/TF continues operations as directed. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-3000 | Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5000 | Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5036 | Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5081 | Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

- TASK:** Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.
- TASK:** Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (07-OPFOR-0016)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. It has dispatched small teams into the enemy rear area to disrupt combat service support (CSS) operations. All necessary personnel and equipment are available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR locates the enemy rear support bases and command and control facilities. It destroys supplies and equipment, delays and disrupts CSS operations, or inflicts casualties through probes IAW the operation order and the commander's guidance.

- TASK:** Conduct Infiltration/Exfiltration (07-OPFOR-0018)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR infiltrates/exfiltrates personnel through the enemy lines. All necessary personnel and equipment are available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts the infiltration/exfiltration IAW the operation order or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR determines gaps in the enemy's lines/defenses and infiltrates/exfiltrates without being detected. The OPFOR accomplishes the commander's intent (gains information, attacks a position from the rear, conducts raids or ambushes, captures prisoners, seizes key terrain, or aids the main attack).
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.
- TASK:** Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.
- TASK:** Conduct a Raid (07-OPFOR-0013)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. It is occupying an objective rally point (ORP) with orders to raid enemy elements. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR executed the raid IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR used surprise, firepower, and maneuver to destroy enemy positions, capture prisoners, capture equipment, or free prisoners friendly to the OPFOR. It avoided decisive engagement and withdrew all personnel from the objectives within the specified time. The OPFOR obtained all priority intelligence requirements (PIR).
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
 HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) ANTIARMOR CO INF BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
 HHC INF BN (BFV)

TASK: Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-3000)

| | | |
|---------------------|--------------|--------------|
| (FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) | (FM 6-20-10) | (FM 7-85) |
| (FM 3-21.91 [7-91]) | (FM 6-20-20) | (FM 7-90) |
| (FM 3-52 [100-103]) | (FM 6-30) | (FM 101-5) |
| (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) | (FM 7-20) | (FM 101-5-1) |

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission at a specified time and location. The BN/TF has direct support (DS) priority of fires and has been allocated close air support (CAS) sorties. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF employs fire support (FS) IAW the TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. Fire support element (FSE) and TF Air Liaison Officer (ALO)/Tactical Air Control Party (TACP) participate in the targeting process. BN/TF FSE conducts battle tracking to maintain situational understanding (SU). BN/TF FSE executes lethal and non-lethal FS operations in support of the close battle, and for units in the security area. BN/TF FSE ensures fires are observed to determine whether attack objectives have been achieved. BN/TF FSE expedites immediate FS requests. BN/TF FSE executes immediate CAS. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as the result of friendly fire.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|-----------|--------------|
| 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. Fire support element (FSE) participates in the targeting process. | | |
| 3. FSE updates situation boards and charts. | | |
| 4. FSE conducts battle tracking, monitors maneuver, enemy, and fire support situation. | | |
| a. Stays abreast of the current branches and sequels. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Maintains ability to recommend implementation of a branch or sequel based on the probable outcome of the current operation. 5. FSE executes lethal and nonlethal fire support (FS) operations in support of the close battle and for units in the security area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Resolves any outstanding conflicts between the scheme of maneuver and the scheme of fires. b. Assesses target intelligence information and target production to facilitate timely and accurate engagements. c. Coordinates and synchronizes the timely detection and attack of high-payoff target (HPTs) with the targeting team. 6. FSE tracks pre-planned fires in the FS plan. Monitors the process and execution of pre-planned fires. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitors on-call targets. b. Monitors scheduled targets. c. Monitors counterfire programs coordinated with the intelligence (S2) to identify and attack enemy indirect-fire assets. d. Monitors localized joint suppression of enemy air defenses (JSEAD), as required. e. Monitors joint air attack team (JAAT) operations. f. Monitors other indirect fires for example, naval gunfire, close air support (CAS), and intelligence and electronic warfare (IEW). g. Monitors deep targets attack during current battle. 7. FSE ensures planned fires are updated based on the evolving tactical situation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Recommends changes to existing attack guidance if warranted. b. Confirms continued validity of permissive and restrictive FSCM. c. Updates geometries and FSCMs IAW current fight. 8. FSE ensures fires are observed to determine whether attack objectives have been achieved. 9. FSE conducts the following on receipt of target nominations: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Validates continued compliance with current ROE and troop safety guidelines through adherence to FS coordination procedures. b. Coordinates as required with higher, lower, and adjacent units, other services, allies, and host nation to clear fires for engagements across unit boundaries and to prevent potential fratricide situations. c. Issues fire mission request. d. Provides attack system manager with-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Selected time of attack. (2) Confirmation of effects desired. (3) Any special restraints or requests for particular munitions types. 10. FSE expedites immediate FS requests, processing request(s) for immediate FS to ensure: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensures request is consistent with force commander's guidance. b. Ensures most effective means of fire support is requested. c. Ensures airspace corridors are in effect for fixed and rotary wing aircraft. d. Ensures timely fire support is provided. *11. FSE monitors battle damage assessment (BDA) requirements and results. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Requests BDA from executing units or collection managers in coordination with the S2. b. Confirms availability of BDA support. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Makes a recommendation to reengage if deemed appropriate. d. Provides mission fired roll-up as required. <p>*12. FSE executes immediate CAS.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Communicates to higher headquarters if a request has been initiated already. b. Initiates immediate CAS requests on approved targets. c. Engages targets not approved for CAS by other fire support assets. d. Transmits requests to the tactical air effects coordinator and targets to forward air controller (FAC) via tactical air effects coordinator. e. Coordinates and uses artillery support until CAS arrives. f. Uses unit fires and smoke to suppress observed enemy air defense (AD) weapons within range. <p>*13. FSE updates the direct support (DS) FA unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Uses Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System (AFATDS) to maximize information management. b. Relays unit element locations to DS FA unit. c. Coordinates new missions. d. Annotates appropriate AFATDS overlays and data files to reflect changes. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|--|--|
| 07-1-5000 | Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5144 | Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)

TASK: Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-3009A)

(FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) (FM 7-20) (FM 101-5-1)
(FM 6-20-40) (FM 71-123)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission at the location and time specified. A targeting team has been designated (normally the fire support officer [FSO], S2, and the S3 or designated representative as a minimum). The order includes all applicable overlays or graphics. The unit has a field artillery battery, an engineer company, an air defense platoon, and a military intelligence team (ground surveillance radar [GSR]) in direct support (DS). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) or rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The unit executes the targeting process in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and unit commanders and the higher commander's guidance. The targeting team identifies high-payoff targets (HPTs) or high-value targets (HVTs) and determines how to locate, to track, and to engage them. The targeting team develops and incorporates targeting products into the OPORD. The unit complies with the ROE or ROI.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| 1. Unit leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. Unit commander provides guidance for the targeting effort. a. What essential tasks fires must accomplish. b. Includes essential fires support tasks (EFSTs). c. Includes how he intends to shape the battlefield with collaborative lethal and nonlethal assets. d. Includes critical enemy formation, function, or facility that, if attacked will lead most directly to mission accomplishment. e. Includes targeting assessment requirements. 3. Unit targeting team determines surface targets to be attacked while participating in the military decision-making process (MDMP). a. Obtain EFSTs from higher headquarters order. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>b. Analyzes relative combat power.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Focuses on arranging specified and implied tasks on the battlefield in time and space. (2) Focuses on analyzing necessary combat power needed to achieve the tasks. (3) Focuses on friendly capabilities pertaining to the operation (combat, combat support [CS], and combat service support [CSS]). (4) Focuses on what type operations may be possible from both friendly and enemy perspectives. (5) Focuses on how and where the enemy may be vulnerable. <p>c. Analyzes relative force FS ratios (friendly versus enemy) and compares strengths and weaknesses of each.</p> <p>d. Establishes the HPTs or HVTs list.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ensures targeting members have HVTs list for each enemy course of action (COA) (from intelligence preparation of the battlefield [IPB]).(S2 section) <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Portrays the HVTs in time and space on a map background with respect to a situation template (SITEMP). (b) Portrays the HVTs in time-phase lines using common tactical picture (CTP) notional overlays (digital equipped units). (2) Ensures targeting members have CTP notional overlay file name of the friendly COA sketch(es) (from MDMP; S3 section; digital equipped units). (3) Reviews choke points or areas favorable to engaging forces (This step is accomplished by the staff engineer, if available.) (4) Establishes the initial target notional overlay using CTP (Fire support element [FSE], with input from the S2, S3, and staff engineer [if available]). (5) Analyze HVTs against friendly mission and assets to develop an initial HPT list by phase for each COA (FSE and S2 section). (6) Refines the HPT list and the target overlay(s) as part of COA analysis (war gaming; targeting team) <p>e. Determines time and method to engage the HPTs or HVTs and incorporates conclusions into the attack guidance matrix (AGM).</p> <p>NOTE: At a minimum, AGM will specify desired effects and systems used and addresses lethal and nonlethal attack.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develops targeting objectives; for example, the effects of target attack on the enemy's capabilities (limit, disrupt, delay, divert, destroy, and damage) for each COA (FSE, S2 section, and S3 section). (2) Describes the desired effects on targets by establishing attack guidance criteria; for example destroy, neutralize, suppress, and harass (targeting team). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Establishes initial attack guidance criteria during COA development (FSE). (b) Refines the attack guidance criteria during war gaming (targeting team). | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (3) Identifies assets available to engage HPTs or HVTs by phase of each COA (attack managers such as the fire support officer [FSO], air liaison officer [ALO], S2, and S3). (4) Develops a concept of fires for each COA scheme of maneuver (targeting team, led by the FSO). (5) Establishes the initial AGM, identifying which attack assets will engage the HPTs for each friendly COA (FSE). (6) Develops target selection standards (TSS) for each option during COA development (attack managers). (7) Establishes the initial target area of interest (TAI) overlay (FSE, with input from the S2 section). (8) Ties TAIs to the DPs for execution of the attack. (9) Conducts line of sight analysis to support observation post planning (staff engineer [if available]). (10) Identifies assets available to the S2 to locate and track HPTs or HVTs (targeting team). (11) Considers HPT or HVT signature and determine which ISR assets are best suited to locate particular HPTs (S2 section and FSE). (12) Specifies the NAIs and TAIs that the assets will collect against. (13) Refines the TAIs as part of COA analysis (targeting team). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Submits TSS to the FSE in order to develop the target selection matrix (TSM). (b) Submits TSS to the S2 in order to develop the sensor or attack system matrix. (14) Refine the AGM, TSS, and TSM for each COA as part of COA analysis (attack managers). (15) Drafts the initial ISR plan for each friendly COA (S2 section). (16) Identifies decision points (DPs) and triggers for target engagement during war gaming (targeting team). (17) Refines the ISR plan, as part of COA analysis (staff). (18) Develops target criteria (TCRIT) and target intelligence data (TIDAT) requirements (FSE and S2 section). f. Determines how to locate and track HPTs or HVTs by developing the reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S; See task: Plan Reconnaissance and Surveillance). g. Determines if, when, and how target assessment will be accomplished by developing the combat assessment (CA) guidelines. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Refines the initial named area of interest (NAI) notional overlay (S2 section). (2) Establishes the battle damage assessment (BDA) criteria to determine whether another target strike might be necessary (S2 section) (3) Identifies assets best capable of getting BDA and adds CA guidelines and BDA criteria to the ISR plan (S2 section). (4) Refines the CA guidelines and the BDA criteria as part of COA analysis (Staff). 4. Unit FSE consolidates the HPT or HVT list, AGM, and TSS in order to produce the fire support execution matrix (FSEM). 5. Unit S2 section presents the weather, current and projected enemy set, and scheme of maneuver. Presents the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and enemy decision points. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| 6. Unit S3 section presents the current and projected friendly set and scheme of maneuver. 7. Unit FSE presents the concept of fires, HPTL, AGM, TSS, and CA guidelines for approval. 8. Unit commander approves the concept of fires, HPT or HVT list, AGM, TSS, and CA guidelines or provides further guidance. 9. Unit targeting team produces and disseminates FRAGO or incorporates targeting products (fire support plan) into the OPOD. 10. Unit targeting team updates the targeting products based upon battle update briefs, changes to friendly or enemy situation, FRAGO, or unplanned events. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI) TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC, TANK BN (XXI) HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) HHC INF BN (M113/ITV)
 ANTIARMOR CO INF BN HHC INF BN (BFV)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
 TANK COMPANY, TK BN

TASK: Conduct Active Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-6000)

(FM 44-8)

(FM 44-80)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Task Force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters. The command post (CP) receives early warning of hostile aerial platform(s) in the area of operations (AO). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF CP or trains personnel conduct active air defense measures against hostile aerial platforms IAW the (TSOP), the order, and the higher commander's guidance. CP or trains personnel visually identify hostile platforms. CP or trains personnel take cover and destroy attacking hostile platforms, or force them away from friendly positions. CP or trains personnel engage non-attacking hostile platforms, as directed. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: **GO NO-GO**

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. CP or trains personnel employ preparatory air defense measures (CP is stationary). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Sound air attack alarm to alert all personnel in all unit elements of the presence of hostile aircraft, if situation permits. b. Seek cover. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Occupy designated fighting positions and field fortifications. (2) Mount vehicles if possible. (3) Employ available camouflage. c. Search assigned sector for approaching aircraft. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Visually identify enemy aerial platforms. (2) Alert the unit with a contact report containing the following information: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) CONTACT or BANDIT(S; Use cardinal direction, such as NORTH, EAST, and so forth.) | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Prepare personnel to fire on orders of senior individual present or automatically return fire if fired upon by aircraft. e. Make engagement decision. f. Report all aerial platform actions to higher headquarters. <p>3. CP or trains personnel employ preparatory air defense measures (CP is moving).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Alert vehicle commanders and all unit elements of the presence of hostile aircraft, if situation permits. b. Seek covered and concealed positions or routes. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Disperse vehicles laterally and in-depth or vehicle operators continue to move unit. (2) Move vehicles to covered, concealed positions. c. Visually identify enemy aerial platforms. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Alert the unit with a contact report. (2) Include contact or bandit(s) information and use cardinal direction, such as North or East. d. Prepare personnel to fire on orders of senior individual present or automatically return fire if fired upon by aircraft. e. Make engagement decision. f. Report all aerial platform actions to higher headquarters. <p>4. CP or trains personnel engage hostile aircraft.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Engage non-attacking aircraft only as directed. b. Engage attacking aircraft with all available small arms until destroyed or warded off. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Place weapon on highest rate of fire. (2) Select proper aim point for type of aircraft and direction of flight. <p>5. Leaders supervise post attack activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Give "All Clear" signal when hostile aircraft have departed the area. b. Forward damage report and personnel status report to higher headquarters. c. Coordinate casualty treatment and evacuation. d. Direct clearing of mission-hindering destroyed supplies and equipment. e. Coordinate replacement of equipment with higher headquarters. <p>6. CP or trains personnel perform post-attack activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Consolidate and reorganize as necessary. b. Secure enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) if any. c. Treat and evacuate casualties. d. Reconstruct damaged positions and field fortifications. <p>7. BN/TF continues operations as directed.</p> | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|--|--|
| 07-1-5027 | Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Air Attack (07-OPFOR-0029)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers have been identified and are susceptible to air attack. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR's fixed-wing combat aircraft and attack helicopters are available to provide aerial fire support to ground maneuver forces.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes the air attack using fixed- and rotor-winged aircraft IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers are destroyed, delayed, or forced to retreat.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (BFV) HHC INF BN (M113/ITV)
 ANTIARMOR CO INF BN RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (M113) TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC, TANK BN (XXI) TANK COMPANY, TK BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)

TASK: Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-6009)

(AR 380-19) (FM 6-0 [100-34]) (FM 101-5-1)
 (AR 380-19-1) (FM 101-5) (FM 101-5-2)
 (AR 380-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a larger task-organized force, and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission at the location and time specified. All information systems are accredited to process and store SECRET data. Security guidelines and procedures for all information systems are distributed down to user level. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts information assurance (IA) IAW the TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF S2 section verifies and updates the unit access roster to ensure that all new and replacement users and operators possess the minimum security clearance required for operations. The S6 section uses IA tools to identify and neutralize possible threats to the BN/TF communications network. Staff sections monitor operations to detect security breaches and suspicious activities. Staff sections account for all communications security (COMSEC) equipment and classified material. All command post (CP) personnel understand the established emergency destruction procedures and continuity of operations plan (COOP).

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|-----------|--------------|
| 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. BN/TF signal officer (S6), in coordination with other task force (TF) staff, develop the IA plan. | | |
| a. Conduct mission analysis to determine specific issues for all information systems. | | |
| (1) Determine systems operational concepts. | | |
| (2) Determine risk assessments for operating these information systems. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Identify possible threat factors to command assets, vulnerabilities, and personnel security issues. c. Determine what security architecture will be utilized to protect systems, networks, and information from attacks and intrusion. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Determine configuration of fire walls and guards for protection of enclave boundaries if available. (2) Plan the use of network intrusion detection system if available. (3) Ensure host computer protection through use of properly configured secure operating systems. (4) Establish password management procedures. (5) Establish access rosters and security clearances. (6) Plan the use secure protocols for identification, authentication, and privacy. (7) Establish procedures for information managers to maintain situational understanding (SU) of information warfare (IW). (8) Plan the use multiple security levels with hard separation between the levels. d. Determine information assurance management (for example, security manager, security officer, and communications security [COMSEC]). e. Identify the main areas of concern for information assurance. f. Design security architecture to ensure data integrity, confidentiality, authentication, and availability of network resources. g. Develop emergency destruction procedures when information systems are subject to imminent danger or capture. <p>3. BN/TF commander, with staff input, monitors and implements changes to IA security level.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Changes IA security level based on reassessment of risks in current and future operating environment. b. Directs changes in CP security measures (operations sergeant). c. Implements changes in section security, computer system security, and network security (staff sections). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ensures that all automation system access restrictions and IA tool kit are properly configured and initialized (staff section information assurance security officer). (2) Verifies that all network access restrictions and tactical internet manager IA security tools are properly configured and initialized (CP Network Security Officer [NSO]). d. Verifies that changes in CP security have been accomplished (operations sergeant). <p>4. BN/TF staff sections update CP access roster.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Notify intelligence (S2) section of changes in personnel requiring access to the CP (staff sections). b. Verifies that all unit personnel with access to classified systems and networks have the appropriate security clearance level (S2 section). c. Updates CP access roster to reflect changes (S2 section). d. Provides operations sergeant with updated access roster (S2 section). <p>5. BN/TF staff sections maintain control of information systems within their area of responsibility. Supervise maintenance of control measures (section noncommissioned officer in charge [NCOIC]).</p> | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>6. BN/TF staff section computer system operators accomplish the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Notify section information assurance security officer when changes are made to computer system hardware or software. b. Update their computer system with latest virus definition update. c. Periodically run anti-virus software scanner IAW TSOP to ensure that computer system is virus free. d. Report all incidents of virus infections to the staff section information assurance security officer IAW TSOP or guidance from higher headquarters or appropriate Army Regulation (AR). e. Secure computer system classified material IAW TSOP, guidance from higher headquarters, or appropriate AR. f. Report all suspicious activities or suspected computer system or network compromises to the section information assurance security officer . <p>7. Section information assurance security officer accomplishes the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains accreditation packets for all automation systems assigned to the section IAW TSOP, guidance from higher headquarters, or appropriate AR. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Updates each packet when changes to the automation system hardware and software occur. (2) Provides updated accreditation packet to S6. b. Ensures all systems are updated with the latest virus definitions and are virus free. c. Reports all incidents of virus infections to the S6 IAW TSOP, guidance from higher headquarters, or appropriate AR. d. Briefs all new and replacement personnel on unit information security procedures, emergency destruction plan and COOP. e. Ensures that computer system classified material is secured IAW TSOP, guidance from higher headquarters, or appropriate AR. f. Reports all suspicious activities or suspected computer system or network compromises to the section Network Security Officer (NSO). <p>8. BN/TF S6 NSO maintains control of information systems within the unit area of responsibility.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitors the security integrity of the network. b. Takes action to neutralize any threat to the network. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Disables selected network systems or device ports to deny the threat access to the unit network. (2) Reports breaches in security to unit commander and S2 or S6. c. Reviews and changes access control procedures. d. Changes network passwords IAW TSOP, guidance from higher headquarters, or appropriate AR. e. Verifies all replacement and repaired systems are properly accredited to operate at the SECRET level in the systems high mode of operation IAW TSOP, guidance from higher headquarters, or appropriate AR. f. Ensures all incidents of virus infections and network or computer system compromises are reported to higher headquarters S6 or G6. <p>9. BN/TF staff sections control COMSEC material.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains control of COMSEC material IAW TSOP, guidance from higher headquarters, or appropriate AR. b. Updates cryptographic (CRYPTO) material at designated times. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Destroys COMSEC material as directed by COMSEC custodian. d. Reports all suspected compromises to the COMSEC custodian. e. Documents the destruction of COMSEC material IAW TSOP, guidance from higher headquarters, or appropriate AR. f. Initiates emergency destruction plan on direction of COMSEC custodian or other emergency circumstance detailed in the unit TSOP. <p>10. BN/TF COMSEC custodian accomplishes the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Operates COMSEC field account IAW TSOP or guidance from higher headquarters, or appropriate AR. b. Provides COMSEC support to the unit. c. Issues new COMSEC material. d. Directs the change of CRYPTO variables or material at designated or directed times. e. Accounts for the issue, turn-in, or destruction of COMSEC material. f. Reports all suspected COMSEC compromises to higher headquarters S6 or G6. g. Directs the initiation of the emergency destruction plan. <p>11. BN/TF staff sections control classified material (other than automation or COMSEC).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains control of classified material IAW TSOP, guidance from higher headquarters, or appropriate AR. b. Destroys classified material as directed by S2 security manager. c. Reports all suspected compromises to the S2 security manager. d. Documents the destruction of classified material IAW TSOP, guidance from higher headquarters, or appropriate AR. e. Initiates emergency destruction plan on direction of S2 security manager or other emergency circumstance detailed in the unit TSOP. <p>12. BN/TF S2 security manager accomplishes the following.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establishes classified document field account IAW TSOP, guidance from higher headquarters, or appropriate AR. b. Provides classified document support to the unit. c. Distributes new classified material. d. Accounts for the issue, turn-in, or destruction of classified material. e. Reports all suspected classified document compromises to the division G2. f. Directs the initiation of the emergency destruction plan. <p>13. BN/TF S6 prepares the information assurance annex to the unit operation plan (OPLAN) or OPORD.</p> | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE
SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE
OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
HHC INF BN (BFV) HHC INF BN (M113/ITV)
ANTIARMOR CO INF BN

TASK: Conduct Operational Decontamination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-6018)

(FM 3-3) (FM 3-5) (FM 3-11 [3-100])
(FM 3-3-1) (FM 3-7) (FM 3-11.4 [3-4])

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters. The enemy effectively employs chemical weapons against the BN/TF resulting in contamination. The power-driven decontamination equipment (PDDE) is available for augmentation upon request. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts operational decontamination (IAW) TSOP, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF performs task 07-1-6054, React to Chemical Attack, prior to conducting decontamination. The BN/TF coordinates for operational decontamination support. The BN/TF moves to the decontamination site and conducts operational decontamination while maintaining security.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: **GO NO-GO**

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>NOTE: Task steps and performance measures preceded by (D) indicate requirements that digitized units should execute using the referenced digital system or by other digital means, as appropriate. Non-digitized units will achieve the established standards IAW analog procedures when executing these requirements.</p> <p>*1. (D) BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other information available through ABCS.</p> <p>2. BN/TF reacts to chemical attack.</p> <p>3. BN/TF reports contamination to higher headquarters (chemical officer [CHEMO]).</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">a. (D) Submits NBC1 report via FCB2.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">b. Reports time the unit became contaminated.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">c. Reports number of vehicles and equipment, by type, that are contaminated.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Reports type of contamination. e. Coordinates with higher headquarters commander for relief from current mission. <p>4. BN/TF commander and staff determine the extent of contamination and establish decontamination priorities.</p> <p>5. BN/TF commander or designated staff coordinates operational decontamination support from higher headquarters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates decontamination site. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ensures site has good overhead concealment. (2) Ensures site has good drainage. (3) Ensures site is off the main route, but within easy access for vehicles. (4) Ensures site is large enough to handle vehicle wash-down and mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear exchange. (5) Ensures site has adequate available water source. b. (D) Transmits location, overlay, and specific instructions via FBCB2 and voice communications. <p>6. BN/TF establishes communications with supporting power-driven decontaminating equipment (PDDE) team.</p> <p>7. BN/TF dispatches nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) personnel and advance party (including logistics support) to prepare decontamination site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establishes communications with higher headquarters NBC staff and PDDE team as necessary. b. Establishes site security. c. Links up with higher headquarters NBC staff and PDDE team at decontamination site. d. Establishes vehicle washdown site, in coordination with higher headquarters NBC staff and PDDE team. e. Prepares MOPP gear exchange site at a clean area upwind from vehicle washdown. f. Ensures the logistics section or the higher headquarters NBC team obtains additional equipment for the MOPP gear exchange as required. <p>8. BN/TF elements conduct tactical movement to the decontamination site and prepare for operational decontamination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establish and maintain local security IAW TSOP or commander's guidance. b. Prepare vehicles for washdown. <p>9. BN/TF performs vehicle decontamination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensures vehicle hatches are closed and secured. b. Follows guidance of site officer, noncommissioned officer (NCO) in charge, or PDDE crew in moving vehicles to and through decontamination site. c. Assists PDDE crew in decontaminating vehicles as required. d. Moves vehicles, if applicable, to the designated holding area upwind from decontamination site as directed by the officer or noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC). e. Prevents spread of NBC contamination. <p>10. Under supervision of the BN/TF chemical officer and NBC NCO, site officer or NCOIC, or decontamination team, BN/TF conducts MOPP gear exchange.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Completes the following steps in sequence, using the buddy system: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Decontaminates and drops gear (weapon, helmet, load bearing equipment (LBE), mask carrier, and personal items). | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>(2) Decontaminates hood and gloves, and rolls up hood. (3) Removes overgarment and overshoes. (4) Puts on clean overgarment. (5) Puts on clean overboots and gloves. (6) Secures hood. (7) Secures gear.</p> <p>11. BN/TF completes decontamination activities. a. Mounts vehicles in designated holding area and moves to post decontamination assembly area.</p> <p>NOTE: Alternate drivers may be used to move vehicles to post decontamination assembly area while primary drivers conduct MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p>b. Follows additional guidance of officer in charge (OIC) or NCOIC as required. c. Ensures that the higher headquarters PDDE crew covers, marks, and departs contaminated area.</p> <p>*12. (D) BN/TF commander reports completion of decontamination to higher headquarters via FBCB2 or voice communication.</p> <p>13. BN/TF continues operations as directed.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE
SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE
OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
 ANTIARMOR CO INF BN TANK COMPANY, TK BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
 HHC INF BN (BFV)

TASK: Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-6027)

| | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------|--------------|
| (FM 2-0 [34-1]) | (FM 3-55 [100-55])(TBP) | (FM 21-60) |
| (FM 3-0 [100-5]) | (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) | (FM 24-33) |
| (FM 3-13 [100-6]) | (FM 7-20) | (FM 34-40-7) |
| (FM 3-19.30 [19-30]) | (FM 7-85) | (FM 34-54) |
| (FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) | (FM 20-3) | (FM 101-5-1) |

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is conducting operations independently, or as part of a higher headquarters, and must maintain operations security (OPSEC) to deny the enemy information about friendly activities. The enemy has the capability to detect the BN/TF visually, audibly, and electronically. Coalition partners, civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations (NGOs), private organizations (PVOs), organizations of the international community (IC), and news media may be present in the area. The main command post (CP) is operational. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command System (ABCS), when equipped, with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is providing information to higher headquarters and subordinate units in accordance with (IAW) higher headquarters and BN/TF tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF maintains OPSEC measures IAW TSOP, the operations order (OPORD), and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF denies the enemy critical information regarding current and future operations and status by: analyzing OPSEC considerations during conduct of mission analysis; identifying OPSEC measures during course of action (COA) development; developing essential elements of friendly information (EEFI); and implementing signal, information, and physical security measures. The BN/TF monitors and refines OPSEC measures during operations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: **GO NO-GO**

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. BN/TF develops an OPSEC plan that addresses active and passive noise, light, litter, and communications measures to deny friendly information to enemy forces. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies indicators which can be exploited by hostile intelligence organizations. b. Develops a deception plan when planning missions. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>3. BN/TF prepares for OPSEC.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Briefs subordinates on the OPSEC plan and its importance to mission success. b. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. c. Conducts extensive intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR). <p>4. BN/TF executes the OPSEC plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Enforces measures that protect friendly information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Prohibits fraternization with local civilians. (2) Makes sure maps do not contain the friendly order of battle. (3) Conducts inspections and gives briefings to ensure that personnel do not carry details of military activities in personal materials (letters, diaries, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs). (4) Enforces safeguards for weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, and classified documents. (5) Ensures all planning areas and positions are sanitized after use or before unit elements depart their areas. b. Mans and performs surveillance from observation posts (OPs). c. Conducts counter reconnaissance patrols if possible. d. Destroys enemy reconnaissance elements when encountered. e. Conducts stand-to procedures. f. Establishes local security. g. Establishes specific levels of alert based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). h. Uses camouflage to conceal individuals, equipment, supplies, and positions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Covers all reflective surfaces with non-reflective material such as cloth, mud, or camouflage stick. (2) Uses terrain and vegetation for concealment. i. Avoids footpaths, trails, or roads where possible. j. Erases tracks leading into positions. k. Controls movement. l. Uses the proper movement formation and movement technique. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Moves as fast as the situation permits. (2) Moves along covered and concealed routes. m. Enforces radio discipline. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Enforces the use of proper radio procedures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensures subordinate elements change frequencies and call signs IAW signal operating instructions (SOI) or TSOP. (b) Ensures subordinate elements use varied transmission schedules and lengths. (c) Ensures subordinate elements use established formats to expedite transmissions. (d) Ensures subordinate elements use encoded messages or use secure voice. (e) Ensures subordinate elements use brevity codes when possible. (f) Ensures subordinate elements use the lowest power settings possible. (g) Ensures subordinate elements avoid transmission patterns. (h) Ensures subordinate elements use and maintain radio silence as directed. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>(2) Ensures subordinate elements understand action to take if jamming is suspected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Continues to operate. (b) Disconnects the antenna. (c) Switches to the highest power. (d) Relocates the radio. (e) Uses directional antennas. (f) Turns the squelch off. (g) Uses messenger and wire whenever possible, especially in static positions. (h) Uses the radio in the quiet, message mode. Transmits an arranged number of taps or use the PUSH-TO-TALK switch in the same manner. <p>n. Enforces litter discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Collects and back-hauls trash during logistics runs during stationary periods. (2) Carries trash until it can be disposed of securely. <p>o. Enforces light discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ensures subordinate elements conceal lights necessary for planning or reading a map (a poncho can be used for this purpose.) (2) Ensure all flashlights have filters. (3) Ensure subordinate elements remove or tape personal items that may reflect light (identification tags, rings, and watches). (4) Ensure subordinate elements prohibit use of cigarettes and open fires during darkness or when smoke or fire may be observed by the enemy. (5) Ensure subordinate elements use only passive night observation equipment if possible. <p>p. Enforces noise discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Identifies shortcomings in noise discipline during inspections. (2) Ensures subordinate elements tape down or remove items that make noise. (3) Ensures subordinate elements use normal means of communication to the greatest extent possible. (4) Ensures subordinate elements prohibit talking except as required to conduct or plan operations. (5) Ensures subordinate elements use hand and arm signals to the fullest extent possible during daylight hours or with night vision devices. <p>q. Enforces information assurance.</p> <p>5. BN/TF leaders assess OPSEC measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitor the effectiveness of the OPSEC plan. b. Monitor subordinate compliance with the OPSEC plan. c. Direct adjustments as necessary. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE
SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Reconnaissance (07-OPFOR-0010)
CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to obtain tactical information about the enemy's location, disposition, intent, and activities. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel as well as engineer support are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducted the reconnaissance mission by penetrating the enemy's outposts with mounted or dismounted patrols, and then obtaining and reporting required information IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintained focus; continuity; aggressiveness; timeliness; camouflage, concealment, and deception; accuracy; and reliability. The OPFOR reconnaissance elements completed the reconnaissance mission undetected.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy unit commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Infiltration/Exfiltration (07-OPFOR-0018)
CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR infiltrates/exfiltrates personnel through the enemy lines. All necessary personnel and equipment are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the infiltration/exfiltration IAW the operation order or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR determines gaps in the enemy's lines/defenses and infiltrates/exfiltrates without being detected. The OPFOR accomplishes the commander's intent (gains information, attacks a position from the rear, conducts raids or ambushes, captures prisoners, seizes key terrain, or aids the main attack).

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Electronic Combat (07-OPFOR-0021)
CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The enemy is conducting command and control of operations using digital equipment, radio, messenger, or other tactical communications.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts electronic combat IAW the operation order or commander's guidance. The OPFOR employs signal reconnaissance, electronic jamming, electronic protection measures, destruction, and electronic counterreconnaissance to disrupt the enemy command and control.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENT:

TASK: Prepare for a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-6036)

(FM 3-5)
(FM 3-11 [3-100])
(FM 3-11.4 [3-4])

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters, and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to take immediate actions necessary to establish a protective posture against a chemical attack in the area of operation (AO). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF prepares for a chemical attack IAW TSOP, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF constructs or reinforces positions, briefs or inspects personnel, positions alarms upwind of friendly positions, assumes the appropriate mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP), and takes cover.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|-----------|--------------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. BN/TF receives an OPORD or FRAGO and issues warning order (WARNO) to unit elements. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directs implementation of defensive preparations consistent with the mission and threat. b. Directs members to assume MOPP level 4. c. Ensures companies inspect personnel for proper fit of protective masks and clothing. d. Implements procedures to prevent contamination of equipment and supplies IAW the TSOP. e. Ensures designated personnel conduct monitoring. f. Operates the chemical agent alarm continuously and upwind when the unit is stationary. 3. BN/TF personnel take additional actions consistent with mission. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Employ proper field sanitation measures and personal hygiene. b. Check operation of detection equipment as directed by leaders and supervisors. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Identify or construct protective shelters. d. Use the buddy team method to don and check proper wear of protective suit. e. Cover all exposed equipment and supplies. f. Monitor area by testing with detector kits or paper to determine level of contamination. g. Cover equipment and weapons using ponchos, foliage, plastic, or any material that is expendable or readily decontaminated. h. Attach M8 or M9 chemical detection paper to overgarments, equipment, and supplies. <p>4. Leaders brief and inspect personnel.</p> <p>5. Vehicle commanders and drivers prepare vehicles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Store water, rations, and equipment, not being used, in the vehicle. b. Close all hatches. <p>NOTE: Dependent on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Place covers on crew-served weapons (dependent on the tactical situation). <p>6. BN/TF conducts a rehearsal time permitting.</p> <p>7. BN/TF takes cover.</p> <p>8. BN/TF commander reports the results of monitoring IAW TSOP and guidance from higher headquarters.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL AND COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Biological/Chemical Operations (07-OPFOR-0027)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting defensive or offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. A decision has been made to employ biological or chemical weapons. Wind and weather conditions are right for the employment of biological or chemical weapons. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts biological or chemical operations IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR attacks the enemy with nerve, blood, blister, choking, incapacitant, or irritant agents or pathogenic microbes or microorganism toxins. The OPFOR delivers agents or toxins using aircraft, multiple-rocket launchers, artillery, mines, rockets, missiles, or special operations forces. The OPFOR causes disruption of enemy operations, suspension of operations, or casualties.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
TANK COMPANY, TK BN HHC INF BN (BFV)
RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) HHC INF BN (M113/ITV)
RIFLE CO INF BN (M113) ANTIARMOR CO INF BN

TASK: Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-6045)

(FM 3-3) (FM 3-3-1) (FM 3-11.4 [3-4])

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Task Force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters, and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to take immediate action necessary to establish a protective posture against a nuclear attack (friendly or enemy) in its area of operations (AO). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP) Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF prepares for a nuclear attack IAW TSOP, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF constructs or reinforces positions, briefs and inspects personnel, covers or hardens or otherwise protects equipment, positions alarms to monitor upwind of friendly positions, assumes the appropriate mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP), and takes cover.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain and situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. BN/TF receives an OPORD or FRAGO and issues warning order (WARNO) to unit elements. 3. BN/TF commander establishes and checks backup command and control procedures. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates and synchronizes actions of subordinate elements. b. Uses FRAGOs as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements. 4. BN/TF commander or designated representative supervises preparations. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensures elements deploy for the best dispersion the tactical situation will permit. b. Ensures companies position alarms and monitors upwind of friendly positions as required. c. Ensures individuals assume the appropriate MOPP. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>d. Ensures individuals know the appropriate action when an attack occurs.</p> <p>e. Ensures dosimeters are zeroed and initiates periodic monitoring.</p> <p>f. Ensures equipment is shielded or otherwise protected within the unit's capability.</p> <p>g. Ensures defensive positions or shelters are shielded or hardened within the unit's capability.</p> <p>NOTE: BN/TF leaders locate and select existing or reinforceable facilities, such as caves, ditches, ravines, culverts, overpasses, tunnels, and empty ammunition storage bunkers, for use as defensive positions or for protective shelters.</p> <p>h. Ensures platoons accomplish task steps in company task "Prepare for a nuclear attack."</p> <p>6. BN/TF conducts a rehearsal time permitting.</p> | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|----------------------------------|
| 07-2-6099 | Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (Infantry Company) | ARTEP 7-10-MTP ARTEP 7-12-MTP |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Employ Nuclear Weapons (07-OPFOR-0014)

CONDITION: All available OPFOR conventional weapons and forces have been unable stop the enemy's forward progress. The majority of OPFOR units have been destroyed. Nuclear weapons are the only alternative for the OPFOR.

STANDARD: The OPFOR employs nuclear weapons to destroy the enemy's advance. Measures are taken to ensure the enemy is unaware of the impending nuclear strike. The OPFOR is warned of a friendly strike and prepares accordingly.

ELEMENTS: HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
TANK COMPANY, TK BN HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)

TASK: React to a Chemical Attack (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-6054)

(FM 3-11.4 [3-4])

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters, and must react immediately to a chemical attack. The unit headquarters is deployed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 2. Automatic alarm(s) sound or detector paper changes color. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF reacts to a chemical attack in accordance with IAW TSOP, or the appropriate field manual(s). The BN/TF sounds the alarm (vocal or non-vocal), assumes the appropriate MOPP level, takes cover, and notifies higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements prior to conducting decontamination procedures as the tactical situation permits.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: **GO NO-GO**

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. BN/TF commander, staff, and subordinate leaders ensure Soldiers react to the sound of the chemical agent alarm or recognize the indicators for a chemical attack. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensure Soldiers spread the chemical alarm to all unit elements IAW the TSOP. b. Ensure Soldiers put on protective masks with hoods within time standards. c. Ensure Soldiers give the alarm: verbal or nonverbal. d. Ensure Soldiers use collective protective shelters and cover (if available) or any other suitable shelter to prevent further exposure to contamination. e. Ensure Soldiers decontaminate exposed skin within one minute of contact and before going into MOPP level 4. f. Assume MOPP4 as soon as possible. g. Check Soldiers to ensure protective measures are followed. h. Determine extent of and disseminate information on the area of contamination. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. Ensure contaminated elements do not move through uncontaminated elements if applicable. <p>3. Nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) personnel initiate chemical monitoring IAW TSOP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determine the type(s) of chemical(s) employed. b. Determine the extent of contamination. <p>4. BN/TF headquarters takes additional protective measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducts skin decontamination. b. Ensures Soldiers monitor their buddies for signs of chemical poisoning IAW the TSOP. c. Ensures Soldiers administer a nerve agent antidote (buddy aid) to Soldiers with symptoms of nerve agent poisoning, if applicable. d. Ensures Soldiers administer self-aid with nerve agent antidote if applicable. e. Ensures Soldiers or medical personnel perform immediate (buddy or combat lifesaver) first aid on all casualties within minutes or when the tactical situation permits. f. Conducts wipe down and performs spray down of personal equipment with M291 or M280 decontamination (DECON) kits within 15 minutes of attack. g. Protects exposed equipment and supplies. h. Uses prevention procedures such as marking contaminated areas. <p>5. Designated leader initiates unmasking procedures WITH THE CHEMICAL AGENT DETECTOR KIT (kit indicates negative results.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Chooses two or three individuals to begin unmasking procedures in a shady area if possible. b. Ensures test personnel remain unmasked for 5 minutes, then remask and clear. c. Observes test personnel for symptoms of illness for 10 minutes. d. If no symptoms of illness are detected, reports "ALL CLEAR". e. Directs the subordinate elements in the area to unmask (continues to watch for delayed symptoms). f. Ensures casualties are provided medical care. g. Reports casualties. <p>6. Designated leader initiates unmasking procedures WITHOUT THE CHEMICAL AGENT DETECTOR KIT, using M8 or M9 chemical detector paper.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Chooses two or three individuals to begin unmasking procedures in a shady area, if possible. b. Ensures test personnel remain unmasked for 5 minutes, then remask and clear. c. Observes test personnel for symptoms of illness for 10 minutes. d. If no symptoms of illness are detected, reports "ALL CLEAR". e. Directs the subordinate elements in the area to unmask. f. Ensures casualties are provided medical care. g. Reports casualties. <p>7. BN/TF commander monitors the situation and adjusts MOPP level as the nuclear, biological, or chemical (NBC) situation dictates.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensures individuals remain at the directed MOPP level. b. Ensures periodic chemical monitoring. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>8. BN/TF submits NBC 1 report to higher headquarters immediately.</p> <p>NOTE: The NBC-1 report should always include lines BRAVO (position of observer), DELTA (date-time group of detonation), HOTEL (type of agent or burst), and either CHARLIE (direction of attack from observer to include unit of measure) or FOXTROT (location of area attacked).</p> <p>9. BN/TF consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.</p> <p>10. BN/TF treats and evacuates casualties.</p> <p>11. BN/TF coordinates operational decontamination, resupply of replacements, and MOPP exchange for all contaminated elements within six hours of being contaminated.</p> <p>12. BN/TF continues operations as directed.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

- TASK:** Conduct Biological/Chemical Operations (07-OPFOR-0027)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is conducting defensive or offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. A decision has been made to employ biological or chemical weapons. Wind and weather conditions are right for the employment of biological or chemical weapons. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts biological or chemical operations IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR attacks the enemy with nerve, blood, blister, choking, incapacitant, or irritant agents or pathogenic microbes or microorganism toxins. The OPFOR delivers agents or toxins using aircraft, multiple-rocket launchers, artillery, mines, rockets, missiles, or special operations forces. The OPFOR causes disruption of enemy operations, suspension of operations, or casualties.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)

TASK: Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
 (07-1-6063)

(FM 3-3) (FM 3-5) (FM 3-11.4 [3-4])
 (FM 3-3-1) (FM 3-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters. BN/TF elements observe a brilliant flash of light and a mushroom shaped cloud, a monitoring device detects a nuclear hazard, or the unit receives a strike warning (STRIKEWARN). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF command post (CP) takes immediate protective actions, reports the attack, and treats casualties. MOPP level specified by the commander is reached, and continuous radiological monitoring is initiated IAW the TSOP, the order, or commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: **GO NO-GO**

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Soldiers take immediate protective actions. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Takes action without receiving a warning. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Closes eyes immediately. (2) Drops to the ground in a prone position, with head toward blast, if possible (if in the hatch of an armored vehicle, immediately drops down inside the vehicle). (3) Keeps head and face down and helmet on. (4) Remains prone until the blast wave passes and all debris stops falling. b. Takes action after receiving a warning. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Identifies the best available shelter (fighting positions or inside shelters). (2) Moves to the shelter. (3) Takes actions to protect themselves from the blast and radiation. Assume the appropriate mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) level. (4) Keeps clothing loosely fitted with headgear on at all times. (5) Protects eyes and minimize exposed skin areas. 2. Leaders consolidate and reorganize the unit. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reestablish chain of command. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>b. Reestablish communications within unit and with higher headquarters. c. Submit NBC 1 (Nuclear) report to higher headquarters.</p> <p>NOTE: The NBC-1 report should always include lines BRAVO (position of observer), DELTA (date time group of detonation), HOTEL (type of burst), and either CHARLIE (direction of attack from observer to include unit of measure) or FOXTROT (location of area attacked).</p> <p>d. Treat casualties. e. Report casualties. f. Evacuate casualties. g. Evaluate facilities for protection from residual radiation. h. Implement continuous monitoring. (1)Monitors buddies for signs of radiation sickness (individual Soldiers). i. Reports personnel total dose daily to higher headquarters IAW the TSOP. j. Requests guidance from higher headquarters on the operation exposure guidance (OEG) established by the higher headquarters commander.</p> <p>NOTE: If the BN/TF receives fallout, the higher headquarters commander determines whether the unit should remain in position or move based on the mission, tactical situation, radiation dosage received, or current dosage rate.</p> <p>k. Submit damage assessment to higher headquarters. l. Initiate area damage control plan as required. m. Sends updated situation reports (SITREPs) to higher headquarters as necessary.</p> <p>3. Soldiers extinguish all fires before they spread out of control. 4. Leaders ensure weapon systems are operational. 5. BN/TF conducts immediate decontamination and coordinates operational decontamination (as soon as the tactical situation permits). 6. Soldiers right overturned vehicles if possible. a. Check loss of coolant, fuel, and battery fluids. b. Perform operator's maintenance to restore moderately damaged vehicles to combat use. 7. Soldiers improve cover if applicable. 8. BN/TF continues operations as directed.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

- TASK:** Employ Nuclear Weapons (07-OPFOR-0014)
- CONDITION:** All available OPFOR conventional weapons and forces have been unable stop the enemy's forward progress. The majority of OPFOR units have been destroyed. Nuclear weapons are the only alternative for the OPFOR.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR employs nuclear weapons to destroy the enemy's advance. Measures are taken to ensure the enemy is unaware of the impending nuclear strike. The OPFOR is warned of a friendly strike and prepares accordingly.

ELEMENTS: TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)

TASK: Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-6072)

(FM 19-15)

(FM 19-40)

(FM 100-14)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to secure civilians to protect them from injuries that could be incurred during BN/TF combat operations. The civilians may be refugees and some may be inhabitants of the area in which the BN/TF is operating. Some civilians may be openly hostile toward friendly forces. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and non-combatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF secures civilians during operations in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF identifies and segregates combatants and non-combatants, searches them, safeguards them, and moves them out of the immediate area of operations (AO). The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: **GO NO-GO**

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>NOTE: The term "enemy" is used, in this outline, to signify an actual enemy force, a belligerent, or an individual or group that is or may become hostile to United States (US) forces. The term "battlefield", when used in this outline, is synonymous with the area of operations (AO).</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive the order and develop a plan for securing the civilians. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. b. Conduct a map reconnaissance if not familiar with the AO. c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets required to support the mission. (2) Define the battlefield environment. (3) Describe battlefield effects. (4) Evaluate the enemy. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (5) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs). d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP) based on the factors of METT-TC. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces. (2) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserves. (3) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems. (4) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets. (5) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets. (6) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINES). (7) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons including the ranges of delivery systems. (8) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs). e. Request interpreters to help interface with the local populace if necessary. f. Develop control measures for expected or unexpected situations. g. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Identify security elements. (2) Identify search elements. (3) Identify guard elements. h. Designate an intermediate collection point to deal with large numbers of civilians. i. Coordinate for additional combat, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets as required. j. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating System (BOS) based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis . <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Plan fire support. (2) Plan engineer support. (3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support. (4) Plan air defense (AD) support (if support has been provided by higher headquarters). (5) Plan CSS. k. Select and designate methods of communications. l. Plan casualty evacuation. m. Develop a media plan. 3. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept. 4. BN/TF prepares for mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. b. Conducts extensive intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) IAW the commander's intent. c. Conducts precombat checks IAW the commander's intent. d. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent. e. Conducts rehearsals if possible. f. Positions forces IAW the plan. 5. BN/TF executes the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establishes and maintains 360 degree and three-dimensional security in the AO in which civilians are gathered. b. Segregates civilians identified as being combatants or suspected war criminals and treats them like enemy prisoners of war (EPWs). c. Searches civilians. d. Keeps identification papers with civilians under all circumstances, regardless of status. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Restrains and detains noncombatants who do not follow instructions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Safeguards noncombatants and provides humane but firm treatment at all times. (2) Moves noncombatants away from fire fights and the immediate combat area. f. Provides food, water, and medical attention based upon the medical ROE for civilian medical treatment. g. Assigns guards to escort civilians out of the immediate AO. h. Evacuates civilians to a processing and reception station or to an intermediate collection point. i. Reports this situation and status in a timely manner to higher headquarters. j. Gives proper consideration to the situation of the press and local officials. k. Follows ROE and ROI guidance as to whether the local civilians and officials are to be considered friendly, hostile, or uncertain. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 6. BN/TF leaders assess the operation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation. b. Ensure civilians are treated with respect. c. Enforce ROE and ROI. d. Ensure elements understand procedures for dealing with news media. e. Use FRAGOs as necessary to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent. 7. BN/TF intelligence (S2) section processes combatants or suspected war criminals as enemy prisoners of war (EPWs), IAW the OPORD, FRAGO, TSOP, or other guidance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspects and processes captured documents. b. Inspects and processes captured material and equipment. c. Coordinates with the unit logistics officer (S4) to evacuate captured material equipment and EPWs. d. Identifies and reports time sensitive information to higher headquarters immediately using a SPOTREP with at least an IMMEDIATE precedence. 8. BN/TF continues operations as directed. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|--|--|
| 07-1-2000 | Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|---|--|
| 07-1-2009 | Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2018 | Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2027 | Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2054 | Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-4000 | Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-4009 | Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5000 | Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5054 | Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6009 | Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) ANTIARMOR CO INF BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI) TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC, TANK BN (XXI) HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (M113) TANK COMPANY, TK BN
 HHC INF BN (BFV)

TASK: Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-6081)

| | | |
|--------------------|------------|--------------|
| (DA FORM 1355-1-R) | (FM 5-20) | (FM 5-170) |
| (DA FORM 5032-R) | (FM 5-34) | (FM 101-5) |
| (FM 3-34 [5-100]) | (FM 5-102) | (FM 101-5-1) |
| (FM 3-34.2) | (FM 5-103) | (FM 100-14) |
| (FM 5-71-2) | | |

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission (offensive or defensive) at a specified time and location. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts mobility, countermobility, or survivability operations IAW the TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF integrates and synchronizes battlefield operating systems (BOS) based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). The BN/TF conducts extensive reconnaissance of enemy and friendly approaches, routes, and terrain. The BN/TF executes engineer tasks IAW the commander's intent. The BN/TF sites obstacles to provide force protection or breaches obstacles to provide freedom of maneuver. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as the result of friendly fire.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|-----------|--------------|
| 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. BN/TF engineer and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and plan using the military decision-making process (MDMP). a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. b. Conduct a map reconnaissance. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets. (2) Define the battlefield environment. (3) Describe battlefield effects. (4) Evaluate the enemy. (5) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs). d. Develop the situation template (SITEMP). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces. (2) Include enemy counterattack objectives and the location of enemy reserves. (3) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems. (4) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets. (5) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets. (6) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINES). (7) Include enemy's use of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons, including the ranges of delivery systems. (8) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs). e. Develop intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) plan, and employ ISR assets to conduct a physical reconnaissance throughout the MDMP. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides a detailed picture of the enemy situation and continuous updates. (2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR) and accomplishes his intent. (3) Develop an ISR plan that ensures friendly obstacles are observed. (4) Sustain the ISR effort throughout planning and preparation phases, updating the plan and orders as required. f. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Designate the main effort as required. (2) Attach combat support elements such as engineers in direct support (DS). (3) Designate the supporting effort. (4) Designate a breach element as required. (5) Designate an assault element as required. (6) Designate a reserve as necessary or as directed. g. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating System (BOS) based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Plan fire support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Synchronize fires to suppress, neutralize, or destroy critical enemy forces that most affect the unit's mission. (b) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets. (c) Plan obscuration fires as required. (d) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary. (e) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort. (f) Plan fires to cover friendly obstacles. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (g) Plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves. (h) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets to prevent fratricide. (2) Plan engineer support (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follow.) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed for planned breach sites, possible bypasses, defending enemy positions or key weapons, or friendly support by fire (SBF) positions. (b) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and R&S plan. (c) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units. (d) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis. (e) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation. (f) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required. (g) Develop a scheme-of-obstacle overlay and obstacle-execution matrix IAW the mission. (3) Plan to support <i>defensive</i> operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Develop a plan that focuses on maintaining the unit's freedom of maneuver. (b) Plan an obstacle system that not only attacks the enemy where desired but also assists counterattacks and facilitates future operations IAW the commander's intent. (c) Identify critical engineer tasks early. (d) Develop operations security (OPSEC) measures and a specific counterreconnaissance plan (both prevent premature disclosure of the defense and are essential). (e) Task organization engineers so they can support a rapid transition to the offense. (f) Designate engineers to support the reserve. (g) Plan obstacles that allow spoiling and counterattacks to succeed. (h) Designate engineers that are not held in reserve but remain committed and work on the commander's priority tasks. (i) Plan obstacles for forward deployed forces. (j) Clear counterattack routes of obstacles. (k) Prepare breaches through friendly obstacles. (l) Construct combat roads and trails for counterattacks and lateral movement between fighting positions. (m) Plan to conduct breaching and assault-bridging operations for reserves or the counterattack force. (4) Plan to support <i>offensive</i> operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Develop a plan that focuses on sustaining the offense's momentum. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (b) Plan for a highly mobile engineer force well forward and integrated into maneuver formations. (c) Designate engineers or maneuver elements that are responsible for reporting and marking lanes or bypasses through or around obstacles. (d) Identify special considerations for engineer equipment such as replacement bridges for armored launchers, follow-on tactical bridging, lift capability for mine-clearing line charge (MICLIC) reloading, and lane-marking materials to replenish marking systems. (e) Plan for combined-arms obstacle-breaching rehearsals to ensure that all elements involved are synchronized. (f) Identify general-engineering requirements that will increase during offensive combat since lines of communications (LOCs) will lengthen. (g) Plan for an on-call rapid-mining and rapid-obstacle emplacement capability that is essential for flank security. (h) Designate engineers to emplace obstacles rapidly to protect attacking forces from enemy counterattacks once on the objective. (i) Plan for a transition to the defense (This is essential because of the long lead time needed to obtain and move engineer Class IV and Class V materials.) (5) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the BN/TF ISR plan. (b) Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations. (c) Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit. (d) Integrate and synchronize the use of smoke to support critical actions such as breaching or assaults (Ensure artillery and mechanized smoke complement each other.) (e) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites. (6) Plan air defense (AD) support (if support has been provided by higher headquarters). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure adequate AD of the unit during movement. (b) Shift assets as required by phase of the operation. (c) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during breaching operations or movements through restrictive terrain. (7) Plan CSS. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements. (b) Ensure adequate CSS support to the ISR effort (The S4 plans and integrates timely resupply and evacuation support of forward ISR assets is well planned and integrated into the ISR plan.) (c) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations such as breaching or assaults by forward positioning of support assets. (d) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**GO NO-GO**

| | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (e) Integrate refueling and resupply operations with the scheme of maneuver. (f) Establish drop points for movement of key CSS assets. (g) Plan on-order control measures, logistics release points (LRPs), unit maintenance collection points (UMCPs), and ambulance exchange points (if applicable). h. Conduct risk management. <p>3. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.</p> <p>4. BN/TF prepares for the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. b. Conducts extensive ISR of enemy and friendly approaches, routes, and terrain. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Locates all obstacles. (2) Determines size and boundaries. (3) Determines composition and breaching requirements. (4) Determines gaps and bypass routes. (5) Detects enemy weapons covering each obstacle. (6) Determines available amount of cover and concealment on routes and approaches. (7) Determines best terrain for sighting friendly obstacles. c. Conducts pre-combat checks. d. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent. e. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible. f. Positions forces IAW the plan. <p>5. BN/TF executes defensive tasks.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Executes mobile defense tasks IAW the commander's intent. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Constructs combat roads and trails to allow friendly forces in defensive positions to reposition from one position to another. (2) Sites tactical obstacles to disrupt and delay enemy forces, to assist in the separation of echelons, and to turn the enemy into engagement and objective areas . (3) Sites fixed obstacles to support the enemy's destruction by fires. (4) Assists in developing survivability positions in depth. (5) Breach friendly obstacles to allow freedom of maneuver for the unit. (6) Breach enemy obstacles emplaced by air, artillery, or ground means. b. Executes area defense tasks IAW the commander's intent. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Retains centralized control over engineer elements and their resources. (2) Withdraws engineers to work on subsequent defenses in depth (once the battle is underway). (3) Sites tactical obstacles to- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Force the enemy into engagement areas (EAs). (b) Block his further advance. (c) Block the enemy from using avenues of approach that will allow him to avoid the main defense. (d) Fragment the enemy force and allow the defender to deal with only a small portion of the enemy at a time (disrupting obstacles used just forward of EAs). | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>6. BN/TF breaches obstacles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reports obstacles or breaches. b. Reports all friendly obstacles and existing or enemy obstacles that impact on friendly maneuver or movement and locations of breaches are reported to the higher headquarters. c. Makes the breach quickly considering the size and coverage of the obstacle. d. Marks lanes and distributes information within unit. e. Guides follow-on elements through the breach without any losses due to mines. <p>7. BN/TF conducts survivability actions whenever the unit stops for more than one hour.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Positions all vehicles in full defilade positions and uses available concealment and camouflage. b. Protects all dismounted Soldiers against indirect fire. c. Ensures elements are not positioned on obvious terrain (terrain that would be picked by the enemy on a map reconnaissance). d. Ensures all vehicles have alternate and supplementary positions and covered routes (natural or prepared). <p>8. BN/TF conducts survivability actions whenever the unit stops for longer than eight hours. Ensures all Soldiers have positions with 18 inches of overhead cover.</p> <p>9. BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.</p> | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|--|--|
| 07-1-1009 | Conduct a Bypass (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-1207 | Conduct Tactical Movement (Mounted) (Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-1252 | Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|--|--|
| 07-1-3000 | Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP |
| 07-1-3009A | Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5027 | Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5198 | Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct a Counterattack (07-OPFOR-0028)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has been ordered to counterattack following a disrupted or halted enemy penetration attempt or while the enemy is consolidating and reorganizing on the objective. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available. The OPFOR has indirect fire and engineer support available. The OPFOR has gained air superiority.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the counterattack IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR uses short, intense artillery and air preparation, attacks the enemy flanks or rear, or exploits gaps and ruptures in the enemy formations. The OPFOR prevents consolidation and reorganization and evacuation of wounded enemy personnel. The OPFOR gains or regains terrain and destroys or captures the remaining enemy personnel and equipment.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leaders should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

- TASK:** Defend a Trench Line (07-OPFOR-0031)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is occupying a defensive trench. The enemy attempts to enter and clear the trench line. The OPFOR has all necessary personnel and equipment.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR defends the trench line IAW the operation order or commander's guidance. The OPFOR kills, captures, or forces the attacking enemy to withdraw. The OPFOR counterattacks, as necessary, to regain control of the trench line.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.
- TASK:** Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.
- TASK:** Defend (07-OPFOR-0019)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is conducting defensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is occupying key terrain and is in prepared fighting positions. All assigned equipment and personnel are available. Indirect fire, close air, and engineer support are available to the OPFOR.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts the defense IAW the operation order or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR defeats, repels, disrupts, or destroys the attacking enemy and retains key terrain.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.
- TASK:** Defend an Obstacle (07-OPFOR-0020)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has employed obstacles and is covering them with direct and indirect fires. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The enemy has indirect-fire support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR defends obstacles IAW the operation order or commander's guidance. The OPFOR covers the obstacles by fire. The OPFOR fixes the enemy in the obstacles and destroys the enemy by fire.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) ANTIARMOR CO INF BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
 HHC INF BN (BFV)

TASK: Conduct a Civil Military Operation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-4000)

(FM 3-07 [100-23]) (FM 7-85) (FM 41-10)
 (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) (FM 19-15) (FM 101-5)
 (FM 7-20) (FM 19-40)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Task Force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct operations at a specified time and location that will require cooperation and coordination with civilian authorities. The BN/TF commander's obligation to civil and military authority is defined. The BN/TF has been augmented with a S5 and a civil affairs detachment support team (CADST). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and non-combatants may be present in the operational environment. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts a civil military operation IAW the TSOP, the appropriate field manual, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF identifies mission-essential tasks or mission requirements. The BN/TF analyzes the impact of the operation on the civilian populace, and the impact of the civilian populace on the operation. The BN/TF plans operations security (OPSEC). The BN/TF establishes and maintains close and continuing relations with local civil authorities, and US government and nongovernmental agencies in the area of operations (AO). The BN/TF develops a dislocated civilian (DC) plan. Force protection measures are applied to all phases of the operation. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: **GO NO-GO**

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>NOTE: The term "enemy" is used, in this outline, to signify an actual enemy force, a belligerent, or an individual or group that is or may become hostile to United States (US) forces. The term "battlefield", when used in this outline, is synonymous with the area of operations (AO).</p> <p>1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identify mission-essential tasks or mission requirements required for mission accomplishment. b. Issues warning order (WARNO) to civil affairs direct support team (CADST). c. Conduct a map reconnaissance. d. Conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Employ all available information-gathering assets. (2) Define the battlefield environment. (3) Describe battlefield effects. (4) Evaluate the enemy. (5) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs). e. Develop the situation template (SITEMP). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include location and orientation of enemy forces. (2) Include location and range of all enemy direct and indirect fire systems. (3) Include location of enemy target acquisition assets. (4) Include positioning of enemy air defense artillery (ADA) assets. (5) Include enemy obstacle systems, including tactical and protective obstacles and scatterable mines (SCATMINES). (6) Include likely enemy air avenues of approach (AAAs). f. Employ intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) assets early in the MDMP process. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU, and to support the planning process. (2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR), and accomplishes his intent. (3) Include redundant information-gathering systems to ensure continuous flow of information to higher headquarters and correspondingly from higher headquarters to the unit. (4) Include ingress and egress routes for positions, limits of fire, and obstacles. g. Organize the unit to accomplish the mission. h. Coordinate with higher headquarters and requests further civil affairs (CA) assets such as specialty teams. i. Analyze the impact of the mission on the civilian populace. j. Analyze the impact of the civilian populace on military operations. k. Provides staff assistance and guidance on command policy to subordinate units. l. Determines CA activities to assist in the accomplishment of the mission. m. Determine the location of critical environmental resources, assets, and facilities such as nuclear power plants, water or sewage treatment facilities, and oil refineries. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Indicate which resources might be afforded special protection. (2) Determine value of asset to the mission. (3) Determine effects on public health if the asset is destroyed. (4) Determine danger of significant regional or global contamination. (5) Determine potential post-conflict clean-up costs. (6) Determine economic viability of the area. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> n. Identify cultural considerations within the operational area, to include religious, social, political, and economical elements. o. Determine location and site of joint commissions, local government and nongovernment meetings, and civilian gatherings that should be attended by unit representative. p. Plan operations security (OPSEC). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ensure leaders have proper clearances to review plans (Little time exists to request clearances and background investigations.) (2) Plan redundancy of systems, capabilities and plans in every aspect of a contingency operation (Overlapping forces or time sequencing provided backup without requiring more forces to be committed to the overall operation.) (3) Develop procedures for decentralized operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure subordinates understand the commander's intent two levels up. (b) Ensure subordinates understand complex ROE. (c) Ensure subordinates understand the maneuver plan. q. Develop force protection measures. r. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating System (BOS) based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Plan fire support. (2) Plan engineer support (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follow.) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed. (b) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan. (c) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units. (d) Identify required mobility, countermobility, and survivability tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis. (e) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation. (3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support. (4) Plan air defense (AD) support (if support has been provided by higher headquarters). (5) Plan CSS. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements. (b) Ensure adequate CSS to the reconnaissance effort (Timely resupply and evacuation of forward reconnaissance assets is planned and integrated into the ISR plan.) (c) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations if any are identified. (d) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (e) Integrate refueling and resupply operations with the scheme of maneuver. (f) Establish drop points for movement of key CSS assets. (g) Plan on-order control measures, logistics release points (LRPs), unit maintenance collection points (UMCPs), and ambulance exchange points (if applicable). (h) Determine host nation or area resources available for the mission. (i) Organize resources in accordance with (IAW) the classes of supply. s. Develop a DC plan to minimize civilian interference with military operations and to provide care for DCs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Estimate the number of DCs, their points of origin, and anticipated direction of movement. (2) Identify requirements for care of civilians (medical, food, and water). (3) Assess the ability of foreign nation or host nation to solve DC situation. (4) Identify need for additional CA assets. (5) Coordinate with the S4 for DC routes. (6) Coordinate for military police (MP) support along DC routes within the AO. (7) Coordinate requirement for military intelligence (MI) screening and integration support. (8) Design a plan with control measures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Establish collection points and assembly areas. (b) Establish routes away from main supply routes (MSR). (c) Establish food, water, and medical needs of DCs. (d) Establish maximum foreign nation, host nation, non-governmental organization (NGO), or private voluntary organization (PVO) support. (9) Disseminate DC plan and route overlays to US and allied military, and to the local government and populace. (10) Monitors process to completion. t. Conduct risk management. <p>3. Civil affairs officer (S5) and CA team prepares CA annex and portions of the operation plan (OPLAN) for the unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assigns aspects of the preparation to S5 section providing guidance, editing, and validation of the end product. b. Issues or writes plans IAW the COAs selected by the unit commander and the planning guidance issued. c. Includes primary, alternate, contingency plans (CONPLAN), and emergency plans based on the criticality of the task. d. Includes in appropriate CONPLANS any reasonable or anticipated changes to the civil-military operations (CMOs) mission such as follow-on missions or other missions to be executed on order from the tasking headquarters. e. Presents the complete plan to the unit commander for review as part of the OPOD or operations plan (OPLAN). <p>4. S5 or CA team or staff judge advocate (SJA) advises the commander of legal obligations and moral considerations, and he identifies civilian casualty figures, property destruction, and infrastructure dislocation.</p> <p>5. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPOD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept.</p> | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>6. BN/TF prepares for the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establishes liaison with local officials. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Coordinates for linguist support. (2) Identifies local officials. (3) Contacts local officials. b. Establishes and maintains close and continuing relations with other US government agencies with a responsibility toward the civilian community in the AO. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Secures list of agencies operating in AO. (2) Identifies contact persons within the agencies. (3) Determines mission and area of responsibility (AOR) of agencies. (4) Establishes contact with agencies. c. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. d. Conducts extensive reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S). e. Conducts precombat checks as necessary. f. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent. g. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible. h. Establishes medical civic action programs (MEDCAPs) to provide health care to noncombatants, incorporating US doctors and local host nation medical personnel. i. Briefs subordinates on the danger of unmapped mine fields or booby traps in the AO. j. Positions forces. k. Completes host-nation resource estimate. | | |
| <p>7. BN/TF executes the CMO.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducts combat, stability, support, enabling, combat support (CS), and CSS operations as directed (Operations may be conducted in an urban environment.) b. Concentrates engineers on both battle-damage repair and the upgrading of utilities to improve local infrastructure. c. Maintains an information field (CMO database). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Maintains area assessment and study and resource file database input from CADST. | | |
| <p>NOTE: An area study is normally a filed document that contains information obtained in advance of the need. Area assessment begins upon receipt of the mission and supplements the study.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (2) Maintains copies and working knowledge of existing treaties, status of forces agreement and international law and agreements applicable to the AO. (3) Requests information necessary to satisfy the priority intelligence requirement (PIR) from applicable sources, to include foreign nation information. (4) Routes intelligence information requests through the unit S2. (5) Identifies information received that satisfies PIR. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>(6) Modifies previously developed estimates and plans IAW the latest information available.</p> <p>(7) Notifies CADST leader of modified estimates and plans.</p> <p>(8) Notifies other concerned (higher, lower, or adjacent) staff sections of information that satisfies intelligence requirements (IR).</p> <p>(9) Updates, in conjunction with the unit S2, the commander's PIR list IAW the latest information available and requirements for additional commander's critical information requirements (CCIR) that arise from modified estimate and-plans.</p> <p>d. Maintains liaison with local civil authorities and nongovernmental organizations.</p> <p>(1) Makes face-to-face contact with key officials.</p> <p>(2) Determines degree of support and trust of officials.</p> <p>9. BN/TF public affairs office (PAO) or personnel officer (S1) supervises media support, control, and briefings.</p> <p>10. BN/TF leaders assess the operation.</p> <p>a. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation.</p> <p>b. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.</p> <p>11. BN/TF complies with ROE or ROI.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|--|--|
| 07-1-1216 | Defend a Built-up Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-1234 | Establish a Base of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-1270 | Conduct Area Security Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2009 | Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2018 | Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|---|--------------------------------------|
| 07-1-2027 | Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-3000 | Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5000 | Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5027 | Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5054 | Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5063 | Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5108 | Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5135 | Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5198 | Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6009 | Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6072 | Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

- TASK:** Conduct Reconnaissance (07-OPFOR-0010)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to obtain tactical information about the enemy's location, disposition, intent, and activities. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel as well as engineer support are available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducted the reconnaissance mission by penetrating the enemy's outposts with mounted or dismounted patrols, and then obtaining and reporting required information IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintained focus; continuity; aggressiveness; timeliness; camouflage, concealment, and deception; accuracy; and reliability. The OPFOR reconnaissance elements completed the reconnaissance mission undetected.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy unit commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.
- TASK:** Conduct Counterreconnaissance (07-OPFOR-0011)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is ordered to deny information to the enemy reconnaissance elements by active and passive means. All necessary personnel and equipment are available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts the counterreconnaissance IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conceals friendly information through operational security measures and engages and destroys the enemy reconnaissance elements.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.
- TASK:** Execute Actions on Contact (07-OPFOR-0015)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR makes contact with the enemy by receipt of direct fires, indirect fires, or direct observation. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available. The OPFOR has indirect-fire, close air, and engineer support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR executed actions on contact IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR fired and maneuvered to rapidly rout the enemy, seize the initiative, and create advantageous conditions for subsequent operations.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.
- TASK:** Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (07-OPFOR-0016)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. It has dispatched small teams into the enemy rear area to disrupt combat service support (CSS) operations. All necessary personnel and equipment are available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR locates the enemy rear support bases and command and control facilities. It destroys supplies and equipment, delays and disrupts CSS operations, or inflicts casualties through probes IAW the operation order and the commander's guidance.
- TASK:** Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)

- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.
- TASK:** Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.
- TASK:** Conduct Biological/Chemical Operations (07-OPFOR-0027)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is conducting defensive or offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. A decision has been made to employ biological or chemical weapons. Wind and weather conditions are right for the employment of biological or chemical weapons. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts biological or chemical operations IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR attacks the enemy with nerve, blood, blister, choking, incapacitant, or irritant agents or pathogenic microbes or microorganism toxins. The OPFOR delivers agents or toxins using aircraft, multiple-rocket launchers, artillery, mines, rockets, missiles, or special operations forces. The OPFOR causes disruption of enemy operations, suspension of operations, or casualties.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Air Attack (07-OPFOR-0029)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers have been identified and are susceptible to air attack. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR's fixed-wing combat aircraft and attack helicopters are available to provide aerial fire support to ground maneuver forces.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes the air attack using fixed- and rotor-winged aircraft IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers are destroyed, delayed, or forced to retreat.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Employ Deception Measures (07-OPFOR-0030)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is ordered to employ deception measures to confuse the enemy and to prevent the enemy from determining the OPFOR intentions or activities. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available. The OPFOR has indirect fire, close air, and engineer support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR employs deception measures IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR constructs dummy positions; simulates troop movements by such means as the use of civilian vehicles to portray movement to radar or marching refugees to portray movement of troops in the rear; conducts feints or demonstrations; employs manipulative, simulative, and imitative deception electronic measures; or avoids patterns or obvious movements that reveal the time or intent of an operation.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Evade/Resist Capture (07-OPFOR-0024)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR soldiers are being overrun or conducting covert operations against the enemy, which makes them susceptible to capture.

STANDARD: The OPFOR evades/resists capture. If captured, the OPFOR personnel refrains from divulging information about their operations/unit and attempts to escape using every means available.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

TASK: Conduct Infiltration/Exfiltration (07-OPFOR-0018)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR infiltrates/exfiltrates personnel through the enemy lines. All necessary personnel and equipment are available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts the infiltration/exfiltration IAW the operation order or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR determines gaps in the enemy's lines/defenses and infiltrates/exfiltrates without being detected. The OPFOR accomplishes the commander's intent (gains information, attacks a position from the rear, conducts raids or ambushes, captures prisoners, seizes key terrain, or aids the main attack).

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
 HHC INF BN (BFV) HHC INF BN (M113/ITV)
 ANTIARMOR CO INF BN RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)

TASK: Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-4018)

(FM 4-0 [100-10]) (FM 4-20.102 [10-500-2]) (FM 10-27-4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS) if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts S4 operations IAW TSOP, the appropriate field manual, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The S4 establishes the combat trains command post (CTCP) as the Rear CP in conjunction with the S1. The S4 plans, coordinates, and participates in developing courses of action (COAs) and creating orders. The S4 section prepares, updates, and maintains the logistics estimate, and disseminates combat service support (CSS) information. The S4 monitors the execution of decisions for supportability. The S4 section monitors tactical operations to provide appropriate and uninterrupted supplies and services to the BN/TF. The S4 section considers ROE and ROI during planning and enforces ROE and ROI during execution of operations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: **GO NO-GO**

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>2. BN/TF logistics (S4) section establishes the combat trains command post (CTCP) in conjunction with the personnel officer (S1).</p> <p>NOTE: Support battalions provide different CSS augmentation to infantry battalions. In the limited conversion division, maneuver battalions receive a forward support company from the forward support battalion (FSB). In the Stryker brigade combat team (SBCT), the infantry battalion receives a combat repair team from the brigade support battalion (BSB). Legacy infantry battalions retain their maintenance and support platoons, and thus receive no augmentation from their support battalion.</p> <p>a. Identifies staff working areas that facilitate immediate access of staff personnel to all required information.</p> <p>b. Establishes local area network (LAN) connections as appropriate.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Sets up conventional or digital maps, map overlays, and informational displays which show the current tactical situations of all friendly and enemy forces affecting the unit's mission in accordance with (IAW) TSOP. d. Sets up conventional or digital status boards. e. Prepares sleep plan that allows support of tactical operations. f. Establishes policy file, records, staff journals, and section workbooks. <p>3. BN/TF S4 identifies both continuous and mission-support CSS requirements of the unit to the FSB/BSB commander and his support operations officer (SPO).</p> <p>4. BN/TF S4 section participates in the military decision-making process (MDMP).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducts mission analysis. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Retrieves a copy of higher headquarters operations plan (OPLAN) or OPORD and service support annex. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Identifies specified and implied logistics tasks from the base order, annexes, and overlays. (b) Identifies constraints and limitations and the acceptable level of risk that may have an impact on the brigade mission. (c) Identifies essential logistic tasks necessary to accomplish the mission. (2) Forecasts vehicle or weapon status. (3) Identifies available transportation assets. (4) Determines supply status of classes I, II, III, IV, V, and IX. (5) Determines maintenance status. b. Provides commander with input on CSS and supply operations that affect the unit mission. c. Receives commander's planning guidance after briefing mission analysis. d. Prepares or updates the logistics estimate. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Establishes a CSS planning cell at the unit main CP to participate in staff planning. (2) Prepares and briefs the logistics estimate and recommends a course of action that supports the maneuver plan logistically. (3) Coordinates estimate with other affected staff sections (higher, lower, and adjacent). (4) Submits logistics estimate to operations officer (S3), executive officer (XO), and FSB/BSB SPO. <p>5. BN/TF S4 section conducts planning.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reviews mission, task organization, and concept of operations for all subordinate elements in the unit. b. Reviews higher headquarters' CSS plans. c. Identifies branches and sequels. d. Determines density of equipment of each subordinate unit. e. Anticipates enemy CSS capabilities. f. Determines mission-related consumption rates. g. Required varieties and quantities of classes of supply (Classes I, II, III, IV, V, and IX). h. Plans for the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Plans for special equipment, supplies, and services. (2) Plans for assets to separate, disassemble, configure, uncrate, or transload supplies above normal requirements. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>(3) Plans for reconstitution. (4) Plans for reorganization. (5) Plans for support of reconnaissance forces, security operations, or deception efforts. (6) Plans for class IV/V obstacle material. (7) Plans for pre-positioning of supplies. (8) Plans for emergency resupply. (9) Plans for attrition. (10) Plans for Weapon System Replacement Operations (WSRO). (11) Plans field sanitation in coordination with the battalion surgeon (medical platoon leader). (12) Plans for transportation of supplies, replacements, deceased, and enemy prisoners of war (EPW).</p> <p>NOTE: The responsibility for patient evacuation rests with the level of combat health support (CHS) to which the patient is to be evacuated. The S4 prepares plans for non-standard casualty evacuation for mass casualty situations.</p> <p>(13) Plans for construction of facilities except for fortifications. (14) Plans for clothing and equipment exchange. (15) Plans for food preparation and water purification. (16) Plans mortuary affairs.</p> <p>NOTE: The unit is responsible for unit level search, recovery, evacuation, and inventory of human remains and personal effects.</p> <p>(17) Plans for laundry and shower services. (18) Plans for battlefield procurement and contracting (The S4 coordinates with higher headquarters or BSB contingency contracting officers for support.) (19) Plans for selection and for recommendation of main supply route(s) (MSRs) and logistical support areas to the S3.</p> <p>h. Identifies and analyzes current and future problems.</p> <p>6. BN/TF S4 section, in conjunction with the FSB/BSB SPO, maintains the current status of equipment readiness in the unit. a. Maintains consolidated unit weapons combat power status board. b. Monitors maintenance operations to evaluate the capability to support current operations. c. Provides the commander and staff with evaluation of maintenance conditions and their impact on current or future unit operations. d. Recommends maintenance priorities to the unit commander and S3. e. Coordinates with the FSB/BSB maintenance status and unit maintenance priorities. f. Coordinates with the XO and FSB/BSB for execution of WSRO.</p> <p>7. BN/TF S4 section processes, analyzes, and disseminates information.</p> <p>8. BN/TF S4 section compiles, authenticates, and distributes the administrative and logistics plan or order, paragraph 4 of the operation plan (OPLAN), OPORD, or CSS annex.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>a. Coordinates with personnel officer (S1) for preparation of plans or orders.</p> <p>(1) Incorporates information from the S1 regarding unit strength reporting, personnel management, enemy prisoners of war (EPW) status, and unit discipline, law, and order.</p> <p>(2) Coordinates with the unit S1, the support battalion SPO, the G1, and G4 to provide input to the weapons system replacement operations (WSRO) plan.</p> <p>(3) Confirms and lists logistics support requirements for unit intelligence operations with the unit S2.</p> <p>(4) Electronic warfare (EW) equipment and supplies.</p> <p>(5) Psychological operations (PSYOP) equipment and supplies.</p> <p>(6) Confirms host nation support (HNS) and lists logistics support requirements for unit civil and military operations based on the unit civil affairs or PSYOPS officer determination of mission to support civilian population.</p> <p>(a) Other civilian support requirements.</p> <p>(b) Coordinates with the unit civil affairs or PSYOPS officer to plan for control of civilian refugees with the unit S3.</p> <p>(c) Coordinates with the FSB/BSB SPO to complete plans for support of tactical operations, based on war gaming and the unit commander's decisions. Incorporates relevant information in unit service support annex.</p> <p>(7) Number of civilian refugees and internees in each collection camp, assembly area, and dislocated civilian camp requiring logistical support from the unit.</p> <p>b. Coordinates with the battalion surgeon to incorporate health services support into the service support paragraph or annex.</p> <p>c. Coordinates with the battalion chaplain to incorporate the religious support into the service support paragraph or annex.</p> <p>d. Coordinates with the battalion S6 to identify signal maintenance support into the service support paragraph or annex.</p> <p>e. Issues CSS annex to OPORD or OPLAN.</p> <p>f. Approves and distributes administrative/logistics annex.</p> <p>g. Prepares paragraph 4 of the OPLAN or OPORD and the CSS annex.</p> <p>h. Submits paragraph 4 of the OPLAN or OPORD to S3.</p> <p>i. Develops administrative movement plans, as required.</p> <p>j. Prepares CSS overlay.</p> <p>k. Prepares logistics execution matrix.</p> <p>l. Recommends support and supply priorities and controlled supply rates (CSR).</p> <p>m. Determines required supply rates (RSR).</p> <p>9. BN/TF S4 section tracks tactical operations to provide the appropriate and uninterrupted supplies and services to the unit, based on current and anticipated logistics requirement.</p> <p>a. Plans transportation and movement.</p> | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Reviews and analyzes all unit plans and orders for transportation impact. (2) Provides transportation input to all fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) issued subsequent to issue of OPORD or OPLAN. (3) Coordinates with higher elements for additional transportation assets, if required. (4) Assists the S3 plans element in planning and preparing tactical and administrative motor marches, and prepares administrative movement orders and march tables. (5) Selects MSRs and other supply routes. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensures route supports the heaviest vehicle in the unit. (b) Ensures refugees do not block routes. (c) Ensures route supports bi-directional traffic. (6) Assists the S3 in planning for logistical airlift. b. Coordinates transportation and movement. c. Identifies transportation assets available in the unit. d. Coordinates routes, traffic control, and timetables with the G4, support battalion SPO, and higher headquarters' support command staff. e. Coordinates with higher movement control elements when additional assets are required and organic assets are unavailable or inappropriate for use. f. Monitors and coordinates emergency resupply by air with the unit assistant operations officer (S3-Air). g. Coordinates administrative troop movement requirements with subordinate units. h. Coordinates with the intelligence (S2) section to determine enemy capabilities that may interrupt use of routes (such as air threat, partisan activity, and chemical use). i. Coordinates routes with the military police (MP) officer in the maneuver support cell or augmented highway traffic control. 10. BN/TF S4 section supervises and facilitates transportation and movement. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains contact with higher, subordinate, and adjacent movement control elements. b. Provides technical assistance to all subordinate units on transportation requirements. c. Continuously monitors transportation assets and advises the S3 current operations element when additional assets are required. d. Provides the movement control officer with guidance, basic plans, and assistance. 11. BN/TF S4 section tracks the status of supplies. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensures accurate records of supplies on hand are maintained. b. Tracks the requisition, acquisition, storage, and distribution of supplies. c. Tracks the distribution of the CSR of ammunition. d. Performs coordination with higher headquarters' G4 or BSB SPO for procurement of local civilian supplies. e. Coordinates with augmenting units to identify requirements for nonstandard supplies or repair parts such as those used in psychological operations. 12. BN/TF S4 section coordinates reception of augmentations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Receives augmentations and meets logistics requirements without degradation in the support provided to the unit. b. Coordinates with higher headquarters for additional maintenance assets. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>c. Coordinates integration of augmentations into CSS plans. d. Establishes priorities for employment. e. Maintains CSS status of augmentations.</p> <p>13. BN/TF S4 monitors execution of command decisions. a. Monitors the execution of logistics instructions, plans, and orders. b. Formulates and supervises policies concerning logistics operations. c. Ensures that organic, assigned, and supporting units accomplish tactical level missions in support of the unit commander's scheme of maneuver in the area of logistics.</p> <p>14. BN/TF S4 analyzes and clearly articulates all logistical information that can affect the mission, particularly commander's critical information requirements (CCIR). a. Records actions taken in staff journals. b. Uses information to provide battle updates and shift change briefings. (1) Logistics overlay. (2) Logistics synch matrix. (3) MSR status.</p> <p>15. BN/TF S4 integrates risk management into CSS plans/operations.</p> <p>16. BN/TF S4 section considers ROE and ROI during planning.</p> <p>17. BN/TF S4 enforces ROE and ROI during execution.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)

TASK: Plan Health Service Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-4027)

(FM 4-02 [8-10]) (FM 8-10-9) (FM 101-5)
(FM 4-02.6 [8-10-1]) (FM 8-51) (FM 101-5-1)
(FM 4-02.7 [8-10-7]) (FM 8-55)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters, and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct an operation at the location and time specified. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF plans health service support (HSS) activities IAW TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF surgeon plans HSS to support the commander's intent. The BN/TF surgeon monitors the health of the command in order to advise the commander on measures to counter disease and injury threats. The BN/TF surgeon provides input to paragraph 4 (service support), and prepares the HSS annex or appendix to the order. The BN/TF surgeon considers ROE and ROI, and medical rules of engagement (MROE) during planning.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|-----------|--------------|
| 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. BN/TF surgeon retrieves a copy of higher headquarters operation plan (OPLAN) or OPORD. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies HSS mission requirements by reviewing the order. b. Identifies specified, implied, and essential HSS tasks in the higher headquarters' OPORD. c. Assesses HSS constraints, restrictions, and limitations. | | |
| 3. BN/TF surgeon determines the HSS situation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reviews friendly situation based on input from the operations officer (S3). b. Incorporates the enemy situation based on input from the intelligence officer (S2). c. Reviews the HSS issues that may affect the situation. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Reviews the civil-military situation based on input from the civil affairs (S5) element (Receives input from the S3 if an S5 is not available.) e. Provides status of sick and wounded Soldiers in the medical system to the commander or staff as required. <p>4. BN/TF surgeon analyzes HSS assets available to the unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provides current status of assets and task organization to commander or staff. b. Provides projected locations of supported units to the commander and staff. <p>5. BN/TF surgeon prepares the HSS estimate and medical threat for inclusion in the commander's estimate.</p> <p>6. BN/TF surgeon develops a HSS course of action (COA) for each maneuver COA as an overlay.</p> <p>7. BN/TF surgeon analyzes the supporting HSS COA with each maneuver COA.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verifies HSS plan supports the commander's intent. b. Refines the concept of HSS if needed. c. Determines the supportability of each COA based upon the evaluation criteria. d. Records the advantages and disadvantages of each COA with emphasis on supportability. e. Completes COA comparison by rank ordering each COA based upon supportability. f. Recommends the COA that best supports the operation from the HSS point of view. <p>8. BN/TF surgeon updates the HSS support estimate based on COA analysis and any new data received. Then, he distributes the HSS estimate to commander, staff, supporting medical company, and others as required.</p> <p>9. BN/TF surgeon completes detailed planning needed for the selected HSS COA.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Plans for HSS operations. b. Ensures that platoon is included in logistical information systems and medical communications for combat casualty care (MC4) if available. c. Ensures HSS request procedures are established. <p>*10. BN/TF surgeon provides input to paragraph 4 (service support).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Develops casualty estimate for area of operations (AO) in coordination with the personnel officer (S1). b. Determines augmentation support requirements for HSS from higher headquarters OPORD. c. Determines subordinate unit locations for effective HSS coverage. d. Tailors HSS assets to support the unit based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). e. Determines medical material requirements for the unit. f. References higher headquarters service support paragraph when it is lengthy and the details are included in higher headquarters service support paragraph. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>*11. BN/TF surgeon prepares the HSS annex or appendix to the OPORD.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Includes medical personnel and material replacement plan. b. Includes locations of all unit medical elements for each phase of the operation. c. Includes on order and AO coverage requirements for all unit medical elements. d. Provides treatment guidelines to include evacuation policy and the location of Echelon III facilities. e. Develops policy for the treatment and evacuation of detained personnel, enemy prisoners of war (EPW) casualties. f. Provides casualty evacuation guidelines to include medical evacuation (MEDEVAC) frequencies, call signs, and evacuation routes. g. Provides class VIII guidance. h. Coordinates with higher headquarters for the disposition of captured class VIII materials. i. Determines the higher headquarters' policy concerning the use of EPW medical personnel and captured class VIII supplies IAW the Geneva Conventions. j. Includes special instructions for each unit medical element as needed. <p>*12. BN/TF surgeon performs staff coordination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates with higher headquarters for HSS operations. b. Coordinates with higher headquarters for combat health logistics and blood management requirements for the unit. c. Coordinates with the intelligence officer (S2) for medical health intelligence requirements IAW the appropriate field manual. d. Coordinates with supporting medical company for patient evacuation from forward areas to supporting medical treatment facilities (MTFs). e. Coordinates with the supporting veterinary element pertaining to subsistence and animal disease surveillance. <p>*13. BN/TF surgeon supervises HSS activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitors implementation of HSS annex of the tactical standard operating procedures (TSOP) for compliance with commander's intent and guidance. b. Determines the allocation of medical resources within the unit. c. Supervises technical training of medical personnel and the combat lifesaver program in the unit. d. Determines procedures, techniques, and limitations in conducting routine medical care and emergency medical treatment (EMT). e. Monitors the health of the command in order to advise the commander on measures to counter disease and injury threats. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1)Plans and prioritizes preventive medicine (PVNTMED) missions. (2)Plans and prioritizes combat stress control (CSC) missions. f. Monitors the implementation of automated medical systems for compliance with directives. g. Monitors aero medical and ground ambulance evacuation for timeliness and adequacy. h. Provides staff medical advice to unit medical squads or section as required. i. Monitors sustainment training of medical and combat lifesaver personnel for continued proficiency. j. Provides daily update on the status of the HSS situation to the commander and higher headquarters. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>k. Requests patient evacuation operations from forward areas to supporting medical treatment facilities (MTFs).</p> <p>*14. BN/TF surgeon assists with tracking of patient disposition throughout the unit.</p> <p>a. Manages the automated medical systems available.</p> <p>b. Prepares required patient statistical reports IAW the TSOP.</p> <p>c. Forwards patient statistical reports to higher headquarters IAW the TSOP.</p> <p>*15. BN/TF surgeon considers ROE and ROI during planning HSS.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--------------------------------------|
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) TANK COMPANY, TK BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI) TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC, TANK BN (XXI) HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI)

TASK: Provide Combat Health Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
 (07-1-4036)

(DD FORM 1380) (FM 4-02.25 [8-10-25]) (FM 8-10-9)
 (FM 4-02.6 [8-10-1]) (FM 8-9) (FM 8-55)
 (FM 4-02.7 [8-10-7]) (FM 8-10-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters. Enemy contact has been broken. Wounded Soldiers may have chemical contamination or non-battle injuries. Simplified collective protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand or field-expedient, and natural shelters are available. . The unit aid station is operational. All command posts (CPs) are operational. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF provides combat health support (CHS) IAW the TSOP, the order, or the appropriate medical field manual. The BN/TF medical platoon provides emergency lifesaving measures, sick call services, combat stress control preventive measures, and casualty collection and evacuation to the BN/TF aid station. The BN/TF medical platoon complies with ROE and ROI, and medical rules of engagement (MROE).

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. BN/TF medical platoon provides Echelon I combat health support (CHS; Echelon I includes immediate life-saving measures, advanced trauma management, disease prevention, combat stress control prevention, casualty collection, and evacuation from supported unit to supporting medical treatment.) a. Decontaminates the casualty IAW the appropriate field manual or the TSOP as far forward as the situation permits. b. Provides immediate lifesaving measures. (1) Surveys casualties. (a) Checks for responsiveness. (b) Checks for breathing. (c) Checks for bleeding. (d) Checks for head injury. (e) Checks for shock. (f) Checks for fractures, to include cervical spine and back fractures. (g) Checks for burns. (h) Wears protective devices surgical mask, gloves, and so on. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) Clears all objects from throat of casualty. (j) Uses jaw thrust method to open the airway if cervical spine injury is suspected. (k) Performs cardio-pulmonary resuscitation (CPR) using the one- or two-rescuer method. (2) Controls hemorrhage. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Applies manual direct pressure to wound. (b) Elevates extremities. (c) Applies pressure dressing to wound. (d) Applies digital pressure-to-pressure points. (e) Applies tourniquet as last resort. (f) Initiates intravenous (IV) therapy when indicated (cannot be done in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) level 4). (3) Prevents shock. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Positions casualty in the correct anti-shock position IAW appropriate medical field manual. (b) Loosens clothing and equipment. (c) Prevents casualty from chilling or overheating. (d) Calms casualty by reassuring him. c. Provides treatment for injuries. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Dresses wounds. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Applies occlusive dressing to an open chest wound if possible. (b) Applies dressing to an open abdominal wound. (c) Applies dressing to an open head wound. (d) Applies dressing to extremity wounds. (2) Splints suspected fractures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Employs available materials to splint injury. (b) Splints fracture in position found. (c) Restricts movement of extremities. (d) Checks circulation for impairment. (3) Stabilizes suspected fractures of the neck and back. <p>NOTE: When a cervical collar or spine board is not available, use field-expedient materials.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Applies cervical collar. (b) Applies a short spine board for suspected fractures of the neck. (c) Applies a long spine board for suspected fractures of the back and neck. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (4) Treats casualties with burns. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Extinguishes thermal burn agent(s). (b) Removes chemical burn agent(s). (c) Eliminates electrical burn source. (d) Uncovers burn unless stuck to clothing or a chemical substance exists. (e) Applies field dressing. (f) Initiates fluid replacement as required. (g) Initiates IV therapy if indicated (cannot be done in MOPP4). (5) Treats environmental injuries. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Provides medical treatment for heat injuries. (b) Provides medical treatment for cold weather injuries. (6) Treats chemical casualties. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Takes immediate protective steps IAW appropriate medical field manual to protect self and warn others. (b) Protects casualty from further contamination. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**GO NO-GO**

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (c) Administers nerve agent antidote IAW appropriate medical field manual(s). (d) Decontaminates casualty IAW appropriate medical field manual if necessary. d. Provides sick call services. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Processes patients for sick call. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Screens patients to prioritize treatment. (b) Performs patient treatment IAW physician's or physician's assistant (PA's) orders. (c) Provides patient instructions on self-care. (d) Assists in preparing patients for return to duty (RTD) or evacuation. (2) Provides patient administrative support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Completes patient records IAW AR 40-66 (includes DD Form 1380 [U.S. Field Medical Card]). (b) Provides input to line of duty (LOD) determinations. (c) Manages medical records and reports. (d) Prepares patient records for RTD or evacuation. (3) Prepares medications for issue IAW physician's or PA's orders. e. Advises BN/TF commander on combat stress control preventive measures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Advises BN/TF commander to issue WARNOs, OPORDs, and FRAGOs to the lowest possible level. (2) Advises BN/TF commander to provide Soldiers an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situation. (3) Advises BN/TF commander to encourage a positive attitude throughout the unit. (4) Advises BN/TF commander to implement and enforce a sleep plan. (5) Advises BN/TF commander to alternate cross-trained personnel on critical tasks. (6) Advises BN/TF commander to rotate personnel between demanding and non-demanding tasks. (7) Advises BN/TF commander to implement stress-coping and management techniques. For example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrates new unit members into the unit immediately. (b) Implements a buddy system to observe signs of stress or battle fatigue (BF) among the Soldiers and leaders. (8) Advises BN/TF commander to implement combat stress control (CSC) treatment techniques. For example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Implements a plan to deal with mild, seriously stressed, or BF cases. (b) Assigns Soldiers who show signs of stress or BF to simple tasks. (c) Directs personnel to be supportive of stressed or BF Soldiers. (9) Advises BN/TF commander to ensure personnel employ stress prevention measures. For example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Complies with commander's sleep plan. (b) Provides immediate buddy aid support. (c) Reports signs of stress or BF in other Soldiers to immediate supervisor. (d) Practices relaxation techniques at appropriate times and places. f. Provides casualty collection and evacuation to the unit aid station. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Prepares casualties for evacuation. (2) Identifies litter team(s). (3) Constructs improvised litter from available material as required. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>(4) Secures casualty on litter. (5) Employs appropriate manual carry if litter is not available. (6) Transports casualty without causing further injury, using medical or non-medical forms of transportation IAW appropriate medical field manual.</p> <p>3. BN/TF medical platoon complies with ROE and ROI.</p> | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|--|--|
| 07-2-4063 | Treat and Evacuate Casualties (Antiarmor/Infantry Company) | ARTEP 7-10-MTP ARTEP 7-12-MTP ARTEP 7-91-MTP |
| 07-2-6108 | React to a Chemical Attack (Antiarmor Company/Platoon) | ARTEP 7-91-MTP |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (BFV) HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
 ANTIARMOR CO INF BN RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)

TASK: Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-5000)
 (FM 101-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and is preparing for a mission. Mission planning and coordination are accomplished. The BN/TF operations order (OPORD) has been developed and briefed. The commander has directed the executive officer (XO) and S3 to conduct a rehearsal. All commanders, staff members, and essential personnel, including those attached or under the operational control (OPCON) of the BN/TF, are present. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is in accordance with (IAW) tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF plans, prepares for, and executes the rehearsal IAW appropriate manuals, TSOP, or commander's guidance. The rehearsal addresses key or critical aspects of the operation, and provides subordinate commanders or units with information necessary for executing the mission. The BN/TF commander or staff coordinate and allocate time for the events requiring rehearsal. BN/TF leaders direct adjustments to the rehearsal to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent. The BN/TF commander and staff reinforce established ROE and ROI.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|-----------|--------------|
| 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. BN/TF commander and staff plans and prioritizes the rehearsal schedule. a. Select rehearsal criteria (commander) (1) Select one of the following rehearsal types: (a) Select confirmation brief. (b) Select back brief. (c) Select combined arms rehearsal. (d) Select support rehearsal (fire support [FS] or combat service support [CSS]). (e) Select battle drill or TSOP rehearsal. (2) Select one of the following rehearsal techniques: (a) Select full dress. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (b) Select reduced force. (c) Select terrain model. (d) Select sketch map. (e) Select map or battlefield planning and visualization tool. (f) Select white board. (g) Select radio. (3) Select place of rehearsal. (4) Select attendees. (5) Select enemy course of action (ECO) to be portrayed during the rehearsal. b. Develop a rehearsal script that includes-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) An agenda. (2) A response sequence. (3) An actions checklist (friendly and enemy). (4) A sequence of events. c. Perform the following tasks (executive officer [XO]): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ensure rehearsal time and location are published in the unit operations order (OPORD) or warning order (WARNO). (2) Complete any rehearsals with the staff. (3) Determine rehearsal products. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Base decision on type. (b) Base decision on technique. (c) Base decision on factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). (4) Coordinate liaison officer (LNO) attendance from adjacent units. 3. BN/TF commander prepares for rehearsal. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies and prioritizes key events to be rehearsed. b. Allocates time. c. Reviews. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ensures completeness of task organization. (2) Ensures readiness of personnel and material. (3) Ensures unit level of preparation for the assigned mission. 4. XO prepares for rehearsal (accomplishes the following tasks through war gaming and coordination with the commander): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates and allocates time for the key events requiring rehearsal. b. Establishes rehearsal time limits according to the commander's guidance and factors of METT-TC. c. Verifies rehearsal site preparation. d. Determines the method for controlling the rehearsal and ensuring its logical flow. 5. Subordinate leaders prepare for rehearsal and complete their planning process. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Complete unit order and plans. b. Identify issues derived from the unit order. c. Provide copy of their unit order with graphics to the unit. d. Conduct personal preparation similar to that of the unit commander. 6. BN/TF staff prepares for the rehearsal. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Deconflicts subordinate unit graphics. b. Produces composite overlays. c. Publishes the following composite overlays at a minimum: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Maneuver overlay. (2) Fire-support overlay. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>(3) Engineer overlay. (4) Combat service support (CSS) overlay. d. Appoints a recorder for the rehearsal.</p> <p>7. BN/TF moves to rehearsal site.</p> <p>8. BN/TF executes rehearsal. a. Briefs participants (rehearsal leader). (1) Orients participants to the training aid and the terrain. (2) Defines the standard (what the commander will accept as satisfactory performance for the rehearsal). (3) Visualizes and synchronizes the concept of operations. (4) Focuses on the key events and synchronization required to achieve the desired effect on the enemy. (5) Addresses any points in the operation where the execution of branches or sequels is likely to occur. b. Directs the rehearsal. (XO)</p> <p>NOTE: If the operations officer (S3) directs the rehearsal, the XO will not sense the intricacies necessary to synchronize the combined arms team.</p> <p>(1) Conducts a formal roll call and ensures that necessary equipment is on hand. (2) Validates task organization for the mission. (3) Rehearses synchronization of combat power from flank, higher, and his own units. (4) Synchronizes the timing and contribution of each operating system. (5) Uses the OPORD, decision support template (DST), and synchronization matrix to accomplish the following: (a) Discipline leader movements. (b) Enforce brevity. (c) Ensure completeness. (6) Keeps the rehearsal within established time constraints. (7) Ensures selected events receive appropriate attention. (8) Ensures absentees and flank units receive changes immediately.</p> <p>c. Assists the commander in the fight forward (S3) (1) Portrays his actions during the fight. (2) Ensures compliance with the plan.</p> <p>d. Bases his execution actions on the ECOA the commander has selected during the planning process (intelligence officer [S2]) (1) Portrays his best assessment of the ECOA. (2) Communicates the enemy commander's presumed concept of operation, desired effects, and intended end state.</p> <p>e. Uses an established format (subordinate unit leaders). (1) Articulates their unit's actions and responsibilities effectively. (2) Records changes on their copies of the graphics or OPORD.</p> <p>9. BN/TF leaders assess the rehearsal. a. Monitor continuously the situation and progress. b. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent. c. Rehearse again, if the standard is not met and time is available.</p> <p>10. Recorder accomplishes the following, after the rehearsal is complete: a. Restates any changes, coordination, or clarification directed by the commander.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>b. Estimates the time that a written fragmentation order (FRAGO) codifying the changes will follow.</p> <p>11. BN/TF provides staff updates.</p> <p>a. Issues OPORD.</p> <p>b. Issues DST.</p> <p>c. Issues synchronization matrix.</p> <p>12. Commander assembles participants to conduct an after-action review (AAR).</p> | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

- TASK:** Conduct a Raid (07-OPFOR-0013)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. It is occupying an objective rally point (ORP) with orders to raid enemy elements. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR executed the raid IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR used surprise, firepower, and maneuver to destroy enemy positions, capture prisoners, capture equipment, or free prisoners friendly to the OPFOR. It avoided decisive engagement and withdrew all personnel from the objectives within the specified time. The OPFOR obtained all priority intelligence requirements (PIR).
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.
- TASK:** Conduct Air Attack (07-OPFOR-0029)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers have been identified and are susceptible to air attack. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR's fixed-wing combat aircraft and attack helicopters are available to provide aerial fire support to ground maneuver forces.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR executes the air attack using fixed- and rotor-winged aircraft IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers are destroyed, delayed, or forced to retreat.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: ANTIARMOR CO INF BN RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (M113) HHC INF BN (BFV)
 TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) HHC INF BN (M113/ITV)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)

TASK: Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-5009)

| | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|--------------|
| (FM 1-100) | (FM 3-52 [100-103]) | (FM 101-5) |
| (FM 3-0 [100-5]) | (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) | (FM 101-5-1) |
| (FM 3-04.111 [1-111]) | (FM 7-20) | (FM 100-14) |
| (FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) | (FM 7-85) | |

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission at a specified location and time. Aviation assets have been placed under operational control (OPCON) of the BN/TF. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF has received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF employs Army aviation assets IAW the TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF S3-Air or air liaison officer (ALO) coordinate aviation assets, and advise the BN/TF commander and staff on the employment of aviation assets. The BN/TF coordinates communications with supporting Army aviation elements. The BN/TF S3-Air, or other designated person, assists in the identification and resolution of airspace conflicts. The BN/TF employs aviation assets within its capabilities. The BN/TF monitors current operations of airspace users. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|-----------|--------------|
| 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP), integrating aviation support into the unit scheme of maneuver. | | |
| 3. Assistant operations officer (S3-Air) or air liaison officer (ALO) coordinate aviation assets and advise the unit commander and staff on the employment of aviation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Understand the BN/TF commander's intent, scheme of maneuver, and how aviation assets are to be integrated into the scheme of maneuver. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Coordinate with aviation unit (alert the appropriate aviation units of mission). c. Inform the commander or operations officer (S3) on the status of aviation assets OPCON to the unit. d. Advise the commander or S3 on the proper employment and missions for Army aviation. e. Coordinate with the intelligence officer (S2) to obtain information pertinent to Army aviation planning. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Obtain target location(s), objective, or engagement area (EA) locations. (2) Obtain summary or synopsis of the intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). (3) Obtain priority intelligence requirements (PIR), essential elements of friendly information (EEFI), and friendly force information requirements (FFIR). (4) Obtain weather and terrain information. 4. ALO advises the S3 on requesting additional aviation assets and supporting elements if required. 5. S3 assisted by the ALO develops the aviation appendix to the OPORD. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Addresses air corridors to and from the forward line of own troops (FLOT) to include penetration corridor. b. Addresses movement to the objective. c. Addresses suppression of enemy air defense (SEAD) operations. d. Addresses actions on the objective. e. Addresses movement from the objective. f. Addresses deception plan. g. Addresses special instructions for Army aviation integration into the unit air defense effort. h. Addresses coordination instructions. 6. ALO acts as liaison between air defense units and air control units. 7. S3-Air or designated person coordinates Army aviation employment with the air defense officer if available. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Receives, processes, and disseminates air defense information, intelligence, and control measures to subordinate units using secure communications. b. Disseminates air defense information to aviation assets OPCON to the unit. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Include early warning. (2) Include air defense artillery (ADA) unit locations. (3) Include identification, friend or foe (IFF) or selective identification feature (SIF) procedures for Army aircraft to include location of IFF or SIF line. (4) Include known enemy ADA locations. (5) Include minimum risk routes. (6) Include Army Airspace Command and Control (A2C2) rules and procedures. (7) Include coordinating altitudes. (8) Include all known positive and procedural controls. c. Establishes coordination with high-to-medium-altitude air defense (HIMAD) units if applicable. d. Advises aviation unit commander of HIMAD locations and frequencies, if applicable. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Advises ADA commander on types of aircraft and unmanned aerial vehicle (UAV) use. f. Coordinates with the fire support element for fire support. g. Coordinates Army aviation communications requirements. h. Coordinates with higher headquarters and aviation battalion. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Relays area of operations (AO) information. (2) Relays air defense warnings. (3) Relays ROE, weapons control status, and hostile engagement criteria. (4) Relays coordinating altitudes. (5) Relays weather. (6) Relays positive and procedural control measures. 8. S3-Air or designated person monitors Army aviation operations supporting the unit. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensures aviation forces are properly employed and are in compliance with the unit commander's intent and overall scheme of maneuver. b. Ensures all aviation-related reports to higher headquarters are accurate and submitted in a timely manner. c. Maintains a current status of aviation assets. 9. S3-Air or designated person assists in the identification and resolution of airspace conflicts. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Functions as a member of the unit A2C2 element. b. Monitors current operations of airspace users. c. Monitors intelligence reports. d. Disseminates unscheduled high-volume use of airspace. e. Informs airspace users at each echelon of any loss of communication affecting any airspace user. f. Identifies and correlates situations affecting airspace use for unscheduled events. g. Analyzes airspace use on the situation map (SITMAP) to determine and resolve conflicts. h. Recommends shifting or ending fires when affecting high priority aviation missions. i. Disseminates changes of control or restriction measures affecting airspace users. j. Analyzes future OPORD or operations plans (OPLANS) for possible conflicts of flight control measures, field artillery (FA) and ADA locations, and flight obstructions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Determines impact on unit operations. (2) Develops and recommends alternatives. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|--|--|
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Air Attack (07-OPFOR-0029)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers have been identified and are susceptible to air attack. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The OPFOR's fixed-wing combat aircraft and attack helicopters are available to provide aerial fire support to ground maneuver forces.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executes the air attack using fixed- and rotor-winged aircraft IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The enemy positions, formations, or soldiers are destroyed, delayed, or forced to retreat.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) ANTIARMOR CO INF BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
 TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
 HHC INF BN (BFV)

TASK: Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-5027)

(FM 3-0 [100-5]) (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) (FM 7-85)
 (FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) (FM 7-20) (FM 101-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters. The BN/TF staff is monitoring the operational situation. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and non-combatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts command and control of operations IAW the TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF commander and staff define and articulate the commander's intent and information requirements to eliminate confusion and potential information overload. The BN/TF commander and staff ensure the TSOP includes procedures for information prioritization and primary transmission means for information categories when in and out of enemy contact. The BN/TF commander and staff make timely decisions, and take appropriate actions to ensure mission accomplishment and to protect the force. BN/TF leaders employ command, control, communications, computers, intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (C4ISR). The BN/TF commander and staff allocate resources. The BN/TF commander and staff employ command posts (CPs). The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|-----------|--------------|
| 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. BN/TF leaders and staff accomplish the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Emphasize the need to include integration, use, and synchronization of digital systems into rehearsals and battle drills. b. Define and articulate the commander's intent and commander's critical information requirements (CCIR) information requirements to eliminate confusion and potential information overload. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>c. Establish clearly defined TSOPs for the operation of communication and digitized systems within the unit. (1)Ensure TSOPs include procedures for information prioritization, and primary transmission means for information categories when in and out of enemy contact.</p> <p>d. Design CPs to maximize the capabilities of digitized systems in the analysis, formulation, and dissemination of information.</p> <p>3. BN/TF leaders and staff plan operations using the military decision-making process (MDMP).</p> <p>4. BN/TF leaders and staff make timely decisions and take appropriate actions.</p> <p>NOTE: BN/TF leaders and staff must make timely decisions to ensure the unit maintains the initiative and dictates the tempo of operations and to allow subordinate echelons time to prepare for their missions.</p> <p>5. BN/TF leaders and staff task organize to obtain the optimum mix of subordinate elements to accomplish the mission. They coordinate linkup location, time, and responsible element.</p> <p>6. BN/TF leaders and staff delegate authority. a. Define specified tasks in orders. b. Use mission orders when feasible.</p> <p>7. BN/TF leaders and staff allocate resources. a. Prioritize allocation of resources based on mission analysis and staff input. b. Accept risks when allocating resources.</p> <p>8. BN/TF leaders and staff create and disseminate orders and graphic control measures.</p> <p>9. BN/TF leaders and staff conduct liaison operations. First, they appoint liaison officers early in the planning process. Then, they coordinate with subordinate, higher, supporting, and adjacent headquarters to gather information for planning.</p> <p>*10. BN/TF leaders and staff communicate with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting units. a. Plan communications architectures including the use of retransmission means, digital network linkages, and command and control (C2) node placement. b. Follow proper signal and communications security procedures. c. Ensure subordinates understand the commander's intent so they know what to do when communications are lost. d. Provide redundancy in means of communications. e. Keep digital orders, overlays, and messages concise to avoid overloading the tactical internet and digital systems.</p> <p>*11. BN/TF leaders and staff prepare for the operation. a. Perform briefbacks with subordinate commanders, leaders, and key staff. b. Maintain status of preparations. c. Conduct rehearsals. d. Supervise subordinate preparations and rehearsals.</p> <p>*12. BN/TF leaders and staff see the battlefield. a. Monitor digital and analog communications or information transfer systems and SITREPs. b. Employ C4ISR infrastructure.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>*13. BN/TF leaders and staff employ C2 facilities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Employ the command group (commander). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Directs C2 of the unit. (2) Formed anytime the commander goes forward to control an operation. (3) Positioned (normally) with the main effort headquarters. b. Employ the main CP (executive officer [XO]). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Controls current operations. (2) Synchronizes combat, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) activities in support of the overall operation. (3) Provides a focal point for the development of intelligence. (4) Supports situational understanding (SU) for the commander and subordinates by monitoring, analyzing, and disseminating information using Army battle command systems (ABCS) and Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2). (5) Tracks the current battle, and monitors and anticipates the commander's decision points. (6) Plans future operations. (7) Monitors rear operations. (8) Coordinates with higher headquarters and adjacent units. (9) Keeps the higher headquarters informed. (10) Provides net control station (NCS) for the operations and intelligence (O&I) radio net and backup NCS for the command radio net. (11) Provides terrain management and Army airspace command and control (A2C2). (12) Provides a stable, secure planning facility. (13) Produces and disseminates the commander's orders. (14) Plans and controls intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) operations. c. Employ the combat trains command post (CTCP). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Consists of the unit personnel officer (S1), logistics officer (S4), surgeon, and any attached military police elements. (2) Tracks the current battle. (3) Provides CSS representation to the main CP for planning and integration. (4) Sustains operations. (5) Forecasts and coordinates future requirements. (6) Serves as the entry point for units entering the unit rear area. (7) Monitors main supply routes (MSRs) and controls CSS traffic. (8) Coordinates the evacuation of casualties, equipment, and enemy prisoners of war (EPWs). <p>*14. BN/TF leaders and staff execute the plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verify subordinate elements report enemy and friendly actions, change in status, and any other factors that would require change to the plan. b. Win the battle. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Direct the maneuver of units. (2) Control direct and indirect fires using Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System (AFATDS) and digital or analog communications systems. (3) Direct other combat support (CS) actions to cope with changes in mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) factors. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| c. Verify FRAGOs are clear, concise, and quickly executed by subordinates. d. Disseminate changes that affect the battle. e. Coordinate all battle actions between unit and higher elements as required. *15. BN/TF leaders and staff track the battle and assess the operation. a. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation. b. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent. *16. BN/TF leaders and staff report status to the higher headquarters. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|--|--|
| 07-1-2000 | Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-4009 | Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-4018 | Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5000 | Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5018 | Conduct Battle Tracking (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5099 | Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5108 | Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5144 | Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|---|--------------------------------------|
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-5198 | Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-6009 | Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Electronic Combat (07-OPFOR-0021)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The enemy is conducting command and control of operations using digital equipment, radio, messenger, or other tactical communications.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts electronic combat IAW the operation order or commander's guidance. The OPFOR employs signal reconnaissance, electronic jamming, electronic protection measures, destruction, and electronic counterreconnaissance to disrupt the enemy command and control.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) ANTIARMOR CO INF BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
 HHC INF BN (BFV) TANK COMPANY, TK BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI) TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC, TANK BN (XXI) HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)

TASK: Conduct Consolidation (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-5036)

(FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) (FM 7-20) (FM 7-85)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Task Force (TF) is conducting tactical operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters, and has attacked and seized an objective. The enemy has been defeated or has withdrawn, but has the capability to counterattack. The BN/TF has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to defend its position or directing a change in mission. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts consolidation IAW the TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF eliminates any remaining enemy resistance, and establishes local security. The BN/TF accounts for all personnel, fills key leader positions, mans primary weapon systems, reestablishes or verifies communications, and submits all required reports IAW the unit TSOP. The BN/TF prepares for an enemy counterattack. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI. No casualties occur as a result of fratricide.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|-----------|--------------|
| 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. BN/TF reestablishes the chain of command as required. | | |
| 3. Command group moves into position to control and influence the unit. | | |
| a. Positions itself with lead elements in the most critical areas or where it can best influence the battlefield. | | |
| b. Positions security elements to cover avenues of approach (AA). | | |
| 4. BN/TF consolidates. | | |
| a. Establishes security consistent with the threat. | | |
| b. Reestablishes communications if required, and then establishes contact (electronic or physical) with adjacent friendly units. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Eliminates pockets of enemy resistance. d. Prepares defensive positions and establishes a fire plan. e. Clears obstacles or improves lanes to support friendly movement and reorganization activities. f. Plans and prepares for future operations. g. Destroys captured enemy equipment that cannot be evacuated or is not useful to the unit. h. Treats and evacuates casualties. i. Secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPW) as required. j. Processes captured documents as required. k. Maintains contact with the enemy by redirecting the reconnaissance effort, directing small-unit patrols, possibly conducting limited objective attacks, and by pulling the latest intelligence from the higher headquarters and intelligence officer (S2). l. Cross-levels and conducts emergency resupply. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 5. BN/TF remains ready for an enemy counterattack. 6. BN/TF reports situation and status to higher headquarters. 7. BN/TF continues operations as directed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducts a map and visual reconnaissance of terrain between present location and next objective. b. Issues FRAGOs as necessary. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|----------------------------------|
| 07-2-5036 | Conduct Coordination (Infantry Company) | ARTEP 7-10-MTP ARTEP 7-12-MTP |
| 07-6-1901 | Command and Control the Brigade/Battalion | ARTEP 7-30-MTP |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

- TASK:** Conduct an Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has determined that the enemy element is occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or is otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned enemy equipment and personnel are available. Indirect-fire support is available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts an attack IAW the OPORD and the commander's guidance. The OPFOR executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting the enemy element at the time and location specified in the operation order, still IAW the commander's guidance.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.
- TASK:** Conduct a Counterattack (07-OPFOR-0028)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has been ordered to counterattack following a disrupted or halted enemy penetration attempt or while the enemy is consolidating and reorganizing on the objective. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available. The OPFOR has indirect fire and engineer support available. The OPFOR has gained air superiority.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts the counterattack IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR uses short, intense artillery and air preparation, attacks the enemy flanks or rear, or exploits gaps and ruptures in the enemy formations. The OPFOR prevents consolidation and reorganization and evacuation of wounded enemy personnel. The OPFOR gains or regains terrain and destroys or captures the remaining enemy personnel and equipment.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leaders should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: ANTIARMOR CO INF BN HHC INF BN (M113/ITV)
RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
TANK COMPANY, TK BN HHC INF BN (BFV)
RIFLE CO INF BN (M113) HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI)

TASK: Conduct Deployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-5045)

(AR 220-10) (FM 4-01.011 [55-65]) (TB 55-46-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is located at home station. They have received a movement order, and they set up the BN/TF command post (CP). They have received from the gaining theater command a deployment message indicating their destination and deployability criteria. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF headquarters has already established communications with the required headquarters and with units at all echelon as well as with the installation's emergency operations center (EOC) and transportation office (if applicable). If so equipped, they have established a digital connection with the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS). All communication and reporting is IAW the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). This task is not trained in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts deployment activities IAW the TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. Soldier readiness processing (SRP) teams are identified and established to prepare personnel for deployment. A rear detachment is established to support non-deploying Soldiers and families, if applicable. The BN/TF employs operations security (OPSEC).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: **GO NO-GO**

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>NOTE: The BN/TF headquarters not only completes the steps in this T&EO, but he also supervises subordinate unit or element deployment activities.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. BN/TF conducts predeployment activities. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducts planning and training validation. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Focuses on mission essential tasks list (METL) tasks. (2) Focuses on individual and collective tasks that support their wartime mission. b. Identifies special teams to assist in deployment planning and execution as required. c. Ensures additional duty personnel required to plan and conduct the deployment have been identified and placed on orders. d. Ensures rear detachment leaders and personnel are identified. 3. BN/TF conducts alert phase. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Receives and verifies deployment orders. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Issues warning order or movement order to subordinate units or elements. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (2) Identifies deployment mission requirements by reviewing movement order and any appropriate contingency plan. b. Initiates recall of personnel on temporary duty (TDY), attending schools, or in authorized leave status. c. Completes Soldier readiness activities. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Submits recommendations to appropriate headquarters commander that selected personnel attending formal schools be allowed to complete course work. (2) Conducts cross-leveling of personnel within the command. (3) Conducts overseas orientations IAW appropriate regulation(s). d. Up-loads vehicles with equipment. e. Configure pallets and containerized loads. f. Issues communications security (COMSEC) materials. g. Issues movement orders and instructions. h. Prepares manifest lists for movement. i. Transfers all nondeploying equipment to rear detachment. j. Updates critical equipment shortage lists. k. Picks up ammunition from supply point. l. Conducts operations security (OPSEC) sweeps of the unit area. m. Conducts analysis of higher headquarters order. n. Uploads contingency stocks for class I and chemical detection equipment (CDE). o. Conducts personal property inventories of deploying Soldiers. p. Prepares shipping labels. 4. BN/TF conducts deployment phase. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Clears the installation. b. Finalizes deployment plans. c. Conducts any final coordination with the higher headquarters or installation. d. Deploys an advance party to the port of embarkation (POE). e. Conducts all coordination with division or post transportation offices for movement times and routes from unit marshalling areas to the POE. f. Confirms unit area security, privately owned vehicles (POV) storage areas, and arms rooms (rear detachment). 5. BN/TF moves to the POE. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE
SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|--|--------------------------------------|
| 07-1-5027 | Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (BFV)HHC INF BN (M113/ITV)
 ANTIARMOR CO INF BN RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (M113) TANK COMPANY, TK BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI) TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC, TANK BN (XXI) HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)

TASK: Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-5054)

(FM 3-34 [5-100]) (FM 5-102) (FM 101-5)
 (FM 3-34.2) (FM 5-103) (FM 101-5-1)
 (FM 5-71-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is conducting operations independently, or as part of a higher headquarters. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF engineer and staff conducts engineer planning and coordination in accordance with (IAW) the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, or BN/TF commander's guidance that supports the BN/TF scheme of maneuver and commander's intent. BN/TF engineer assists the staff in producing the BN/TF order or plan. The BN/TF engineer develops the engineer annex to the plan or order. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|-----------|--------------|
| 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. Staff engineer and staff receive an order for a new mission and begins the engineer estimate process. a. Issues a warning order (WARNO) to subordinate engineer elements if applicable. b. Analyzes a copy of higher headquarters OPLAN or OPORD for the following as it relates to engineer support to the maneuver unit: (1) Focuses on enemy situation. (2) Focuses on mission paragraph. (3) Focuses on task organization. (4) Focuses on logistics paragraph. (5) Focuses on Engineer Annex. (6) Focuses on type of operation (offensive or defensive). (7) Focuses on current intelligence picture. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>(8) Focuses on assets available. (9) Focuses on time available (estimate). c. Participates in the intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). d. Conducts the engineer battlefield assessment (EBA). (1) Conducts terrain analysis using Observation and fields of fire, avenues of approach, key terrain, obstacles and movement, and cover and concealment (OAKOC; Engineer analyses terrain and weather to determine their impact on military or engineer operations.)</p> <p>NOTE: Terrain analysis is a major component of the IPB and the first component of the EBA.</p> <p>(2) Develops, in concert with the unit intelligence officer (S2), the modified combined obstacle overlay (MCOO). (3) Conducts analysis of the ENEMY mission and mobility or survivability capabilities. (a) Uses the unit S2's doctrinal and situational template to develop the enemy order of battle (may be accomplished by the engineer battalion S2 if available). (b) Recommends intelligence requirements (IR) and priority intelligence requirements (PIR), in coordination with the unit S2.</p> <p>NOTE: Staff engineer plans for engineers to be part of unit intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) operations, based on commander's critical information requirements (CCIR).</p> <p>(c) Templates (for defense) the enemy's mobility capabilities and their location in the formation, use of scatterable mines (SCATMINES), engineers that support the reconnaissance effort, high-value targets, and countermobility and survivability capabilities in a transition to a defense. (d) Templates (for offense) the enemy's tactical and protective obstacle effort, use of SCATMINES, and survivability and fortification effort.</p> <p>(3) Conducts analysis of the FRIENDLY engineer mission and mobility or survivability capabilities. (a) Evaluates the task organization to determine engineer organization and assets available. (b) Determines if additional assets or resources are needed from higher headquarters.</p> <p>e. Combines the analysis of the terrain and of the enemy's and friendly's abilities to form facts and assumptions. (1) Forms facts and assumptions about likely enemy engineer effort and the most probable enemy course of action (ECO). (2) Forms facts and assumptions about critical friendly and enemy tactical events. (3) Forms facts and assumptions about potential enemy vulnerabilities. (4) Forms facts and assumptions about the affect of these factors on the mission.</p> <p>f. Conducts higher mission and intent analysis. (1) Determines engineer specified tasks. (2) Determines engineer implied tasks. (3) Determines engineer essential tasks.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (4) Determines engineer assets available (These are assets allocated in the task organization or discussed in organizations for combat in paragraph 3 of the OPORD.) (5) Determines engineer limitations (These are restrictions placed on a commander specifying things that cannot be done or things that must be done.) (6) Determines engineer risks (The higher headquarters might specify a risk that the commander is willing to accept to accomplish the mission.) (7) Determines time analysis (time available for planning and time lines for executing a particular phase of the operation). g. Participates in course of action (COA) development. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Analyzes relative force ratios. (2) Arrays initial forces. (3) Identifies critical events for the enemy and friendly. (4) Develops an initial scheme of engineer operations (SOEO) for each COA (Ensures engineer operations are integrated into unit operations.) (5) Determines command and control (C2) means and control measures. (6) Prepares COA statement(s) and sketch(s); At a minimum, the engineer ensures that the operations officer (S3) understands the engineer task organization and available combat power.) h. Participates in COA analysis. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) War games the timing aspects of situational obstacles. (2) War games the timing aspects of obscuring and suppressing for combined-arms breaching. (3) War games the timing aspects of positioning of forces and material for current and future operations. (4) Ensures that the SOEO supports the maneuver plan and is integrated with the other staff elements. (5) Identifies weaknesses in the engineer plan and make adjustments if necessary. (6) Ensure that the unit S2 integrates enemy engineer assets and actions as he plays the enemy force. i. Participates in COA comparison. j. Determines which SOEO best supports accomplishing the mission. k. Makes a recommendation to the unit commander during the decision brief. l. Briefs the following information. The type and amount of detail that the engineer briefs depends on the needs and preferences of the individual commander: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Briefs the concept of engineer support. (2) Briefs engineer mission priorities. (3) Briefs critical engineer events or actions. (4) Briefs task-organization and common support relationships. (5) Briefs obstacle overlay (including SCATMINE employment authority and concept for use by system type). (6) Briefs survivability estimate and priority. (7) Briefs critical tasks directed to subordinate units. (8) Briefs engineer's work time line. 3. Staff engineer assists the rest of the staff in producing the order or plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. States clearly engineer priorities to maneuver units or tasks (paragraph 3 [execution, subparagraph concept]). | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>b. States the SCATMINE concept and briefly states how the commander intends to use SCATMINES, by system type (Also, it gives control measures to facilitate future maneuvers and includes approval authority for employing short and long self-destruct mines.)</p> <p>c. Lists engineer tasks identified throughout the estimate process (paragraph 3 of the OPORD, [taskings to subordinate units]).</p> <p>d. Includes required material or services to support engineers and their missions (paragraph 4 of the OPORD).</p> <p>4. Staff engineer develops the Engineer Annex to the OPORD that includes the following information:</p> <p>NOTE: Below division level, the Engineer annex can use the five-paragraph format, or it can combine an overlay, obstacle list, execution matrix, or verbal briefing.</p> <p>a. Includes critical information derived from the engineer battlefield assessment process.</p> <p>b. Includes all critical information and tasks not covered elsewhere in the order.</p> <p>c. Includes items not covered in the TSOPs.</p> <p>d. Includes information and tasks directed to major subordinate elements of the supported unit, not supporting engineer units.</p> <p>e. Includes information and instructions that have been fully coordinated with other parts of the OPORD, supported-unit commander, and staff.</p> <p>f. Includes all existing and proposed friendly obstacles and control measures [obstacles, restrictions, and lanes; directed or tactical reserve obstacles; and situational obstacles, including associated named areas of interest (NAIs) or target areas of interest (TAIs)].</p> <p>g. Includes known and plotted enemy obstacles (must also be on the situation template).</p> <p>h. Includes logistic locations and routes, as they apply to engineer operations.</p> <p>i. Includes nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) contaminated areas.</p> <p>j. Includes SCATMINE restrictions.</p> <p>k. Includes river-crossing locations and restrictions.</p> <p>5. Staff engineer plans mobility, countermobility, and survivability operations IAW the commander's intent.</p> <p>6. Staff engineer receives subordinate unit's obstacle plans and incorporates them into the unit obstacle data base.</p> <p>7. Staff engineer plans for topographic operations to include terrain analysis, expedient mapping, and map storage and distribution.</p> <p>8. Staff engineer prepares for operations.</p> <p>a. Coordinates with the staff to ensure integration of engineer operations into the maneuver plan.</p> <p>b. Monitors intelligence updates and provides information to the unit commander and staff as necessary.</p> <p>c. Coordinates for additional engineer assets and resources.</p> <p>d. Monitors pre-combat inspections and rehearsals of subordinate engineer elements as required.</p> | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>9. Staff engineer monitors the battle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reports the status of significant engineer events as they occur. b. Monitors enemy and friendly locations and critical events. c. Tracks the decision support template and synchronization matrix and keeps the unit commander or staff informed. d. Tracks the employment of enemy and friendly SCATMINE systems. e. Sends SCATMINE warning to subordinate elements. f. Tracks battle losses and requests replacements. g. Tracks the positioning of class IV and class V supplies. <p>*10. Staff engineer controls engineer assets not task organized to subordinate elements.</p> | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-1252 | Conduct a Combined Arms Breach of an Obstacle (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2009 | Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2018 | Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2027 | Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2054 | Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5018 | Conduct Battle Tracking (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5198 | Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6081 | Conduct Mobility, Countermobility, or Survivability Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
 HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) ANTIARMOR CO INF BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
 HHC INF BN (BFV)

TASK: Conduct Negotiations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-5063)
 (FM 7-98) (TC 7-98-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is conducting tactical operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters in a stability environment. The BN/TF is directed to conduct negotiations within their assigned area to resolve an issue(s) with local factional or non-US military elements. The local factional or external military elements are willing to negotiate. A debriefing format is specified in the higher headquarters tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). Higher headquarters provides a negotiator, recorder, and interpreter. The BN/TF designates a security element. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF establishes communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable TSOP. The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts negotiations IAW the TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. Negotiations enable agreements to be reached, and promote the process of conciliation. Negotiators resolve the dispute(s) or issue(s), or set the conditions for future negotiations. Resolution is followed by the conduct of scheduled preventive actions and follow-up liaison. Negotiations do not exceed the applicable level of authority. All actions, liaison or negotiation, results, and requests for assistance are immediately reported to higher headquarters. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|-----------|--------------|
| 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using army battle command system (ABCS), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. BN/TF commander designates a negotiation team that includes interpreters and other personnel from higher headquarters. | | |
| 3. BN/TF commander or designated representative and negotiation team analyze negotiation requirements. a. Identify the problem or source of contention. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Analyze previous attempts to resolve the issue(s) or dispute(s). c. Analyze existing agreements or understandings relevant to the situation. d. Determine end state or success criteria for the negotiating session. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Identify issue(s) or item(s) that can not be negotiated. (2) Identify issue(s) or item(s) that can be negotiated and define the "bottom line" position that can be accepted by the US side. e. Obtain approval for end state or success criteria for the negotiating session. f. Develop a draft agenda for the negotiations. <p>4. BN/TF negotiation team prepares for negotiations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Requests additional information about the situation, as necessary. b. Collects relevant documents, maps, and photographs to facilitate mutual agreement of facts and details of issues. c. Briefs interpreter on the situation prior to execution. d. Rehearses with interpreter. e. Meets individually with the leader of each party to negotiation. At a minimum, negotiator obtains: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Obtains approval for the meeting site. (2) Obtains agreement for the date and time of the negotiation. (3) Obtains approval of the negotiation agenda. f. Selects meeting location. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ensures meeting place is neutral in terms of cultural and ethnic considerations. (2) Ensures site is acceptable to all parties. <p>5. BN/TF negotiation team prepares meeting location.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Organizes meeting site (tables, chairs, maps, cameras, and so forth). b. Designates a waiting area for guards, support personnel, drivers, and so forth). c. Designates a parking area. d. Prepares to record meeting on videotape or other electronic media if required. e. Provides maps with the same series number, page number and terrain scale to all parties. f. Coordinates for local security to secure the site to prevent interference during the negotiations. Security elements are assigned to-- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Conduct rapid but thorough security checks. (2) Control access to the meeting. (3) Provide local security. g. Designates break areas. h. Provides for latrine facilities. i. Arranges for refreshments when possible. j. Establishes adequate communications assets for all parties. <p>6. BN/TF negotiation team conducts negotiations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establishes the negotiating environment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Greets or exchanges courtesies with negotiators. (2) Introduces all attendees and interpreters. (3) Encourages informal small talk among participants while offering refreshments. (4) Describes layout and configuration of site before starting the negotiation. (5) Describes a previously agreed-upon agenda or, establishes one. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>NOTE: A previously agreed upon agenda becomes a framework to guide the discussion.</p> <p>b. Manages the negotiations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Keeps the negotiations on the agreed to agenda. (2) Identifies what each party desires. (3) Provides time for all participants to present their cases without interruption. (4) Describes the issue in clear and unambiguous terms agreed to by all participants. (5) Provides the stability force preferred solution, or acceptable solutions. (6) Describes a common middle ground. <p>NOTE: If negotiators display frustration, take a break and give tempers a chance to cool before continuing. If negotiations reach an impasse, isolate the issue and deal with it separately. Get negotiators to identify their issues in specific terms. Then seek common ground.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (7) Identifies options if appropriate. (8) Avoids confrontation. (9) Conducts mediation between multiple parties. (10) Provides facts supported by evidence to correct inaccurate information or misrepresentation. (11) Obtains small concessions to get parties in a pattern of agreements. (12) Records all positions, opinions, and issues for possible investigation and further action by higher headquarters. (13) Uses previous agreements or understandings as a framework for the negotiation (unless those are the reason for contention). <p>c. Completes the session at the agreed time or ends the session when no further progress is feasible.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Describes the points of agreement and disagreement in clear and unambiguous terms agreed to by all participants. Results include actions to be taken by each party if appropriate. (2) Obtains agreements from all negotiating parties that do not exceed the Mission Instructions, higher headquarters order or other special order. <p><i>or</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (3) Establishes favorable conditions for future successful negotiations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Describes the position of each party as concerns the dispute or issue in clear and unambiguous terms agreed to by all participants. (b) Obtains agreement from all parties to continue negotiations. <p>d. Documents the results of the negotiations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Records results of session. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Includes acknowledges agreements and concessions made by negotiating parties. (b) Includes issues requiring investigation. (c) Includes tentative agenda for follow-up meetings (2) Provides written copies of record to participants, if possible. (3) Obtains copies of other parties' records if they were taking notes. (4) Ensures clear and positive understanding of any actions agreed upon and defines coordination measures to accomplish those actions. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (5) Prepares agreements for signature before parties depart. (6) Obtains signatures to agreements before parties depart. (7) Completes the meeting with concluding remarks that point out the positive aspects or results of the session. (8) Coordinates for future meetings to include dates, times, locations, and means of communication. e. Maintains pleasant conversation with each party during their departure, regardless of results of the session. <p>7. BN/TF negotiation team leader implements follow up activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reports results of negotiation to the unit commander and, if required, to higher headquarters. b. Ensures team consolidates all notes and other raw data. c. Debriefs all team members or other participants (for example, unit personnel or representatives of non-governmental organizations). d. Identifies key points or issues that require investigation or immediate attention. e. Prepares written report of meeting listing circumstances, issues, and results to include agreements or other outcomes and recommendations. f. Prepares documents to implement any agreed upon actions. <p>8. BN/TF leaders assess the negotiations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of negotiations. b. Direct adjustments to ensure that negotiations remain aligned with the commander's intent. <p>9. BN/TF negotiation team leader prepares for subsequent negotiations if required.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducts negotiation after action reviews (AARs) to identify techniques and procedures for use in future negotiations. b. Updates information requirements. c. Disseminates new information requirements. d. Arranges for rehearsals to prepare for future negotiations if required. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|--|--|
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-6072 | Secure Civilians During Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
 HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) ANTIARMOR CO INF BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
 HHC INF BN (BFV)

TASK: Conduct Redeployment Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-5072)

(DoD 4500.9-R [FM 55-12]) (FM 12-6) (FM 100-14)
 (FM 4-01.30 [55-10]) (FM 55-15) (FM 100-17)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) has received a movement order for redeployment. Although hostilities are not currently taking place, the potential still exists for the BN/TF to face a wide range of enemy/threat activity during redeployment. The BN/TF has arrived at the designated tactical assembly area (TAA), but has not completed Phase I (Reconstitution for Strategic Movement) activities. The redeployment assembly area (RAA) and aerial port of embarkation (APOE) are specified in the movement order. A not later than (NLT) time is specified for arrival of the unit at the APOE. Higher headquarters has provided external assets required to execute the redeployment. All redeployment planning has been accomplished. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF meets the redeployment schedule established by higher headquarters, requirements of the US Customs Service, and the US Department of Agriculture (USDA) while maintaining required levels of operations security (OPSEC) and physical security. All operations adhere to the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI).

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|-----------|--------------|
| 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. BN/TF conducts Phase I (Recovery and reconstitution for strategic movement) activities. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducts reconstitution or initial cross-leveling. b. Repacks and loads containers under US Customs and USDA supervision if applicable. c. Reconciles unit movement data (UMD) through documentation, inventory, and coordination of movement instructions from the theater army movement control agency (TAMCA) representatives. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>NOTE: Individuals may be returned directly to the theater replacement battalion for redeployment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Completes reconstitution and cross-leveling for movement and coordinates with TAMCA representatives to begin updating the Automated Unit Equipment List (AUEL). e. Provides personnel and administrative services support (personnel [S1] section). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Assists subordinate unit commanders to identify Soldiers, civilians, and joint assigned or attached personnel who should redeploy individually. (2) Assists subordinate unit commanders to prepare Soldiers for redeployment. (3) Manages personnel evaluations requirements. (4) Process award recommendations. (5) Completes records and finance updates. (6) Identifies personnel and administrative requirements by reviewing higher echelon redeployment movement order and commander's guidance. (7) Plans and conducts "in theater" Soldier readiness processing (SRP) and medical screening and surveillance program IAW applicable regulations. (8) Processes temporary change of station (TCS) orders and courier orders. (9) Conducts manifest verification NLT 48 hours prior to departure. (10) Provides personnel service support and administrative support as required. (11) Coordinates necessary postal operations. f. Establishes procedures to collect sensitive items prior to deployment or redeployment (intelligence [S2] section). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Collects all security badges and passes prior to redeployment and turn them in to higher headquarters before re-deploying. (2) Develops a plan to track all sensitive item containers as they are transported from logistical nodes in order to ensure accountability. (3) Identifies classified material and plans for security during transportation. <p>NOTE: Includes classified material that will be turned in to higher headquarters or transfer to an incoming unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (4) Collects all confidential material prior to redeployment and transport as classified material or destroys it. (5) Monitors subordinate units' compliance to physical security checklists. (6) Coordinates the collection of all contraband and arranges appropriate disposition, (7) Identifies changes to load plans for redeployment of sensitive items. (8) Disseminates classification levels of redeployment data. (9) Determines appropriate levels of security at designated port of embarkation (POE) during redeployment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> g. Coordinates (with the logistics officer [S4]) the movement of personnel and equipment to designated POE (operations [S3] section). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Coordinates hazardous material (HAZMAT) and unit movement . <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Establishes documentation requirements. (b) Establishes individual environmental responsibilities. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (2) Coordinates force protection during redeployment. (3) Reviews appropriate headquarters redeployment movement order, subordinate unit requests for training support, and commander's guidance. (4) Identifies liaison teams for POE. (5) Coordinates custom training to facilitate proper handling of equipment. (6) Coordinates redeployment support with higher echelon S4 as necessary. h. Prepares for the orderly transfer of properties, such as base camp facilities, and the movement of equipment to designated POE (S4 section) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Identifies supply and services support requirements. (2) Coordinates supply and services support. (3) Identifies and separates excess stockage according to guidance provided by the supported commander and executed by the theater army material management center (TAMMC). (4) Obtains, in conjunction with the home station rear detachment, a place to receive Soldiers as they arrive home. (5) Coordinates through the rear detachment to open accounts for all classes of supply at home station. (6) Identifies quantities of supplies on-hand by reviewing subordinate unit supply status reports (STATREP). (7) Identifies excess supplies due-in by comparing supply requirements with quantities on-hand and due-in. (8) Cancels requisitions for quantities determined to be excess. (9) Identifies required supplies arriving after unit is packed for redeployment by coordinating with direct support supply organization. (10) Coordinates field feeding and services support with designated support unit as required. (11) Submits request with Department of Defense (DoD) activity address code to the higher headquarters S4 to redirect supplies due-in after unit is packed. (12) Designates date or time when internal supply service support terminates. (13) Provides copies of automated unit property book and related documentation to the officer in charge (OIC) of the rear detachment as required. (14) Coordinates Customs and USDA requests for units. (15) Coordinates supply and service support for main body and rear detachment during movement. (16) Coordinates maintenance support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Identifies maintenance support requirements by reviewing higher echelon redeployment movement order and commander's guidance. (b) Identifies vehicles in organizational and support maintenance by reviewing subordinate unit and higher headquarters maintenance STATREPs. (c) Identifies vehicles available for redeployment by coordinating with unit and direct support maintenance organizations. (d) Requests disposition instructions for vehicles and equipment not available for redeployment by coordinating with direct support maintenance organizations. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (e) Tasks subordinate units' maintenance sections to provide maintenance support in assembly areas, staging areas, and during road movements. (f) Designates date or time when organizational maintenance support terminates. (g) Coordinates maintenance and recovery support beyond subordinate units' capability with S4 or supporting logistics support organization. (17) Coordinates subordinate unit movement officer efforts to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Prepares and maintains unit movement plans. (b) Updates and maintains unit movement documentation. (c) Prepares and submits redeployment/deployment equipment list. (d) Obtains and distributes military shipment labels. (18) Clears all properties to remain in host country. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Reports excess material to the senior materiel management center (MMC) for recovery (palletizing or rewarehousing) and redistribution. (b) Clears facilities with higher headquarters or civilian authorities. (c) Lateral transfers all equipment or supplies to receiving unit IAW higher headquarters' guidance. i. Coordinates redeployment movement (unit movement officer or noncommissioned officer in charge [NCOIC]). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Establishes unit load teams. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Secures classified material or protects sensitive equipment. (b) Marks equipment for shipment by air or rail. (c) Stencils cargo. (2) Verifies unit movement date and movement schedules and routes by coordinating with theater army movement control agency (TAMCA). (3) Develops milestones for packing, loading, and movement operations IAW higher echelon redeployment movement order and commander's guidance. (4) Coordinates customs and USDA inspection support with unit S4. (5) Monitors subordinate unit's preparation of movement, customs, and USDA forms for compliance with redeployment movement order and appropriate publications. (6) Monitors supporting unit's vehicle and equipment preparation and cleaning for compliance with USDA guidance, appropriate publications, and commander's guidance. (7) Monitors subordinate unit's customs and USDA inspection results for compliance with appropriate publications. (8) Monitors subordinate unit's movement readiness status for compliance with redeployment movement order and commander's guidance. (9) Inspects subordinate unit's movement plans or orders for compliance with redeployment movement order and commander's guidance. (10) Briefs commander or staff on movement readiness status as required. j. Provides communication links (signal [S6] section). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Provides dedicated communication until completion of redeployment. (2) Ensures, in conjunction with the S2, the proper packing and loading of controlled cryptographic item (CCI) equipment in compliance with communication security (COMSEC) regulation. 3. Unit completes tactical assembly area (TAA) activities and moves to redeployment assembly area (RAA). | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>4. Unit conducts RAA activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Washes major end items. b. Affixes placards to equipment and containers. c. Requests US Customs and USDA inspections on all unit equipment. d. Finalizes UMD. e. Continues supply accountability and maintenance actions. f. Ensures the property book and all related documentation, such as the document register, is loaded immediately. (accountable officer). <p>NOTE: If equipment is staged for shipment after main body departure, then the property book and related documents will be left with the officer-in-charge (OIC) of the units' rear detachments and will return with them. This will expedite the reconstitution process at the home station.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> g. Coordinates final changes to the AUEL to complete actual identification of UMD. h. Coordinates movement of individuals not redeploying under a Time-Phased Force Deployment Data (TPFDD) unit line number (ULN). <p>NOTE: Personnel redeploying as individuals will remain under the administrative control of their assigned unit or the theater PERSCOM until POE-processed for redeployment.</p> <p>5. BN/TF completes RAA activities and moves to POE by the time specified in the order.</p> <p>6. BN/TF conducts POE activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates with designated Theater Army Area Command (TAACOM) elements. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Coordinates for the processing of baggage and accompanying cargo. (2) Coordinates for cargo and passenger inspections if required. (3) Coordinates or verifies the final manifest and documentation. <p>7. BN/TF tracks equipment throughout the redeployment phase in order to ensure accountability.</p> | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|--|--|
| 07-1-2000 | Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|--|--|
| 07-1-4009 | Conduct S1 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-4018 | Conduct S4 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5027 | Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5099 | Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5108 | Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
 HHC INF BN (BFV) HHC INF BN (M113/ITV)
 ANTIARMOR CO INF BN RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)

TASK: Conduct Reorganization (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-5081)

(DA Form 1155) (FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) (FM 7-20)
 (DA Form 1156) (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) (FM 7-85)
 (DA Form 2745 [5976])

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is conducting tactical operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. The commander's assessment of BN/TF capabilities indicates that reorganization should be undertaken. The BN/TF has performed consolidation activities and established ground security. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts reorganization IAW the TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. Command, control, and communications (C3) are reestablished, and BN/TF status is reported to higher headquarter. The BN/TF re-establishes the chain of command, key staff positions, and command and control (C2) facilities lost before or during the battle. Cross leveling and resupply are completed in time for follow-on or future operations. The BN/TF prepares for an enemy counterattack. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|-----------|--------------|
| <p>NOTE: Reorganization can be IMMEDIATE or DELIBERATE. IMMEDIATE reorganization is quick and usually a temporary restoration of degraded units to minimum levels of effectiveness. It is implemented by the affected BN/TF commander and conducted in position as near to operating location as possible. DELIBERATE reorganization is conducted when more time and resources are available. It usually occurs after actions on the objective, during extended lulls in defensive battles, and during extended pauses between operations.</p> <p>1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**GO NO-GO**

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. BN/TF commander, with staff assistance, conducts an assessment to determine the unit's capability to perform a mission. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Requests status reports from subordinate elements. b. Determines follow-on mission if applicable. c. Determines available time before the start of the follow-on mission. d. Develops a reorganization plan. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Determines which assets will be cross-leveled to which element. (2) Develops a timeline to complete reorganization. 3. BN/TF reports situation and status to higher headquarters. 4. BN/TF prepares for reorganization. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Briefs leaders on reorganization plan. b. Issues orders as necessary. 5. BN/TF conducts a deliberate reorganization. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reestablishes communications if required. b. Establishes and maintains security. c. Reestablishes the unit chain of command, key staff positions, and command and control (C2) facilities lost before or during the battle. d. Treats and evacuates casualties. Performs triage, treats injured, and requests evacuation assistance (medical personnel). e. Recovers and repairs damaged equipment as necessary (coordinates with higher headquarters if recovery and repairs exceed the unit's capabilities). f. Redistributes ammunition, supplies, and equipment as necessary. g. Coordinates and conducts resupply and refueling operations. h. Repositions C2 facilities, communications assets, and logistics for future operations. i. Reorganizes subordinate elements if losses have occurred. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Replaces key wounded personnel (personnel [S1] section). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Uses personnel from disabled vehicles. (b) Ensures all leader positions are filled and the chain of command is reestablished. (c) Requests additional manpower from higher headquarters and processes replacements. (2) Coordinates for mortuary affairs support. Recovery operations are conducted to search for, recover, and evacuate human remains for proper disposition (logistics [S4] section). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Evacuate remains to casualty collection point (CCP) using available transportation. (b) Processes Witness Statement and Casualty Feeder Reports (DA Forms 1155 and 1156; S1 section). (3) Informs the higher headquarters S4 of unit equipment loss status (S4 section). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Reports types of vehicles lost. (b) Reports bumper and serial numbers of vehicles lost. (c) Evacuates nonmission capable (NMC) equipment IAW operation order (OPORD) or TSOP. (d) Request replacement personnel and vehicles by line number. j. Secures and processes enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) and captured documents and material (S1 and intelligence [S2] sections). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Handles EPWs as follows: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Searches them. (b) Segregates them from civilian detainees and so forth. (c) Silences them. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (d) Speeds them to the rear. (e) Safeguards them at all time while they are under unit control. (2) Ensures EPWs are tagged with necessary information, to include date and time of capture, location of capture (grid coordinates), capturing unit, and circumstances of capture (DD Form 2745 - Enemy Prisoner of War [EPW] Capture Tag) (3) Ensures documents are evacuated to higher headquarters intelligence personnel. (4) Ensures captured material is reported to higher headquarters. (5) Evacuates wounded EPWs by the most expeditious means possible. 6. BN/TF reports situation and status to higher headquarters. 7. BN/TF continues operations as directed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducts a map and visual reconnaissance of terrain between present location and next objective. b. Issues FRAGOs as necessary. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|--|--|
| 07-1-5027 | Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

- TASK:** Conduct a Counterattack (07-OPFOR-0028)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR has been ordered to counterattack following a disrupted or halted enemy penetration attempt or while the enemy is consolidating and reorganizing on the objective. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available. The OPFOR has indirect fire and engineer support available. The OPFOR has gained air superiority.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts the counterattack IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR uses short, intense artillery and air preparation, attacks the enemy flanks or rear, or exploits gaps and ruptures in the enemy formations. The OPFOR prevents consolidation and reorganization and evacuation of wounded enemy personnel. The OPFOR gains or regains terrain and destroys or captures the remaining enemy personnel and equipment.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leaders should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
 HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) ANTIARMOR CO INF BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
 HHC INF BN (BFV)

TASK: Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-5090)
 (FM 100-14)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters, and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission at a location and time specified. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on rules of engagement (ROE) and the rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts risk management and fratricide prevention IAW TSOP, the appropriate field manual, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF collects relevant information and correctly assesses risk status. All personnel are informed of safety hazards and understand the risk factors. All potential safety problems are identified and either reduced or eliminated. BN/TF does not experience losses due to fratricide. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|-----------|--------------|
| 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. BN/TF commander and subordinate leaders identify risks and safety hazards. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identify specified and implied missions or tasks in the OPORD, operation plan (OPLAN), FRAGO, ROE and ROI. b. Identify all risks associated with specified and implied missions or tasks. c. Integrate safety into every phase of planning process. d. Identify benefits of safety measures to unit's mission versus potential cost of risk or safety hazards. e. Conduct continuous assessment during all phases of operations for safety and risk reduction. | | |
| 3. BN/TF commander and subordinate leaders assess risk or safety hazards identified during operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identify previously executed unsafe acts and corrective actions. b. Identify unwarranted risks. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Compare identified risk to commander's acceptable risk level based on stated objectives. d. Calculate projected loss of equipment and personnel from accidents by reviewing historical records. e. Describe operation in terms of its risk level (extremely high, high, medium, low) using risk-assessment matrixes (regular and environmental) and the following categories: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Uses nature of operation (length and area). (2) Uses mission preparation (guidance time and depth). (3) Uses mission control (command and control [C2] status and nature of mission). (4) Uses Soldier selection (task nature and Soldier experience). (5) Uses Soldier alertness (operational environment and length of rest). (6) Uses Soldier fitness (mission complexity and environmental conditioning). (7) Uses equipment status (age and maintenance status). (8) Uses weather (temperature, visibility, and moisture). f. Computes overall risk status. g. Identify aspects of the operation that may be affected by the primary causes of fratricide. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Includes failures in direct fire control plan. (2) Includes land navigation failures. (3) Includes failures in combat identification. (4) Includes inadequate control measures. (5) Includes failures in reporting and communications. (6) Includes weapons errors. (7) Includes battlefield hazards. 4. BN/TF commander and leaders develop controls and make risk decisions to eliminate or reduce risk and safety hazards. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Select course of action (COA) that maximizes the operation and minimizes risk. b. Develop procedures that reduce risk. c. Provide guidance that enhances safety during all phases of operation. d. Prescribe safety and protective equipment that enhance safety and reduce risks. 5. BN/TF personnel implement risk control procedures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Practice safety procedures during all mission rehearsals and operations. b. Correct unsafe acts on the spot. c. Report all risk and safety violations to commander and unit safety officer. 6. BN/TF commander supervises and evaluates risk management controls. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Enforces standards and controls. b. Evaluates effectiveness of controls and adjust or update as necessary. c. Complies with orders, TSOP, commander's guidance, ROE, and ROI. | | |

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: ANTIARMOR CO INF BN RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV)
RIFLE CO INF BN (M113) HHC INF BN (BFV)
RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) TANK COMPANY, TK BN
RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI) TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI)
HHC, TANK BN (XXI) HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI)
HHC INF BN (M113/ITV)

TASK: Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-5099)

| | | |
|-------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
| (FM 3-0 [100-5]) | (FM 3-34.2) | (FM 34-2-1) |
| (FM 3-06) | (FM 3-50 [3-50-1]) | (FM 34-54) |
| (FM 3-06.11) | (FM 3-55 [100-55])(TBP) | (FM 44-100 [44-1]) |
| (FM 3-3) | (FM 3-90 [100-40]) | (FM 90-4) |
| (FM 3-3-1) | (FM 5-71-2) | (FM 90-7) |
| (FM 3-5) | (FM 6-0 [100-34]) | (FM 90-13) |
| (FM 3-11 [3-100]) | (FM 6-0.6 [100-34-1]) | (FM 101-5) |
| (FM 3-11.4 [3-4]) | (FM 6-30) | (FM 101-5-1) |
| (FM 3-19) | (FM 20-32) | (FM 101-5-2) |

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters. Command posts (CPs) are established and functioning. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts S3 operations IAW TSOP, the appropriate field manual, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The S3 section plans, coordinates, creates orders, and performs control activities to ensure successful accomplishment of the mission. The S3 section prepares, updates, and maintains the operations estimate. The S3 section processes, analyzes, and disseminates information. The S3 section monitors the execution of decisions. The S3 section tracks the current battle. The S3 section identifies and analyzes current and future problems. The S3 supervises S3 section activities and S3 personnel. The S3 section considers ROE and ROI during planning. The S3 enforces ROE and ROI during execution.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. BN/TF operations officer (S3) participates in the military decision-making process (MDMP). | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. BN/TF S3 section prepares, coordinates, authenticates, publishes, and distributes the TSOP, OPORDs, FRAGOs, warning orders (WARNOs), and operations plans (OPLANs) in coordination with other staff officers. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reviews entire OPLANs and OPORDs for synchronization and completeness. b. Reviews plans and orders of subordinate units. 4. BN/TF S3 section develops and provides applicable graphics to subordinate elements, and acknowledges and records receipt of orders and graphics by all subordinates. 5. BN/TF S3 section prepares, updates, and maintains operations estimate IAW TSOP or commander's guidance. 6. BN/TF S3 section processes, analyzes, and disseminates information. 7. BN/TF S3 section issues FRAGOs to implement guidance or directions of the commander. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Issues FRAGOs that are clear and concise. b. Verifies FRAGOs are received by all necessary elements. 8. BN/TF S3 participates in targeting. 9. BN/TF S3 section conducts staff coordination. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Synchronizes tactical operations with all staff. 10. BN/TF S3 section monitors the battle. 11. BN/TF S3 coordinates with the S2 to write the intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) annex. They develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU, and to support the planning process. 12. BN/TF S3 recommends intelligence requirements (IR) to the intelligence officer (S2). 13. BN/TF S3 section integrates fire support into all operations. 14. BN/TF S3 plans tactical troop movement, including route selection, priority of movement, timing, providing of security, bivouacking, quartering, staging, and preparing of the movement order. 15. BN/TF S3 recommends priorities for allocating critical command resources, such as, but not limited to: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Recommends allocation of time (available planning time). b. Recommends allocation of ammunition basic loads and the controlled supply rate (CSR) of ammunition. c. Recommends allocation of personnel and equipment replacements. d. Recommends allocation of electronic frequencies and secure key lists. e. Recommends use of resources to accomplish both maneuver and support, including those required for deception purposes. 16. BN/TF S3 coordinates and directs terrain management (overall ground manager). 17. BN/TF S3 determines combat service support (CSS) resource requirements in coordination with the personnel and logistics officers (S1 and S4). 18. BN/TF S3 participates in course of action (COA) and decision support template (DST) development with other staff officers. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>19. BN/TF S3 recommends the general locations of command posts (CPs).</p> <p>20. BN/TF S3 recommends task organization and assigning missions to subordinate elements, which includes the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Includes developing, maintaining, and revising the troop list. b. Includes assigning, attaching, and detaching units, detachments, or teams. c. Includes receiving units, detachments, or teams. d. Orients, trains, and reorganizes them as necessary. <p>21. BN/TF S3 plans and supervises the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Plans and supervises operations security (OPSEC). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Includes analyzing the OPSEC posture of the command. (2) Includes determining essential elements of friendly information (EEFI) and OPSEC vulnerabilities. (3) Includes evaluating and planning countersurveillance operations and countermeasures. (4) Includes coordinating signal security (SIGSEC) measures with the signal officer (S6). b. Plans and supervises force protection measures. c. Plans and supervises Army Airspace Command and Control (A2C2). d. Plans and supervises information operations. e. Plans and supervises area damage control. f. Plans and supervises rear operations. g. Plans and supervises operations concerning enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) and civilian internees in coordination with the S1 and S4. <p>22. BN/TF S3 exercises coordination of staff responsibility for the following special staff officers:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Exercises coordination of staff responsibility for the air defense officer (ADO). b. Exercises coordination of staff responsibility for the air liaison officer (ALO; Air Force). c. Exercises coordination of staff responsibility for the aviation liaison officer (AVN LNO; Army). d. Exercises coordination of staff responsibility for the chemical officer (CHEMO). e. Exercises coordination of staff responsibility for the fire support officer (FSO). f. Exercises coordination of staff responsibility for any liaison officers (LNOs). g. Exercises coordination of staff responsibility for the psychological operations (PSYOP) officer if available. <p>23. BN/TF S3 in concert with other staff sections plans and coordinates mobility, countermobility, and survivability operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assigns R&S assets to find or verify route, approach, and obstacle characteristics. b. Identifies existing obstacles and likely or effective potential positions for reinforcing obstacles along threat routes, friendly approaches, and other routes. c. Selects and prioritizes critical mobility, countermobility, and survivability tasks IAW their contributions to the concept. d. Assigns mobility, countermobility, or survivability tasks for execution. <p>24. BN/TF S3 and ADO, if available, plan and coordinate air defense.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>25. BN/TF S3 and nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) section plan and coordinate NBC defense and smoke operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Analyze enemy NBC threat. b. Identify friendly NBC posture and capabilities. c. Identify weather impact on NBC operations (friendly and threat). d. Recommend uses and sources of smoke. e. Maintain accurate and complete radiological exposure statuses. f. Analyze, prepare, and disseminate NBC reports. <p>26. BN/TF S3 section assesses and tracks the current battle and monitors the execution of decisions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Disseminates quickly critical information to the commander, staff, and subordinate and supporting headquarters. b. Monitors continuously the situation and the progress of the operation. c. Directs adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent. <p>27. BN/TF S3 section coordinates information impacting operations with forward, adjacent, supporting, and supported elements.</p> <p>28. BN/TF S3 section supports the command group's command, control, and coordination of the battle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Keeps the commander updated by providing concise consolidated updates. b. Communicates with subordinates the commander cannot reach. c. Coordinates additional support from the higher headquarters. d. Acts as net control station (NCS) for command net. e. Plans future operations. <p>29. BN/TF S3 section executes contingency plans.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Recommends contingency plan to be executed based on coordination with S2. b. Transitions from original tactical plan to execute predetermined contingency plans. c. Clarifies decision point(s) for implementation of contingency plan. d. Monitors developments in situations not foreseen in contingency plan. e. Directs execution based on commander's guidance. f. Issues necessary orders. g. Monitors execution of the contingencies plan. <p>30. BN/TF S3 section submits all required operational reports IAW the TSOP or guidance from higher headquarters.</p> <p>31. BN/TF S3 supervises the S3 section and S3 personnel.</p> <p>32. BN/TF S3 section complies with ROE and ROI.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Considers ROE and ROI during planning operations. b. Enforces ROE and ROI during execution. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|---|--|
| 07-1-3000 | Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP |
| 07-1-3009A | Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5018 | Conduct Battle Tracking (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP |
| 07-1-5027 | Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5153 | Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5162 | Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5198 | Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6009 | Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) ANTIARMOR CO INF BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) TANK COMPANY, TK BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI) TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC, TANK BN (XXI) HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) RIFLE CO INF BN (M113)
 HHC INF BN (BFV)

TASK: Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-5108)

(FM 11-41) (FM 24-33) (FM 101-5-2)
 (FM 11-43) (FM 34-40-7) (FM 100-14)
 (FM 11-50) (FM 101-5-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF conducts S6 operations IAW the TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The S6 section establishes, maintains, and monitors information systems to support BN/TF operations. The S6 section complies with ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: **GO NO-GO**

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. BN/TF signal (S6) section plans, integrates and synchronizes, trouble-shoots and maintains, and supervises signal support for unit operations. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. BN/TF signal officer (S6) participates in the military decision-making process (MDMP). b. Conducts mission analysis to determine specified and implied communication tasks. c. Participates in intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) to determine the signal threat. d. Coordinates with the intelligence officer (S2) on electronic countermeasure (ECM) threat and electronic counter countermeasure (ECCM) procedures. e. Evaluates terrain. f. Participates with the Headquarters and Headquarters Company (HHC) Commander and a representative from the operations (S3) section to determine command post (CP) sites. g. Coordinates with the S3 for placement of communications equipment and line-of-sight analysis. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> h. Coordinates with the S3 on manipulative communications deception and tactical ECCM. i. Identifies, coordinates, and provides for task force (TF) communication requirements. j. Conducts network systems planning for the tactical internet (TI; digital equipped units). k. Produces the TI mission data package (MDP; digital equipped units). l. Determines TI router connectivity and loads into computer (digital equipped units). m. Determines unit task organization. n. Verifies task organization needline requirements. o. Reviews mission data from unit order and Warfighter Information Network-Management System (WIN-MS; digital equipped units). p. Reviews frequency allocation plan for all unit emitters. q. Ensures all task-organized units are supported by plan. r. Confirms network management communication channels are in place. s. Includes sources of external unit intelligence data. t. Includes adequate name service to include connectivity between name servers and managed objects. u. Conducts retransmission (RETRANS) planning for the unit to include comparing assets with projected requirements. v. Coordinates with next higher echelon signal officer for additional communications support if required. w. Coordinates with the supporting signal unit to maintain access to the Army Common User System (ACUS). x. Coordinates for maintenance support with the logistics officer (S4). <p>3. S6 section accomplishes the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provides technical staff supervision over signal support activities throughout the unit. b. Exercises OPCON of all communications assets assigned or attached to the unit. c. Assumes supervisory responsibility for all communications security (COMSEC) items within the unit to include accountability, distribution, destruction, and security. d. Inspects subordinate unit signal support sections. e. Reviews signal prescribed load lists (PLLs) and ensures scheduled services are completed on unit communications equipment. f. Provides organizational level COMSEC maintenance to support the unit. <p>4. BN/TF S6 section constructs the signal annex to the unit OPORD.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepares annex IAW appropriate field manuals. b. Prepares the command and signal paragraph. c. Provides annex to the S3 for inclusion in the unit order. d. Includes the frequency modulation (FM) retransmission plan to support the commander's directed scheme of maneuver. e. Prepares the digital subscriber table or address book for the unit TI (digital equipped units). <p>5. BN/TF S6 section provides unit communications support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establishes and maintains communications. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Establishes analog communications (includes mobile subscriber equipment). | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (2) Links separate command posts (CPs) through the wide area network (WAN; digital equipped units). (3) Maintains the communications network in the face of tactical movement, battle damage, and equipment failures. (4) Oversees the planning and installation of the local area network (LAN) configuration procedures (digital equipped units). (5) Monitors WAN performance (digital equipped units). (6) Maximizes the throughput capability of the WAN (digital equipped units). (7) Operates the WIN-MS (digital equipped units). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Provides effective management of the installation, operation, and maintenance of the unit communication system including the TI by transmitting and receiving tactical messages. (b) Confirms that simple network management protocol (SNMP) and network management server within the TI network are operational. (c) Ensures distribution of unit task organization (UTO) to appropriate Enhanced Position Locating and Reporting System (EPLRS) network control stations (NCSs). (d) Scans EPLRS net control station (NCS) for applicable data. (e) Identifies system problems and initiates corrective action. (f) Coordinates internal CP set-up to include radio, wire, facsimile (FAX), and tactical satellite (TACSAT). (g) Reconfigures the communication systems to meet situational requirements. b. Troubleshoots and maintains communication assets. c. Identifies system problems and initiates corrective action. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Troubleshoots mobile subscriber system. (2) Troubleshoots analog communications systems. (3) Troubleshoots digital communication systems. 6. BN/TF S6 section manages TI network initialization functions (digital equipped units). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verifies network initialization. b. Confirms free text, preformatted message screens, and pop-ups are operational. c. Confirms automated reports and functions are operational. d. Confirms Army Battle Command System (ABCS) components are functional. 7. BN/TF S6 section ensures communication activities continue to support unit operations through changing situations and conditions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains status of unit equipment outages, maintenance, and impact on communications plans. b. Coordinates changes to communications plans resulting from system status changes with the higher headquarters system control (SYSCON). c. Advises the unit S3 on adjustments to communication support requirements to maintain system continuity. 8. BN/TF S6 section provides communications security (COMSEC) management. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains the signal operating instructions (SOI) distribution scheme. b. Supervises the issue and accounting for COMSEC equipment, key lists, codes, and authentication systems. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>c. Clearly defines time sharing and procedures for critical nets, especially satellite communications-facsimile (FAX).</p> <p>9. BN/TF S6, in concert with the unit S2 and unit S3, processes interference reports and submits meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) FEEDER voice template message reports to higher headquarters by secure means as required.</p> <p>10. BN/TF S6 coordinates with civil affairs officer (S5) or civil affairs team for use of commercial information systems.</p> <p>11. BN/TF S6 section complies with ROE and ROI.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

- TASK:** Conduct Electronic Combat (07-OPFOR-0021)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The enemy is conducting command and control of operations using digital equipment, radio, messenger, or other tactical communications.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts electronic combat IAW the operation order or commander's guidance. The OPFOR employs signal reconnaissance, electronic jamming, electronic protection measures, destruction, and electronic counterreconnaissance to disrupt the enemy command and control.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 RIFLE CO INF BN (M113) HHC INF BN (BFV)
 HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC, TANK BN (XXI) ANTIARMOR CO INF BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV)

TASK: Develop the Engineer Estimate (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-5117)

| | | |
|-------------------|------------|--------------|
| (FM 3-34 [5-100]) | (FM 5-33) | (FM 5-170) |
| (FM 3-34.2) | (FM 5-102) | (FM 101-5-1) |
| (FM 5-71-3) | (FM 5-103) | (FM 101-5-2) |

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF staff develops the engineer estimate IAW TSOP, the appropriate field manual, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The staff engineer is integrated with the BN/TF staff and participates in the military decision-making process (MDMP). The staff engineer, with input from the BN/TF staff, conducts the engineer battlefield assessment (EBA). The staff engineer, with input from the BN/TF staff, develops the scheme of engineer operations (SOEO) that supports the BN/TF commander's intent and scheme of maneuver. The staff engineer makes operational reports to/through the BN/TF S3, and provides other required reports through engineer channels. The BN/TF staff considers ROE and ROI during planning. The BN/TF staff enforces ROE and ROI during execution.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|-----------|--------------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. Staff engineer, with assistance of staff, conducts battlespace assessment as part of the MDMP. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Obtains commander's planning guidance. b. Develops the engineer battlefield assessment (EBA). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Conducts terrain analysis (Terrain analysis is a major component of the intelligence preparation of the battlefield [IPB].) <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Analyzes the terrain's impact on the battlefield using Observation and fields of fire, avenues of approach, key terrain, obstacles and movement, and cover and concealment (OAKOC) framework. (b) Analyzes the advantages or disadvantages that the terrain offers the enemy and friendly forces. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (c) Analyzes the conclusions on the terrain's impact on accomplishing the mission. (2) Conducts enemy mission and mobility or survivability capabilities. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Supports the intelligence officer (S2) during the enemy evaluation by focusing on the enemy's mission as it relates to its engineer capabilities. (b) Develops an estimate of the enemy's engineer capabilities using the S2's order of battle and the knowledge of enemy engineer organizations and other assets (such as combat-vehicle self-entrenching capabilities that may impact engineer operations). (c) Uses the S2's situation template (SITEMP) and the enemy's capabilities estimate to plot the enemy's engineer effort and its location. (d) Coordinates with the S2 and recommends priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and the engineer force needed to augment the reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) effort that will confirm or deny the SITEMP. (e) Determines the enemy's mobility capabilities and location in its formation (defense). (f) Determines the enemy's use of scatterable mines (SCATMINES; defense). (g) Determines enemy engineers that support the reconnaissance effort (defense). (h) Determines high-value targets (HVTs; such as bridging assets, breaching assets, and SCATMINE delivery systems; defense). (i) Determines countermobility and survivability capabilities in a transition to a defense (defense). (j) Determines the enemy's tactical and protective obstacle effort, use of SCATMINES, and survivability and fortification efforts (offense). (3) Conducts friendly mission and mobility or survivability capabilities. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Determines engineer forces task-organized to the unit as well as the assets that other members of the combined-arms team have (such as mine plows) to determine the assets that are available. (b) Uses standard engineer planning factors or known unit work rates to determine the total engineer capabilities. c. Combines the analysis of the terrain, enemy capabilities, and friendly capabilities to form facts and assumptions about the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Forms facts and assumptions that focus on the information required by the unit commander and his battle staff to make decisions. (2) Forms facts and assumptions about likely enemy engineer effort and the most probable enemy course of action (ECO). (3) Forms facts and assumptions about potential enemy vulnerabilities. (4) Forms facts and assumptions about critical friendly requirements. (5) Forms facts and assumptions about the impact these factors have on the mission. d. Focuses on the following components of the basic order and engineer annex when the mission is received: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Focuses on the enemy situation. (2) Focuses on the mission paragraph. (3) Focuses on the task organization. (4) Focuses on the logistics paragraph and the engineer annex. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Determines type of operation (offensive or defensive). (b) Determines current intelligence picture. (c) Determines engineer assets available. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (d) Determines time available (estimated). (5) Identifies engineer specified, implied, and essential tasks that are mission-critical and have an impact on the overall mission. (6) Determines engineer constraints. (7) Conducts risk assessment. e. Issues a warning order (WARNO) to subordinate engineer elements. f. Develops the SOEO (Staff engineer). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develops a SOEO that is generic, without a specific engineer force allocation or unit designation. (2) Analyzes relative combat power. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Compares the anticipated enemy engineer capability with the friendly engineer's capability needed to defeat it. (b) Determines what will defeat the enemy and what assets are available to ensure success. (c) Determines if the friendly engineer's capability is sufficient to overcome the enemy's capability. (3) Assesses engineers requirements based on the maneuver COA, situation analysis, mission analysis, and commander's intent. (4) Focuses on how engineer efforts integrate into and support the maneuver COA. (5) Addresses all phases of the operation, especially where engineer priorities must change to support the maneuver COA. (6) Balances available assets against support requirements. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Reviews his scheme of engineer operations in light of the assets he has available. (b) Uses hasty estimate tools, such as belt-planning factors, blade-hour estimates, and breach-lane requirements to assess quickly whether adequate assets are available to support the plan. (c) Notes all shortfalls and refines the SOEO, if necessary, by shifting assets to the main effort, shifting priorities with the phases of the operation, recommending that the commander accept risk, or requesting additional assets. (7) Prepares a statement describing the SOEO. (8) Addresses how engineer efforts support the maneuver COA and integrates the necessary graphics (breach-control measures and obstacle graphics and intents) to show this tentative engineer plan. g. War games the engineer plan, as part of the MDMP, to- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ensure that the SOEO supports the maneuver plan and is integrated with the other staff elements. (2) Identify weaknesses in his plan and make adjustments if necessary. (3) Ensure that the unit S2 integrates enemy engineer assets and actions as he plays the enemy force. (4) Compares COAs in terms of which SOEO best supports mission accomplishment (The staff engineer's comparison is only part of the total comparison by the staff.) h. Recommends a COA. <p>NOTE: The staff engineer may have to consider a COA that he can least support if, from the other staff perspectives, it is the best selection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. Finalizes the engineer plan and participates in developing the order. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Determines the command and control (C2) necessary to accomplish the engineer missions (2) Refers to his initial mission analysis to ensure that he accounts for all missions. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (3) Ensures that he assigns all engineer tasks to maneuver and engineer units as part of the subunit instructions. (4) Coordinates with the logistics officer (S4) or support battalion for class IV/V obstacle materials. (5) Coordinates with other staff members to ensure total integration and mutual support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 4. Staff engineer participates in the OPORD brief to the assembled command group. 5. Staff engineer makes operational reports through the unit operations officer (S3) and provides other required reports through engineer channels as necessary. 6. BN/TF staff considers ROE and ROI during planning. 7. BN/TF staff enforces ROE and ROI during execution. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

| | | |
|------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| ELEMENTS: | HHC INF BN (BFV) | HHC INF BN (M113/ITV) |
| | TANK COMPANY, TK BN | RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI) |
| | TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) | HHC, TANK BN (XXI) |
| | HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) | RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) |
| | ANTIARMOR CO INF BN | RIFLE CO INF BN (BFV) |
| | RIFLE CO INF BN (M113) | |

TASK: Establish a Digital Command Post (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized)
(07-1-5126)

| | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|--------------|
| (FM 3-21.21 [7-22]) | (FM 6-0 [100-34]) | (FM 101-5-1) |
| (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) | (FM 6-0.6 [100-34-1]) | (FM 101-5-2) |

| | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|----------|
| ITERATION: | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | (Circle) |
| COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: | | | | | P | U | (Circle) |

CONDITIONS: The digitized Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and is required to establish the digital command post (CP). A reconnaissance of the new location has been completed, the site secured, and the CP has been moved. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS). All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF establishes the digital CP IAW the TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. CP personnel establish the Warfighter Information Network (WIN), information assurance (IA), and common operating picture (COP). CP personnel complete communication checks and assume control of the operation. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: **GO** **NO-GO**

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using Army Battle Command System (ABCS), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>NOTES: 1. BN/TFs are equipped with these ABCS components: Maneuver Control System-Light (MCS-Light), All Source Analysis System-Light (ASAS-Light), and Force XXI battle command-brigade and below (FBCB2). The supporting fire-support element (FSE) typically has the Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System (AFATDS).</p> <p>2. Within the MCS is a software application called common tactical picture (CTP), which interfaces with the joint common data base (JCDB), joint mapping tool kit (JMTK), and overlay explorer. CTP combines visual products. These allow the commander and his staff to digitally build and display a clear, accurate, and common view of the battlespace, the common operational picture (COP).</p> | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>2. BN/TF executive officer (XO) establishes the main command post (CP).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Configures the main CP in accordance with (IAW) TSOP, available resources, and the mission. b. Uses representatives from intelligence (S2), operations (S3), and signal (S6) sections, FSE, engineers, air defense artillery, signal elements, headquarters and headquarters company (HHC) support elements, and representatives of attached units, as required. c. Establishes the main CP as the net control station (NCS) for the operations/intelligence (O/I) FM net. d. Delegates CP defense to the HHC commander. <p>3. BN/TF S3 establishes the tactical command post (TAC CP).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Configures the TAC CP IAW TSOP, available resources, the mission, and commander's guidance. b. Includes representatives from the S2 and S3 sections, FSE, and the special staff as required. c. Establishes the TAC CP as the net control station (NCS) for the higher headquarters command FM net. d. Establishes the TAC CP as the alternate main CP as required. <p>4. BN/TF logistics and personnel officers (S4 and S1) establish the combat trains command post (CTCP).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinate location of CTCP with TF S3. b. Configure the CTCP IAW TSOP, available resources, and the mission. c. Includes representatives from the special staff and supporting units as required. d. Establishes the CTCP as the net control station (NCS) for the administrative/logistics (A/L) FM net. e. Prepare the CTCP to serve as the alternate main CP as required. <p>5. BN/TF establishes CP operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establishes the warrior information network (WIN; S6 section) b. Establishes information assurance (IA; S6 section) c. Establishes the COP. d. Completes all communications checks. e. Posts and updates situation map (SITMAP), conventional and digital, and verifies appropriate overlays are set on the FBCB2 main screen. f. Posts ABCS overlays, as required. g. Directs sections to update personnel on critical events occurring during movement. <p>6. Battle captain accomplishes the following tasks.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verifies that all functions have been transferred and the CP is prepared to assume control of TF operations. b. Opens operations log and verifies significant events are recorded in the appropriate ABCS files. c. Initiates net call (digital and voice) to higher, subordinate, and adjacent units acknowledging assumption of control. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| 7. BN/TF complies with rules of engagement (ROE) or rules of interaction (ROI). | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|--|--|
| 07-1-5144 | Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5153 | Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct a Raid (07-OPFOR-0013)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. It is occupying an objective rally point (ORP) with orders to raid enemy elements. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executed the raid IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR used surprise, firepower, and maneuver to destroy enemy positions, capture prisoners, capture equipment, or free prisoners friendly to the OPFOR. It avoided decisive engagement and withdrew all personnel from the objectives within the specified time. The OPFOR obtained all priority intelligence requirements (PIR).

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) TANK COMPANY, TK BN
 RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI) TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC, TANK BN (XXI) HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI)

TASK: Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion ask Force)
 (07-1-5135)

(FM 3-90.2 [71-2])

(FM 7-20)

(FM 101-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters, and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct an operation at a location and time specified. The main command post (CP) is operational and the staff is functioning. There is a requirement to provide liaison to an adjacent, passing, supported, supporting, or higher unit. The unit with whom liaison is to be established may or may not be digitally equipped. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF establishes liaison with other units IAW TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. Liaison officers (LNOs) obtain information to meet the commander's critical information requirements (CCIR), and provide the necessary information to the supported unit. The BN/TF complies with the ROE and ROI, mission instructions, higher headquarters, and other special orders. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|-----------|--------------|
| 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. BN/TF executive officer (XO) or operations officer (S3) designates liaison officers (LNOs) based on commander's guidance and mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). | | |
| 3. LNOs examine all aspects of unit operation before departing on liaison tour. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Understand the mission and duties as the LNO. b. Understand the unit mission, situation, commander's intent, concept of operation, logistics situation, combat power status, and status of critical supplies. c. Verify notional overlays and orders created during the military decision-making process (MDMP) are current. d. Ensure there is reliable means of digital or voice communication back to the main command post (CP). | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>e. Identify communications equipment requirements based on options available internally or at the receiving unit.</p> <p>f. Obtain and understands the commander's critical information requirements (CCIR).</p> <p>4. LNOs coordinate with the headquarters of the receiving unit.</p> <p>a. Report to receiving commander, S3, or, XO and brief the unit situation.</p> <p>b. Establish voice or digital communications with the receiving unit main CP as required.</p> <p>NOTE: If receiving unit is digitized, verify addresses in parent unit and receiving unit command and control (C2) registries are correct.</p> <p>c. Provide necessary information to appropriate receiving staff section on parent unit situation.</p> <p>d. Conduct the following:</p> <p>(1) Keep abreast of the situation of parent unit and provide updates to receiving unit headquarters.</p> <p>(2) Participate in the planning process of the receiving unit.</p> <p>(3) Advise receiving unit commander or staff on how to best employ assets of sending unit.</p> <p>(4) Record all critical information (specified and implied tasks, mission essential tasks, constraints and limitations) and passes it to parent unit as soon as possible.</p> <p>NOTE: If both units are digitized, ensure notional overlays created during MDMP that portray maneuver graphics and courses of action (COAs) are established in the Joint Common Database (JCDB).</p> <p>(5) Obtain enemy situation templates and other intelligence products and transmit to sending unit as soon as possible.</p> <p>(6) Conduct adjacent unit coordination as required.</p> <p>(7) Maintain a record of significant liaison actions during tour.</p> <p>(8) Transmit critical information to parent unit staff as soon as possible or as directed.</p> <p>5. LNOs transmit information to parent unit staff on return from liaison duties.</p> <p>a. Brief unit XO, S3, or battle captain on all relevant information received during visit.</p> <p>b. Submit mission requirements to S3 and request for information (RFI) from the visited headquarters to intelligence officer (S2) as appropriate.</p> <p>c. Brief all staff sections on detailed information received during visit and transmit information required by higher headquarters in each staff area of responsibility.</p> <p>d. Provide information on visited unit operations, commander's intent, mission, unit locations, capabilities, and future operations as required.</p> <p>6. BN/TF XO maintains control of liaison officers during liaison tour.</p> <p>a. Establishes and maintains liaison and communication with units external to the unit as required.</p> <p>b. Ensures exchange of information is completed upon arrival at the main CP.</p> <p>c. Ensures LNOs update the S3 section on their visited unit's status as changes occur.</p> | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| d. Ensures LNOs maintain communication with parent unit and remain abreast of parent unit activities. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)

TASK: Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) (07-1-5144)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The digitized Infantry Battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct operations at a specified location and time. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. Command posts (CPs) are operational. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS). All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF staff establishes the common operational picture (COP) in accordance with (IAW) the TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. BN/TF staff sections establish or re-establish data feeds for friendly, enemy, and other elements the BN/TF is tracking. Staff sections verify that the unit task organization (UTO) is current. Staff sections verify the common tactical picture (CTP) application system configurations are correct for the upcoming operation. Staff sections update, import, and export notional overlays as required.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: **GO NO-GO**

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using Army Battle Command System (ABCS), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.</p> <p>NOTES: 1. BN/TF are equipped with the following components of ABCS: Maneuver Control System-Light (MCS-Light), All Source Analysis System-Light (ASAS-Light), and Force XXI Battle Command-Brigade and Below (FBCB2). The supporting Fire Support Element (FSE) typically has the Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System (AFATDS).</p> <p>2. Within the MCS is a software application called common tactical picture (CTP), which interfaces with the joint common data base (JCDB), joint mapping tool kit (JMTK), and overlay explorer. CTP uses a combination of visual products that allows the commander and his staff to digitally build and display a clear, accurate, and common view of the battlespace, the COP.</p> <p>2. Staff sections initialize the common tactical picture (CTP) and plan manager applications on their specific digital system: MCS-Light, ASAS-Light, AFATDS, and FBCB2.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>3. Staff sections verify that their database preliminaries set during pre-deployment or pre-displacement planning are still current.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verify that the UTO is current using FBCB2 (signal [S6] section). b. Verify CTP application system configurations are correct for the upcoming operation to include chart tabs, map areas, and filters (staff sections). c. Update notional overlays in the active chart tab for the upcoming operation as required (staff sections). d. Export notional overlays to higher, lower, and adjacent headquarters as required (staff sections). e. Import notional overlays from higher, lower, and adjacent headquarters as required (staff sections). <p>4. Staff sections (re)establish data feeds (platform or unit locations) for friendly, enemy, and other elements the TF is tracking as follows:</p> <p>NOTE: Data feeds are displayed IAW filtering procedures in TSOP or mission specific requirements. Settings for friendly (BLUE) data must be set for the current operation. Live BLUE feed displays all platforms with functioning FBCB2 systems as individual icons. Filter settings declutter platform data to aggregate unit locations (echelon aggregate set by user or TACSOP).</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establish live blue feed (friendly) using MCS-Light with data provided via FBCB2 (operations [S3] section). b. Establish red feed (enemy) using ASAS-Light with data provided by FBCB2 and other intelligence sources (intelligence [S2] section). c. Establish gray feed (other) for other battlefield elements the TF has decided to track (civilians on the battlefield, non-military organizations, and so forth) using ASAS-Light with data provided by FBCB2 and other intelligence sources (S2 section). d. Sets software configuration settings to allow staff sections and elements to view the live feeds (S3 section or S2 section, depending on designation of tactical operations center [TOC] boot server). e. Ensures data feeds are being received at their specific digital system by looking for the presence of blue, red, and gray icons on their display (staff sections). <p>5. BN/TF S3 section displays the COP at the command information center IAW TSOP or mission specifics.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)

TASK: Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) (07-1-5153)

(FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) (FM 101-5-1)
(FM 101-5) (FM 101-5-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters. The main command post (CP) is established and operational. A copy of the higher headquarters operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) is available. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF establishes the information network (IN) IAW the TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF establishes network connectivity via Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS) by sending and receiving messages with higher, lower, and adjacent units via voice and digital systems. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: **GO NO-GO**

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. BN/TF leaders of digital equipped units gain or maintain understanding using Army Battle Command System (ABCS), frequency modulated (FM) communications, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. BN/TF signal (S6) section communications security (COMSEC) account issues all necessary cryptographic material to support the establishment of the TF's voice and data networks. Establishes basic system security by assigning passwords, user accounts and levels of access for users. 3. BN/TF S6 section issues signal operating instructions (SOI). 4. BN/TF S6 section uses near term digital radio (NTDR) to link TF to upper tactical internet (TI). 5. BN/TF operations (S3) sergeant supervises the establishment of the command post (CP) WIN. <p>NOTE: Designated signal support systems specialist(s) (31U) and local area network (LAN) manager (74B) provide technical assistance to CP staff sections to establish connectivity to the WIN.</p> | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>6. BN/TF staff (intelligence [S2], operations [S3], logistics [S4], and signal [S6] sections install commercial and tactical voice telephone networks.</p> <p>a. Install voice cable lines:</p> <p>(1) Run WF-16 Cable to J-1077 junction box to connect digital secure voice terminal (DSVT) or digital non-secure voice terminal (DNVT) telephones to mobile subscriber equipment (MSE) network.</p> <p>(2) S6 section installs commercial telephone lines (if any) to designated locations.</p> <p>b. Install terminating instruments:</p> <p>(1) Connect and affiliate DSVT/DNVT telephones.</p> <p>(2) Connect commercial telephones.</p> <p>7. BN/TF CP staff sections connect fiber optic and category 5 cable to support the CP LAN.</p> <p>a. Establish the CP LANs by connecting vehicles at their respective signal entry panels (SEP) with tactical fiber optic cable assembly (TFOCA) cables IAW the TSOP (where applicable).</p> <p>b. Establish the CP LAN by connecting vehicles at their respective signal entry panels (SEP) with category 5 LAN cables IAW the TSOP.</p> <p>c. Runs TFOCA cable (equipped with TFOCA II-to-ST connector adaptor) to signal entry panel (SEP) on the MSE small extension node (SEN) to establish interface to the WAN MSE tactical packet network (TPN) a synchronous transfer mode (ATM) network (CP server vehicle [S3 or S2] crew.)</p> <p>8. BN/TF staff sections establish the CP Intercommunication System (ICS) by:</p> <p>a. Running a LAN cable from each vehicle Tent Interface Panel (TIP) radio connection to the corresponding S6 vehicle TIP connection.</p> <p>b. Running a LAN cable from each vehicle TIP touchscreen access unit (TAU) connection to the corresponding S6 vehicle TIP connection.</p> <p>c. Running a LAN cable from the back of their remoted TAUs to the corresponding S6 vehicle TIP connection.</p> <p>9. BN/TF S6 initializes the ICS server and configures the server to support CP operations IAW TSOP and current CP task organization.</p> <p>10. BN/TF S6 section designates and marks approved antenna setup areas.</p> <p>11. Staff sections erect CP antenna systems.</p> <p>SAFETY NOTE: Antennas must be located at least twice their erected height from all power lines, power line poles or towers, or buildings or structures. All personnel involved in antenna erection must wear appropriate safety equipment (Kevlar, leather gloves and safety goggles). Only antenna erection team members are allowed in the erection area. All guy wires and ropes must be clearly marked.</p> <p>12. Erect appropriate antenna system (based on factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, civil considerations [METT-TC]) in designated area.</p> <p>13. Staff sections establish required combat net radio (CNR) voice and data networks IAW TSOP and SOI.</p> <p>NOTE: Combat net radio (CNR) includes all frequency modulated (FM) and amplitude modulated (AM) radio systems.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>14. BN/TF selected staff sections (S3 Ops, S3/S2 Plans, TAC, S6 Retrans [if necessary] initialize designated near term data radio [NTDR] IAW TSOP and SOI.)</p> <p>15. BN/TF selected staff sections (S3 Operations, S3/S2 Plans, S2, Tactical) establish required Spitfire TACSAT network IAW TSOP and SOI.</p> <p>16. BN/TF S6 section establishes network control by initializing and configuring network routers, switches, NTDRs, and tactical operations center (TOC) internet controllers (INCs) utilizing tactical internet manager (TIM) and NTDR management terminal (NMT).</p> <p>17. BN/TF staff elements establish ABCS connectivity IAW TSOP by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Initializing the primary TOC server. b. Initializing DHCP server. c. Initializing DNS server. d. Initializing secondary TOC server. e. Initializing ABCS work stations. <p>18. BN/TF S3 and S6 sections establish the command information center (CIC).</p> <p>19. BN/TF S3 and S6 sections establish the Battlefield Video Teleconference (BVTC) system.</p> <p>20. Automation section from the BN/TF S6 element establishes a help desk.</p> <p>NOTE: The help desk provides the focal point for automation or network support.</p> <p>21. BN/TF S6 verifies network connectivity of all BN/TF staff sections to the LAN or WAN.</p> <p>22. Digital users initialize their systems.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Achieve a common operational picture (COP) using standardized filter settings from Force XXI Battle Command - Brigade and Below (FBCB2) and higher headquarters. b. Gives standardized settings to operational control (OPCON) units. <p>NOTE: The BN/TF commander and S3 define what overlays and map data filters it wants displayed in order to have effective coordination.</p> <p>23. Single Channel and Ground Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) users initialize their radios.</p> <p>24. All Source Analysis System-Light (ASAS-Light) operators go into their enemy interoperability destination screen and turn embedded battle command (EBC) on in order for EBC to receive the Red correlated picture.</p> <p>25. FBCB2 operators must also initiate a unit task organization (UTO) change.</p> <p>NOTE: The BN/TF S3 should develop or determine UTOs prior to deployment so they can be quickly executed when needed.</p> <p>26. BN/TF digital users perform a digital commo check by sending a free text message flow with an operational readiness requirement by the receiver.</p> <p>27. BN/TF conducts analog commo checks as required.</p> | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|--------------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)

TASK: Execute Battle Staff Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-5162)

- | | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| (FM 2-0 [34-1]) | (FM 3-90 [100-40]) | (FM 34-54) |
| (FM 3-0 [100-5]) | (FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) | (FM 34-130) |
| (FM 3-06) | (FM 5-71-2) | (FM 44-100 [44-1]) |
| (FM 3-06.11) | (FM 6-0 [100-34]) | (FM 71-123) |
| (FM 3-5) | (FM 6-0.6 [100-34-1]) | (FM 90-4) |
| (FM 3-11 [3-100]) | (FM 7-20) | (FM 90-7) |
| (FM 3-11.4 [3-4]) | (FM 20-3) | (FM 90-13) |
| (FM 3-13 [100-6]) | (FM 20-32) | (FM 101-5) |
| (FM 3-19) | (FM 34-2) | (FM 101-5-1) |
| (FM 3-34.2) | (FM 34-5) | (FM 101-5-2) |
| (FM 3-55 [100-55])(TBP) | (FM 34-52) | (FM 100-14) |

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters. The main command post (CP) has been established and is operational. A copy of the higher headquarters operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) is available. The order includes all applicable overlays or graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF executes staff activities IAW the tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP), the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF staff plans future operations, and executes current operations. The BN/TF staff maintains situational understanding (SU) for the current operation. The BN/TF staff maintains the common operational picture (COP) or current situation map (SITMAP) and journals. The BN/TF staff assesses when decision points require action, and determines if adjustments to the tactical plan are needed. The BN/TF staff keeps the commander updated on future operations planning, current operation, and critical information transmitted to and from the BN/TF headquarters. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | | GO | NO-GO |
|---|---|-----------|--------------|
| 1. | BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. | BN/TF battle staff performs liaison activities with adjacent, supporting, or supported units. | | |
| 3. | BN/TF battle staff monitors mobility, countermobility, and survivability operations. | | |
| 4. | BN/TF battle staff plans future operations, maintains SU for the current operation, and manages information going in and out of the headquarters. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Plans future operations using the military decision-making process (MDMP). b. Maintains SU for the current operation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Monitors current operation using all available assets. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Determines progress toward mission accomplishment based on commander's critical information requirements (CCIR), scheme of maneuver decision points (commander's decision support template [DST]), and commander's intent. (b) Assesses vulnerability to nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) attack if applicable. (c) Assesses when decision points require action and determines if adjustments are needed for the tactical plan. (d) Identifies need for adjustments to executive officer (XO) or commander. (2) Maintains current situation map (SITMAP) and journals. c. Updates (continually) operations estimate. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Determines enemy situation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Considers identification of all hostile main force or factional forces in unit area of operations (AO). (b) Considers most probable course of action (COA) for each faction or main threat. (c) Considers vulnerabilities of main force or each faction. (d) Considers changes in threat order of battle. (e) Considers enemy's capability and possible intention to employ NBC weapons and electronic warfare (EW). (f) Considers enemy's capability and possible intention to initiate low intensity combat actions or insurgency-type operations. (2) Determines current friendly situation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Determines disposition. (b) Determines composition. (c) Determines strength. (d) Determines recent and current significant activities. (e) Determines peculiarities and weaknesses. (f) Determines vulnerability to threat NBC attacks. (g) Determines status of friendly base camps and lines of communications (LOCs). (h) Determines identification of host nation (HN) or coalition forces. (i) Determines significant HN or coalition force activities affecting unit battlespace. (3) Integrates status of fire support (both organic and direct support). (4) Integrates status of attached or operational control (OPCON) combat support (CS) elements. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Includes engineer. (b) Includes air defense. (c) Includes military intelligence. (d) Includes signal. (e) Includes military police. (f) Includes civil affairs. (5) Maintains liaison with adjacent units. d. Coordinates or monitors fire support in unit AO. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Conducts the targeting process. (2) Monitors unit fire control operations (uses Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System [AFATDS] if available). (3) Ensures fires are employed within the commander's concept. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>(4) Continually updates unit targeting plan and fire execution annex.</p> <p>e. Manages information going in and out of the unit headquarters in accordance with (IAW) the TSOP.</p> <p>5. BN/TF battle staff keeps commander updated on future operations planning, current operation, and critical information coming in and going out of the unit headquarters.</p> <p>NOTE: During mission execution, there will be limited time for a formal decision briefing. Based on the unit TSOP, the battle captain or XO will conduct the update.</p> <p>6. BN/TF battle staff assess operations.</p> <p>a. Monitors continuously the situation and the progress of operations.</p> <p>b. Directs adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent.</p> <p>c. Notifies XO or commander when the tactical plan is affected based on changing tactical conditions, CCIR, or attaining decision points.</p> <p>7. BN/TF battle staff operates on a 24-hour basis with shift changes IAW TSOP.</p> | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--|
| 07-1-2000 | Conduct S2 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-2009 | Define the Battlefield Environment during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2018 | Describe Battlefield Effects during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2027 | Determine Enemy Courses of Action during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2036 | Plan Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-2054 | Evaluate the Enemy during IPB (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------------|---|--|
| 07-1-3000 | Employ Fire Support (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-3009 A | Execute the Targeting Process (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5009 | Conduct Army Aviation Support Activities (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5018 | Conduct Battle Tracking (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP |
| 07-1-5027 | Conduct Command and Control of Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-5054 | Conduct Engineer Planning and Coordination (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5099 | Conduct S3 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5108 | Conduct S6 Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5135 | Establish Liaison (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-5144 | Establish the Common Operational Picture (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5153 | Establish the Information Network (Infantry Battalion, Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (Digitized) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-5198 | Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |
| 07-1-5207 | Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6009 | Conduct Information Assurance (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |
| 07-1-6027 | Employ Operations Security Measures (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
 TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
 HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)

TASK: Integrate Sniper Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
 (07-1-5171)
 (FM 3-90.2 [71-2])

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters, and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct operations at a specified location and time. Snipers have been given specific missions (target criteria and priority) based on factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF integrates sniper and BN/TF operations IAW TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. The BN/TF commander or staff brief sniper team(s) on the current situation, purpose of the mission, specific targets, and the desired results. The BN/TF commander or staff debriefs sniper team(s) after completion of sniper operations. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|-----------|--------------|
| 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. BN/TF commander and staff plan the employment of snipers using the factors of METT-TC. a. Conduct a map reconnaissance. b. Update the intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). c. Employ intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) assets early in the MDMP process. (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU, and to support the planning process. (2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR), and accomplishes his intent. d. Addresses sniper employment during course of action (COA) development. e. Assigns specific targets or specific types of targets. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> f. Ensures targets are prioritized. g. Determines the best mix of sniper teams. h. Ensures proper terrain management with unit sniper assets. i. Develops criteria that would allow sniper(s) to select key targets. <p>3. BN/TF commander, operations officer (S3), or intelligence officer (S2) brief sniper(s) on current situation.</p> <p>NOTE: During mission execution, there will be limited time for a formal briefing. In many cases, based on the TSOP, the S3 will brief and synchronize the actions and missions of the snipers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensure sniper(s) understand the task(s) the commander wants and the purpose of each task. b. Ensure sniper(s) understand the commander's priority of targets c. Ensure sniper(s) understand the ROE and ROI. d. Describe the effects or results the commander expects. <p>4. BN/TF controls sniper teams from a central location.</p> <p>5. BN/TF S2 debriefs snipers upon completion of their mission.</p> | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE
SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct Sniper Operations (07-OPFOR-0017)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force and is ordered to conduct sniper operations against the enemy elements. The enemy elements are occupying an assembly area, conducting tactical movement, conducting a tactical road march, or are otherwise susceptible to a sniper attack. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR conducts sniper operations IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR snipers set up well-concealed locations and engage the enemy personnel with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. The OPFOR snipers delay or disrupt the enemy activities or kill the enemy personnel. The OPFOR snipers prevent their position from being discovered. The OPFOR snipers report all specified intelligence requirements to higher headquarters.

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)
HHC, TANK BN (XXI) HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI)
TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)

TASK: Occupy an Assembly Area (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-5180)

(FM 3-90.2 [71-2])

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or Tank and Mechanized Infantry Task Force (TF) is conducting tactical operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to move to a tactical assembly area (AA) and prepare for future operations at a time specified. The BN/TF is given a general area in which to select the exact location of its AA. Resupply and maintenance support are available. Enemy contact is likely. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF occupies the tactical AA in accordance with IAW TSOP, the order, or commander's guidance no later than (NLT) the specified time. BN/TF elements occupy positions without halting or blocking the route of march, establish local security, maintain appropriate force protection measures, and prepares to conduct future operations. The BN/TF completes combat preparations as specified in the OPORD and IAW the commander's intent. The BN/TF maintains the appropriate readiness condition (REDCON) level based on the operational environment, and complies with ROE and ROI.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. BN/TF commander and staff receive the order and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Request available intelligence products from higher headquarters if not received with order. b. Conduct a map reconnaissance. c. Select tentative assembly area (AA) positions unit headquarters and subordinate elements. d. Employ intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) assets early in the MDMP process. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU, and to support the planning process. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (2) Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR), and accomplishes his intent. (3) Select AA positions for unit headquarters and subordinate elements. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure the areas provide concealment from air and ground observation. (b) Ensure the areas provide sufficient space for dispersion of subunits and their vehicles consistent with the enemy and friendly tactical situation. (c) Ensure the areas provide suitable entrances, exits, and internal routes. (d) Ensure the areas are suitable for defense and security. (e) Ensure the areas provide cover from direct fire. (f) Ensure the areas provide terrain masking of electromagnetic signal signature. (g) Ensure the areas provide for unit trains, maintenance operations, and command and control (C2) facilities. (h) Ensure the areas provide terrain allowing the observation of ground and air avenues of approach into the AA. (i) Ensure the areas provide good drainage and soil conditions that support unit vehicle movement. d. Update intelligence products and information. e. Disseminate intelligence data to subordinate elements to assist in planning. f. Designate areas for each subordinate element. g. Designate a quartering party. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Identify quartering party leader. (2) Develop quartering party instructions. (3) Include enough personnel to select and mark routes, to guide the main body into positions, and to secure the area. h. Specify an order of march that allows for rapid occupation. i. Develop a plan that facilitates defense. j. Designate priority of work and provide for maintenance and resupply. k. Plan to occupy the assembly area under conditions of limited visibility if possible. l. Integrate and synchronize Battlefield Operating System (BOS) based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Plan fire support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Assign priority of fires (artillery and mortars) or nonlethal effects and priority of targets. (b) Plan obscuration fires as required. (c) Plan deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary. (d) Plan fires to support the reconnaissance effort. (e) Plan fires to support the quartering party. (f) Plan fires in support of the approach to the AA. (g) Plan indirect fires and close air support (CAS) to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves. (h) Plan locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical actions such as support forces, breaching efforts, and artillery assets to prevent fratricide. (2) Plan engineer support (Considerations for the scheme of engineer operations [SOEO] follow.) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure terrain visualization products from higher headquarters are available and distributed. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (b) Integrate obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) requirements into the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and ISR plan. (c) Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) platforms and units. (d) Identify required mobility tasks throughout the depth of the unit zone or axis. (e) Plan adequate command and control to rapidly shift priority of effort and support in order to reinforce success or respond to a changing situation. (f) Plan scatterable mine (SCATMINE) systems for flank security and hasty defense as required. (g) Plan engineer support to the quartering party. (3) Plan nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate NBC reconnaissance assets into the ISR plan. (b) Ensure NBC assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of NBC at anticipated times and locations. (c) Develop a plan to disseminate NBC threats, once detected, immediately throughout the unit. (d) Develop decontamination plans based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis and disseminate planned and active sites. (4) Plan air defense (AD) support (if support has been provided by higher headquarters). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ensure adequate AD of the quartering party and unit main body during movement to and actions on the AA. (b) Plan for increased AD coverage of areas where the unit is most vulnerable to air attacks such as during movements through restrictive terrain. (c) Provide current and projected future weapons control status (WCS) and air defense warning (ADW). (5) Plan CSS. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements. (b) Ensure adequate CSS to the reconnaissance effort (Timely resupply and evacuation of forward reconnaissance assets is planned and integrated into the ISR plan.) (c) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation. (d) Integrate refueling and resupply operations with the scheme of maneuver. (e) Establish drop points for movement of key CSS assets. (f) Plan on-order control measures, logistics release points (LRPs), unit maintenance collection points (UMCPs), and ambulance exchange points if applicable. m. Conduct risk management. 3. BN/TF commander and staff conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept. 4. BN/TF prepares for the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Conducts extensive ISR. c. Conducts precombat checks. d. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent. e. Provides current and projected future weapons control status (WCS) and air defense warning (ADW). f. Conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible. <p>5. BN/TF executes the plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Dispatches quartering party to the AA. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Moves under the supervision of the designated leader. (2) Ensures the area is clear of the enemy. (3) Establishes security. (4) Reconnoiters the area and selects sites that support the occupation of the AA and the execution of the AA mission. (5) Marks subordinate element sectors. (6) Checks for, marks, or removes enemy mines and enemy or natural obstacles. (7) Checks for nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) contamination. (8) Selects a location for the unit mortars. (9) Selects and marks a location for the unit command posts (CP). (10) Selects and marks a unit trains location. (11) Lays communications wire as needed. (12) Guides march elements into the assembly area as they clear the release point. b. Moves unit main body to and occupies the AA. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Moves the main body into position without halting or blocking routes by the time specified in the order. (2) Maintains noise, light, and camouflage discipline and dispersion. (3) Organizes the AA IAW the factors of METT-TC. (4) Controls routes into and out of the assembly area. (5) Occupies the AA during limited visibility. (6) Positions combat service (CS) elements with the subordinate elements they will support. (7) Positions the unit CP and the trains elements centrally for convenience. (8) Positions the mortars based on employment distances. c. Performs AA operations IAW established priority of work and TSOP. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Maintains security. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Employs passive and active operations security (OPSEC) measures to deny the enemy any indications of friendly plans such as intentions, force composition, or unit identity and locations. (b) Detects all enemy aircraft over-flying the AA. (2) Maintains concealment and maximum dispersion. (3) Uses time efficiently to prepare for the next operation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Improves readiness rates to ensure the greatest force requirements are met IAW the OPORD and the commander's intent. (b) Prepares and disseminates unit OPORDs and performs briefbacks, rehearsals, and leaders' reconnaissance. (c) Performs preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on all systems. d. Defends the AA ensuring enemy activity does not impede operations. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| 6. BN/TF leaders assess the operation. a. Monitor continuously the situation and the progress of the operation. b. Direct adjustments to ensure that operations remain aligned with the commander's intent. 7. BN/TF departs the AA, on order. a. Ensures all equipment and supplies are moved at the time designated by the OPORD. b. Ensures subordinate elements recover all emplaced mines and obstacles unless directed by higher headquarters to do otherwise. c. Conducts an intelligence sweep of the area ensuring no equipment or intelligence material is left in the AA. d. Ensures signs of the unit's presence in the assembly area are removed. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--------------------------------------|
| 07-1-5090 | Conduct Risk Management (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**TASK:** Conduct Reconnaissance (07-OPFOR-0010)**CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to obtain tactical information about the enemy's location, disposition, intent, and activities. All assigned OPFOR equipment and personnel as well as engineer support are available.**STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducted the reconnaissance mission by penetrating the enemy's outposts with mounted or dismounted patrols, and then obtaining and reporting required information IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR maintained focus; continuity; aggressiveness; timeliness; camouflage, concealment, and deception; accuracy; and reliability. The OPFOR reconnaissance elements completed the reconnaissance mission undetected.**NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy unit commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

- TASK:** Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-0025)
- CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The OPFOR is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route or avenue of approach. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.
- STANDARD:** The OPFOR conducts the ambush IAW the OPORD or commander's guidance. The OPFOR conducts aggressive maneuver from concealed positions and delivers accurate coordinated fires to kill or capture enemy personnel and destroy, disable, or capture the enemy's equipment and supplies. The OPFOR withdraws from the ambush site, reorganizes and consolidates, and continues with follow-on mission.
- NOTE:** During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader should select the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

ELEMENTS: TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)

TASK: Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-5189)

(FM 101-5)

(FM 101-5-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD), warning order (WARNO), or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct an operation at a specified location and time. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF plans operations utilizing the military decision-making process (MDMP) IAW appropriate field manuals, TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. BN/TF S3 section issues a WARNO to the staff alerting them of a pending mission planning requirement. The BN/TF staff prepares for mission analysis by gathering necessary tools. The BN/TF commander and staff complete a quick initial assessment determining time available from mission receipt to mission execution. The BN/TF commander issues planning guidance to the staff. The BN/TF commander and staff conduct mission analysis. The BN/TF commander approves the restated mission. The BN/TF issues WARNOs as necessary during the planning process. The BN/TF staff develops courses of action (COAs) for analysis and comparison. The BN/TF staff compares feasible COAs and identifies one that has highest probability of success against most likely enemy course of action (ECOAs) and most dangerous ECOA. The BN/TF staff briefs the selected COA. The BN/TF develops a plan that supports the higher commander's intent. The BN/TF plan complies with ROE and ROI

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>NOTE: Each staff officer addresses planning from his own functional area. The personnel officer (S1), for example, would concern himself with personnel-related issues that could affect the outcome of the mission.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. BN/TF commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the military decision-making process (MDMP). <p>NOTE: The BN/TF executive officer (XO) is the timekeeper for the MDMP. He coordinates and synchronizes activities of all staff officers.</p> | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>3. BN/TF commander identifies what is to be displayed as the common operational picture (COP).</p> <p>4. BN/TF staff ensure that the COP is updated and maintained during the MDMP.</p> <p>5. BN/TF operations (S3) section issues a WARNO to staff alerting them of pending planning process.</p> <p>6. BN/TF XO coordinates staff actions required to ensure staff estimates are current and staff elements have necessary mission analysis tools.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensures shared network databases are current. b. Identifies information gaps that may require the use of reach-back capabilities. <p>7. BN/TF staff prepares for mission analysis by gathering necessary tools.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensures the COP is created or maintained. b. Gathers higher headquarters plan or orders with graphics. c. Gathers digital or paper maps of area of operations (AO). d. Gathers own and higher headquarters' TSOP. e. Gathers appropriate field manuals and other references. f. Gathers existing staff estimates. <p>NOTE: Estimates are conducted continuously to provide important inputs for the MDMP. The commander and each staff section make estimates. Estimates are revised when important new information is received or when the situation changes significantly.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> g. Obtains or reviews information available through shared network databases or through reach-back. <p>8. BN/TF commander and staff complete quick initial assessment.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determine time available from mission receipt to mission execution. <p>NOTE: The most critical product of the assessment is an initial allocation of available time. As a general rule, the commander allocates a minimum of two-thirds of available time for subordinate units to conduct their planning and preparation.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> b. Determine time needed to plan, prepare for, and execute mission for own and subordinate units. c. Determine intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). <p>NOTE: IPB is an ongoing process, proceeding simultaneously with other steps in the MDMP. Changes are dictated by the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) and MDMP requirements.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> d. Determine staff estimates or information already available to assist planning. e. Determine time required to position critical elements (to include command and control (C2) nodes) for the upcoming operation. f. Determine how to incorporate collaborative planning, and if used, who must collaborate, when, and via what medium. g. Determine staff's experience, cohesiveness, and level of rest or stress. <p>9. BN/TF commander determines whether time permits conduct of a full or an abbreviated (time-constrained environment) MDMP.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>*10. BN/TF commander issues his initial guidance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Includes how to abbreviate MDMP if necessary. b. Includes initial time allocation. c. Includes liaison officers to dispatch. d. Includes time to begin initial reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) or collection planning to answer initial priority intelligence requirements (PIR) or to fill information voids that allow the commander to visualize. e. Includes possible decision points. f. Includes authorized movement. g. Includes additional tasks he wants the staff to accomplish. <p>*11. Employ intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) assets early in the MDMP process</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Develop a well-resourced and coordinated ISR plan that provides information necessary for the commander and staff to maintain SU, and to support the planning process. b. Develop an ISR plan that answers the commander's intelligence requirements (IR), and accomplishes his intent. <p>12. BN/TF S3 section issues the WARNO 1 to subordinate and supporting units.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Includes type of operation. b. Includes general location of operation. c. Includes initial time line. d. Includes any collaborative planning sessions directed by the commander. e. Includes any movement or ISR to initiate. <p>13. BN/TF XO coordinates dispatch of liaison personnel as directed.</p> <p>*14. BN/TF commander and staff conduct mission analysis (Each staff officer analyzes the mission and order for his area of expertise or responsibility).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Analyze the higher headquarters' order. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Determine commanders' intent two levels up. (2) Determine mission. (3) Determine tasks. (4) Determine constraints. (5) Determine risks. (6) Determine available assets. (7) Determine higher headquarters' AO. (8) Determine concept of the operation including deception plan. (9) Determine timeliness for mission execution. (10) Determine missions of adjacent units (including front and rear) and their relation to higher headquarters plan. (11) Determine assigned unit AO. <p>NOTE: If confused by the higher headquarters' order or guidance, the staff must seek clarification immediately.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Conduct initial intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). <p>NOTE: The IPB is the commander's and each staff officer's responsibility.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Assist the intelligence (S2) section in developing the situation template (SITEMP) within their specific area of expertise/responsibility. d. Determine specified, implied, and essential task for their area of expertise/responsibility. | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>e. Review available assets for their area of expertise or responsibility.</p> <p>f. Examine additions to and deletions from current task organization, support relationships, and status to determine additional resources needed for mission success (commander and staff).</p> <p>g. Determine constraints that restrict freedom of action in their area of expertise or responsibility.</p> <p>h. Identify critical facts and assumptions in their area of expertise or responsibility.</p> <p>(1) List all appropriate assumptions received from higher headquarters.</p> <p>(2) State expected conditions over which the commander has no control but which are relevant to the plan.</p> <p>(3) List conditions that would invalidate the plan or its concept of operations.</p> <p>i. Conduct risk assessment for their area of expertise or responsibility. (The unit commander makes an initial assessment of where he might take tactical risks.)</p> <p>j. Identify non-tactical risk hazards and make an initial assessment of the risk level for each hazard.</p> <p>k. Determine information requirements (IR) and initial commander's critical information requirements (CCIR) for each area of expertise or responsibility. (The commander alone decides what information is critical. However, staff nominates IR to become CCIR).</p> <p>l. Determine the initial ISR plan based on the initial IPB, the CCIR, and the commander's initial guidance for ISR.</p> <p>(1) Turn the R&S plan into an initial detailed, synchronized reconnaissance annex and surveillance order to the reconnaissance, surveillance, and target acquisition (RSTA) squadron (or other intelligence, surveillance, reconnaissance [ISR] assets) to launch R&S assets as soon as possible so they can begin the collection effort (S3 section).</p> <p>NOTE: As more information becomes available, it is incorporated into a complete reconnaissance annex for the OPORD.</p> <p>(2) Publish a R&S order with the minimum information (S3 section).</p> <p>(a) Include the AO for the RSTA squadron and other R&S assets.</p> <p>(b) Include a mission statement.</p> <p>(c) Include task organization.</p> <p>(d) Include the reconnaissance objective.</p> <p>(e) Include PIR and IR to be answered.</p> <p>(f) Include line of departure (LD) or line of contact (LC).</p> <p>(g) Include initial named areas of interest (NAIs)</p> <p>(h) Include routes to AO and passage of lines instructions.</p> <p>(i) Include fire support coordinating measures and airspace control measures.</p> <p>(j) Include communications and logistics support.</p> <p>(k) Include casualty evacuation.</p> <p>m. Plan use of available time.</p> <p>(1) Refine their initial plan for the use of available time.</p> <p>(2) Compare the time needed to accomplish essential tasks to the higher headquarters' time line to ensure mission accomplishment is possible in the allotted time.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>(3) Compare the time line to the enemy time line developed during the IPB to determine windows of opportunity for exploitation or times when the unit will be at risk from enemy activity.</p> <p>(4) Specify when and where they will conduct briefings that result from planning process if they will use collaborative planning sessions (if so, when and on what network), and when, where, and in what form they will conduct rehearsals.</p> <p>(5) Use liaison officers (LNOs) to stay abreast of changes at the unit.</p> <p>n. Write the restated mission.</p> <p>(1) Prepares restated mission for the unit based on mission analysis (XO or S3).</p> <p>(a) Addresses who, what (tasks), when, where, how, and why.</p> <p>o. Conduct a mission analysis briefing.</p> <p>NOTE: The commander may forego the briefing if he obtains the mission analysis information from a shared database.</p> <p>(1) Briefs the commander on its mission analysis (time permitting).</p> <p>(a) Includes mission and commander's intent of the headquarters two levels up.</p> <p>(b) Includes mission, commander's intent, concept of the operation, and deception plan or objective of the headquarters one level up.</p> <p>(c) Includes review of unit commander's initial guidance.</p> <p>(d) Includes initial IPB products.</p> <p>(e) Includes specified, implied, and essential task</p> <p>(f) Includes constraints on the operation.</p> <p>(g) Includes forces available.</p> <p>(h) Includes risk assessments.</p> <p>(i) Includes recommended IR for incorporation into the CCIR.</p> <p>(j) Includes recommended time lines.</p> <p>(k) Includes recommended restated mission.</p> <p>(l) Includes recommended collaborative planning sessions.</p> <p>*15. BN/TF commander approves restated mission.</p> <p>*16. BN/TF commander develops his initial intent. (During mission analysis, the commander begins his visualization and develops his initial intent for the operation.)</p> <p>a. Provides intent to staff.</p> <p>(1) Issues intent statement that is clear and concise.</p> <p>(2) Provides link between the mission and the concept of operations.</p> <p>(3) Includes key tasks that must be performed or conditions that must be met to accomplish the mission.</p> <p>(4) Does not include the "method" by which the force will get from its current state to the end state.</p> <p>(5) Does not include "acceptable risk".</p> <p>b. Prepares (personally) his intent statement and, when possible, delivers it face-to-face.</p> <p>*17. BN/TF commander issues the commander's guidance.</p> <p>a. Provides the staff with enough additional guidance (preliminary decisions) to focus staff activities in planning.</p> <p>b. Places guidance on a shared database to ensure a common base of planning effort within the unit.</p> | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Focuses on essential tasks. d. Emphasizes in broad terms when, where, and how he intends to mass his combat power. e. Includes priorities for all combat, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) elements and how he envisions their support of his concept. f. Includes specific COA to consider, both friendly and threat, and priority for addressing them. g. Includes initial CCIR. h. Includes anticipated decision points. i. Includes risk guidance. j. Includes military deception guidance. k. Includes fire and effects guidance. l. Includes guidance for nonlethal efforts. m. Includes targeting guidance. n. Includes mobility and countermobility guidance. o. Includes security measures to be implemented. p. Includes time plan. q. Includes type of order to issue. r. Includes any collaborative planning sessions to be conducted. s. Includes movement to initiate (including movement of command, control, communications, computers, intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance [C4ISR] information systems [INFOSYS] nodes). t. Includes type of rehearsal to conduct. u. Includes additional specific priorities for CS and CSS. v. Includes any other information the commander wants the staff to consider. <p>18. BN/TF S3 section issues a WARNO 2 to subordinate and supporting elements immediately after the unit commander provides his guidance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Contains R&S to be initiated by RSTA squadron and other R&S assets. b. Contains approved restated mission statement. c. Contains unit commander's intent. d. Contains unit's AO (for example, sketch, overlay, or some other description). e. Contains CCIR. f. Contains risk guidance. g. Contains security measures. h. Contains military deception guidance. i. Contains mobility and countermobility guidance. j. Contains specific priorities. k. Contains time plan. l. Contains guidance on collaborative events and rehearsals. m. Contains task organization changes from the higher headquarters. n. Contains attachments or detachments. <p>*19. BN/TF commander and staff perform the following functions during the rest of the decision-making process:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Review periodically all available facts and assumptions for new or changed information. b. Assess impact of changes on the plan. c. Make necessary adjustments. <p>20. BN/TF staff, upon receipt of commander's guidance, develops COAs for analysis and comparison.</p> | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensures COAs meet the following criteria. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ensures COAs are suitable. (2) Ensures COAs are feasible. (3) Ensures COAs are acceptable. (4) Ensures COAs are distinguishable. (5) Ensures COAs are complete. b. Continues the risk management process. c. Uses the following guidelines to develop COAs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Analyzes relative combat power. (2) Generates options. (3) Arrays initial forces. (4) Develops the scheme of maneuver. (5) Assigns headquarters. (6) Prepares COA statements and sketches. d. Briefs COAs to the unit commander for review (optional). <p>21. BN/TF staff conducts course of action analysis (war-gaming) for each COA.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Uses the following rules for war-gaming: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Remains objective. (War-gamers do not defend a COA just because they developed it.) (2) Records (accurately) advantages and disadvantages for each COA. (3) Assesses (continually) the feasibility, acceptability, and suitability of the COA. (4) Avoids drawing premature conclusions. (5) Avoids comparing one COA with another during war gaming. b. Uses the following war-gaming steps. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Gathers tools. (2) Lists all friendly forces. (3) Lists assumptions. (4) Lists known critical events and decision points. (5) Determines evaluation criteria. (6) Selects the war-gaming method. (7) Selects a method to record and display results. (8) Conduct the war-game and assesses the results. c. Understands war-gaming responsibilities. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Coordinates actions of staff (XO). (2) Analyzes COAs to determine potential personnel battle losses and determine how to provide personnel support during the operation (S1). The S1 may represent the battalion surgeon and chaplain IAW TSOP. (3) Develops critical enemy decision points in relation to the friendly course of action (S2). (4) Captures the results of enemy action and counteraction and the corresponding friendly and enemy strengths and vulnerabilities (S2). (5) Role-plays the enemy commander (S2). (6) Identifies information requirements for friendly forces (S2). (7) Refines NAIs, TAIs, and the high-value targets (HVTs) (S2). (8) Refines the event template, situation template, and event matrix (S2). (9) Participates in the targeting conference and identifies a high-payoff targets (HPTs) list based on the IPB (S2). (10) Selects the technique and methods to be used for war gaming (S3). (11) Role-plays the friendly commander during the war-gaming if the unit commander is unavailable (S3). | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>(12) Ensures the war-game covers every operational aspect of the mission (S3).</p> <p>(13) Records each event's strengths and weaknesses and annotates the rationale (S3).</p> <p>(14) Analyzes each COA to assess its sustainability (logistics officer [S4]).</p> <p>(15) Identifies potential shortfalls and recommends actions to eliminate or reduce their affect on the COA (S4).</p> <p>(16) Ensures that available movement times and assets will support the COA (S4).</p> <p>(17) Analyzes each course of action for effective integration of the information systems (signal officer [S6]).</p> <p>(18) Determines how the information management (IM) plan will affect each course of action and recommends to the XO how to modify (if necessary) the IM plan to best support each course of action (S6).</p> <p>(19) Analyzes the COA in their own area of expertise including how they can best support the mission (special staff officers).</p> <p>d. Determines the force requirements and the risks.</p> <p>e. Completes the war-gaming process.</p> <p>22. BN/TF staff conducts an (internal) war-game briefing. (This briefing is OPTIONAL and is normally given to the XO.)</p> <p>23. BN/TF staff compares feasible COAs and identifies one that has highest probability of success against most likely ECOA and most dangerous ECOA.</p> <p>a. Analyzes and evaluates advantages and disadvantages of each COA. (Each staff officer evaluates the COA from his perspective and presents findings for others' consideration.)</p> <p>NOTE: Each staff officer may use his own matrix, however, all must use the same evaluation criteria. The XO normally determines the weight of each evaluation criterion.</p> <p>b. Identifies the preferred COA and makes recommendation. (The XO decides which COA to recommend at the commander's decision briefing if the staff cannot reach a mutual recommendation.)</p> <p>NOTE: If the unit commander has directed one course of action, the staff modifies this step (combining it with course of action analysis) to determine the advantages and disadvantages of the directed or refined course of action.</p> <p>24. BN/TF S3 presents the decision briefing.</p> <p>a. Includes as a minimum.</p> <p>(1) Includes intent of the higher headquarters (higher and next higher commanders).</p> <p>(2) Includes mission.</p> <p>(3) Includes status of own forces.</p> <p>(4) Includes an updated IPB.</p> <p>(5) Includes assumptions used in planning.</p> <p>(6) Includes courses of action considered.</p> <p>(7) Includes advantages and disadvantages (including risk) of each COA, with a decision matrix or table showing course of action comparison.</p> <p>(8) Includes recommended COA.</p> | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>*25. BN/TF commander approves a COA.</p> <p>a. Decides on a COA he believes to be most advantageous.</p> <p>(1) Refines intent statement and CCIR, if required.</p> <p>(2) Issues additional guidance if required.</p> <p>(a) Issues additional guidance for priorities for CS or CSS activities (particularly for resources he needs to preserve his freedom of action and ensure continuous service support).</p> <p>(b) Issues additional guidance for orders preparation.</p> <p>(c) Issues additional guidance for rehearsal preparation.</p> <p>(d) Issues additional guidance for preparation for mission execution.</p> <p>b. Decides what level of residual risk he will accept to accomplish mission.</p> <p>26. BN/TF S3 section issues WARNO with essential information so subordinate elements can refine their plans.</p> <p>27. BN/TF staff refines the COA based on the commander's decision and final guidance.</p> <p>28. BN/TF staff prepares the order or plan by turning it into a clear, concise concept of operations, a scheme of maneuver, and the required fire support.</p> <p>*29. BN/TF commander reviews and approves orders before the staff reproduces and briefs them.</p> <p>30. BN/TF staff reproduces, briefs, and distributes order.</p> <p>NOTE: The MDMP can be conducted in a time-constrained environment. However, before a unit can conduct decision making in a time-constrained environment, it must master the steps in the full MDMP. (See FM 6-0 (101-5) for information on conducting the MDMP in a time-constrained environment.)</p> <p>31. BN/TF begins preparing for operations and conducts a rehearsal.</p> | | |
|--|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE
SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE
OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)

TASK: Prepare for Operations (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force)
(07-1-5198)

(FM 3-0 [100-5]) (FM 101-5)
(FM 3-55 [100-55])(TBP) (FM 101-5-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission at a specified location and time. The commander and staff have completed the planning phase for the mission. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting is accordance with (IAW) applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF prepares for operations IAW the TSOP, the order, appropriate field manual, and the higher commander's guidance. BN/TF leaders refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. BN/TF conducts extensive intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) operations. BN/TF leaders conduct pre-combat checks. BN/TF leaders supervise subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparation efforts are consistent with the BN/TF commander's intent. The BN/TF conducts rehearsals during daylight and periods of limited visibility, if possible. BN/TF leaders position forces IAW the order. BN/TF leaders reinforce ROE and ROI.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|-----------|--------------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. 2. BN/TF commander and staff prepare for operations. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conduct confirmation briefings with subordinates immediately after OPORD is issued to ensure subordinates understand commander's intent and concept. b. Conduct backbriefs. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Allow the commander to identify problems with the concept of operations (unit commander's or subordinates'). (2) Learn how subordinates intend to accomplish their mission. c. Update staff estimates when new information is received. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Supervises subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent. e. Ensure support plans are integrated with the tactical plan at each level. f. Consider specific branches of the current plan or contingency planning of future (sequel) operations. g. Look for changes in conditions that will result in new or significantly altered missions and thus cause the planning process to start again. h. Direct or recommend actions to deal with forecasted changes. i. Conduct extensive reconnaissance. j. Refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. k. Ensure subordinates conduct equipment precombat checks or preventative maintenance checks and services (PMCS). l. Coordinate vertically and horizontally to exchange information and to synchronize actions that may impact on each staff officer's functional area. m. Supervise subordinate troop leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent. n. Conduct rehearsals during day and limited visibility, if possible, based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). o. Position forces IAW the plan. | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

| Task No. | Task Title | References |
|-----------|---|--------------------------------------|
| 07-1-5000 | Conduct a Rehearsal (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 71-2-MTP ARTEP 71-2-REV-MTP |
| 07-1-5189 | Plan Operations Using the MDMP (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) | ARTEP 7-20-MTP ARTEP 7-22-MTP |

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: TANK COMPANY, TK BN RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH) (XXI)
TANK COMPANY, TANK BN (XXI) HHC, TANK BN (XXI)
HHC MECH HVY CAB (XXI) RIFLE CO INF BN (MECH)

TASK: Transfer Command and Control Functions During Displacement of the Command Post (Infantry Battalion/Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force) (07-1-5207)

(FM 3-90.2 [71-2]) (FM 7-20) (FM 101-5-1)
(FM 6-0 [100-34]) (FM 20-3) (FM 101-5-2)
(FM 6-0.6 [100-34-1]) (FM 71-123)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Infantry battalion (BN) or tank and mechanized Infantry battalion task force (TF) is operating independently or as part of a higher headquarters, and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct an operation that requires the relocation of the command post (CP). The CP is operational. The jump element has deployed to the new CP location, established operations, and is preparing to assume operational control of the unit. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The BN/TF established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons, and digital connectivity via the Army Battle Command Systems (ABCS), if equipped. All communication and reporting follows the applicable tactical standing operating procedures (TSOP). The BN/TF received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

STANDARDS: The BN/TF transfers command and control (C2) functions during displacement of the CP IAW TSOP, the order, and the higher commander's guidance. C2 of the current operations is transferred between CPs without a break in continuity or efficiency. The BN/TF complies with ROE and ROI.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES: | GO | NO-GO |
|---|-----------|--------------|
| 1. BN/TF leaders gain or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. | | |
| 2. Battle captain of jump element or alternate CP notifies displacing element that he is prepared to assume control of unit operations. | | |
| 3. Battle captain of the displacing element CP notifies the jump element or alternate CP of the anticipated time of transfer. | | |
| 4. Staff sections of the displacing element CP and jump element or alternate CP transfer information and functions of the current operation. | | |
| a. Provide the following information. (displacing element CP staff sections). | | |
| (1) Provide friendly unit status, location, and activity information. | | |
| (2) Provide enemy location and activity information. | | |
| (3) Provide combat service support (CSS) status. | | |
| (4) Provide data distribution configuration scheme. | | |
| (5) Provide plans so jump element or alternate CP can execute branches and sequels. | | |

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:

GO NO-GO

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>b. Verify the following information. (jump element or alternate CP staff sections).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Verify tactical operations center (TOC) server and Battlefield Operating Systems (BOS) databases have been synchronized. (2) Verify both element CPs have the same operational picture and understand the situation and future actions to be executed. (3) Verify communications have been established with higher, subordinate, and adjacent headquarters as required. (4) Verify net control station (NCS) functions for all CP nets have been assumed. <p>5. Battle captain of jump element or alternate CP performs the following tasks:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verifies that all functions have been transferred and jump element or alternate CP is prepared to assume control of the unit. b. Initiates net call (digital and voice) to higher, subordinate, and adjacent units acknowledging assumption of control. <p>NOTE: Under unusual or emergency conditions (jump element movement is not feasible or command and control (C2) is lost), CP mission is transferred to alternate CP IAW TSOP.</p> <p>6. BN/TF CTCP (S1 and S4 section) monitors transfer of C2. Prepares to, on order, assume control of the current operation in accordance with the TSOP when the main CP is unable to C2 the TF.</p> | | |
|---|--|--|

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK:

| ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED | | | | | | | |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS GO | | | | | | | |
| TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO | | | | | | | |

* Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conduct a Raid (07-OPFOR-0013)

CONDITION: The OPFOR is operating independently or as part of a larger force. It is occupying an objective rally point (ORP) with orders to raid enemy elements. The OPFOR has all assigned personnel, equipment, and indirect-fire support available.

STANDARD: The OPFOR executed the raid IAW the OPORD or the commander's guidance. The OPFOR used surprise, firepower, and maneuver to destroy enemy positions, capture prisoners, capture equipment, or free prisoners friendly to the OPFOR. It avoided decisive engagement and withdrew all personnel from the objectives within the specified time. The OPFOR obtained all priority intelligence requirements (PIR).

NOTE: During training exercises, the enemy commander or leader selected the size of the OPFOR element based on threat doctrine.

CHAPTER 6

External Evaluation

- 6-1. **General.** An external evaluation measures the unit's ability to perform its missions. This chapter guides leaders through preparing an external evaluation. Using units may modify it to fit mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time, and civil considerations [METT-TC], or any other considerations the leader decides are appropriate. The leader chooses training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) from Chapter 5 to evaluate the total unit using a realistic OPFOR and MILES. After the evaluation, leaders identify the unit's strengths and weaknesses. These strengths and weaknesses form the basis for future training and resource allocations.
- 6-2. **Prepare the Evaluation.** The evaluating unit commander standardizes evaluation procedures to accurately measure the unit's capabilities.
- a. **Evaluation Instrument.** The example evaluation scenario in Table 6-1 contains the tasks necessary to develop the scenario and execute the evaluation. Selective tailoring is required because it is not possible to evaluate every task. The following procedures are suggested for developing the evaluation.

| EVENT | ACTION | ESTIMATED TIME ALLOCATED | DAY | PROPOSED TIME FRAME | |
|---|---|--------------------------|------|---------------------|------|
| 1 | Conduct preevaluation activities (for example, install, align, and troubleshoot MILES equipment; conduct inspections; draw equipment and ammunition). | Before start time | | | |
| 2 | Conduct advance party activities. | 1 hour | 1 | 0800 | |
| 3 | Move to and occupy assembly area. | 2 hours | | 0900 | |
| 4 | Receive OPORD. | 1/4 hour (15 minutes) | | 1115 | |
| 5 | Plan operations using the TLPs. | 2 hours | | 1130 | |
| 6 | Prepare for operations. | 1/2 hour (30 minutes) | | 1330 | |
| 7 | Conduct a rehearsal. | 2 hours | | 1400 | |
| 8 | Conduct a passage of lines as passing unit. | 3 hours | | 1600 | |
| 9 | Conduct an area or zone reconnaissance. | 6 hours | | 1900 | |
| 10 | Intermediate after-action review (AAR). | 1 hour | | 2 | 0130 |
| 11 | Cross a water obstacle. | 2 hours | | | 0800 |
| 12 | Conduct a link-up. | 2 hours | 1000 | | |
| 13 | Conduct a movement to contact. | 10 hours | 1200 | | |
| 14 | Conduct intermediate AAR. | 1 hour | | 2200 | |
| 15 | Depart field location (administrative move). | | 3 | 0800 | |
| 16 | Conduct final AAR. | 2 hours | | 1300 | |
| Total Time: 34 hours and 45 minutes. | | | | | |
| Do not use these example times for planning. | | | | | |

Table 6-1. Example evaluation scenario.

- (1) **DA Form 7506 (Unit Proficiency/Evaluation Worksheet).** Using Chapter 2, identify the missions for evaluating each echelon or element and record the selected missions on this form.
 - (2) **DA Form 7502 (Task Summary Sheet).** List each mission on this form. Select the tasks for the evaluation of every mission. List the selected tasks on the task summary sheets that are used for recording the results of the evaluation. Compile the selected missions and tasks in the order they logically occur in the detailed scenario. Group the selected missions and tasks in parts for continuous operations, Table 6-1, Example of an Evaluation Scenario. Parts can be interrupted at logical points to assess MILES casualties and conduct an in-process AARs.
- b. **Forecast and Requisition Resources.** Adequate training ammunition, equipment and supplies must be forecasted and requisitioned. Table 6-2 is a consolidated list of support requirements for this evaluation. It is based on experiences with the scenario in Table 6-1. The evaluating headquarters will prepare its own consolidated support requirements.

| CONSOLIDATED SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS | | | |
|---|----------------|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Ammunition | | Quantity | |
| 5.56-mm (Blank) | | 150 Rounds for Each Rifleman | |
| 5.56-mm (Blank) | | 400 M249 Machine Guns | |
| 7.62-mm (Blank) | | 400 M240B Machine Guns | |
| Hand Grenade (Practice) | | 2 for Each Rifleman | |
| Hand Grenade Fuse (Practice) | | 2 for Each Rifleman | |
| Other Items | | Quantity | |
| Batteries--BA 200 (6-volt) | | 36 Each | |
| Batteries--BA 3090 (9-volt) | | 1,020 Each | |
| MILES Equipment | Platoon | Evaluators | Opposing Force |
| M4 MILES Kit | 2 | | 6 |
| M240B MG MILES Adapter | 2 | | 1 |
| M249 Machine Gun | 6 | | 1 |
| 70 Controller Gun | | 4 | 1 |
| Small-arms Alignment Fixture | | 1 | |
| Javelin | 3 | | 1 |
| This is an example only. It does not show all of the equipment--or any of the MILES equipment--required by a unit to conduct an exercise. | | | |

Table 6-2. Example consolidated support requirements.

- c. **Selection and Preparation of the Field Evaluation Site.** Required size, type of terrain, OPFOR and administrative requirements form the basis for site selection. For this evaluation, an area of _____ meters X _____ meters was selected. The OPFOR is positioned according to enemy doctrine. The site must provide space for the administrative area that is required to support the evaluation.
- d. **Indirect-Fire Simulation.** Because it greatly influences the outcome of battles, reaction to indirect fire is an important consideration of the evaluation. Indirect fire simulation requires considerable planning to achieve realism.
 - (1) The fire marker control system outlined in TC 25-6 is a recommended method of simulating indirect fire. Due to the amount of required resources, this method may be difficult to support.
 - (2) The commander may use the evaluation control headquarters method or the simulation without OPFOR method to evaluate the unit's ability to react to indirect fire. If the evaluation control headquarters method is used, the OPFOR will initiate a call for fire to the evaluation control headquarters that will simulate the tactical fire direction center (FDC). The control headquarters would then relay the delivery data to the observers/controllers

who would mark the impact of the round with artillery simulators and assess appropriate casualties. If an OPFOR is not used, the observer/controller may ignite artillery simulators and observe the unit's reactions. FM 7-0 (25-100) and FM 7-1 (25-101) provide assessment and computation tables which may be used to determine casualties. Indirect fire simulation must be realistic and limited to what the unit could reasonably expect under combat conditions.

- 6-3. **Select and Train Observers/Controllers.** Evaluators must be highly qualified to enhance the training experience for the evaluated unit by providing valid, credible observations. The evaluator should be equal or senior in rank to the leader being evaluated. Ideally, the evaluator should have held the position himself, as it lends credibility to his role.
- a. Selected observers/controllers should as a minimum--
 - (1) Know the evaluated organization's mission-essential task list (METL).
 - (2) Have tactical and technical proficiency in the tasks evaluated.
 - (3) Know the evaluation standards.
 - (4) Know and follow the tactical and field tactical standing operating procedures (TSOPs) for the organization being evaluated.
 - (5) Apply relevant information about the evaluated unit such as wartime missions, personnel turbulence, leader fill, and equipment status.
 - (6) Be trained and rehearsed.
 - (7) Know the terrain--reconnoiter when possible.
 - (8) Know the training objective of the opposing force.
 - b. The observer/controller standardizes administration of the evaluation by understanding the following functional areas:
 - (1) **Evaluation Design.** Each part is designed to evaluate specific missions or tasks within the overall scenario. Observer/controller must thoroughly understand the evaluation and correctly implement it.
 - (2) **Multiple-integrated Laser Engagement Simulation.** Each observer/controller, regardless of position, must have full knowledge of the unit's weapons and vehicles and must also thoroughly understand the MILES system being used. The unit commander is responsible for ensuring that all MILES equipment is functional before each part of the scenario.
 - (3) **Evaluation Control System.** This system ensures that the evaluation is administered in a consistent and standardized manner and that correct data is collected for the final evaluation. It includes the following elements:
 - Rules of engagement.
 - Observer/controller duties and responsibilities.
 - Communication systems.
 - Evaluation data-collection plan.
 - c. Recorders should be designated by the evaluation control headquarters to receive "kill" information or results and time data from the observers/controllers.
- 6-4. **Documentation.** Evaluators will use DA Forms 7503 (*Environmental Data Sheet*), 7504 (*Personnel and Equipment Loss Report*), and 7505 (*Unit Data Sheet*) to collect the evaluation information. These reports assist the team in recording the information concerning the unit capability to perform its wartime mission according to the established standards. This information will assist the senior O/C in determining the overall final unit rating. The senior observer/controller has the overall responsibility for preparation of the external evaluation. This evaluation is based on his findings as well as input from subordinate observers/controllers. Subordinate observers/controllers use the task evaluation criteria (T&EO from Chapter 5 and task summary sheets) to determine overall proficiency in their particular areas. The senior observer/controller compiles the external evaluation results as prescribed by the evaluating commander. Deviations from the task standard assessed by the subordinate observers/controllers may be addressed by the senior observer/controller in the comments portion of the unit's proficiency work sheet.
- a. **DA Form 7503 (Environmental Data Sheet).** On this form, record information about the weather and terrain conditions during the evaluation period.

- b. **DA Form 7504 (Personnel and Equipment Loss Report).** On this form, record information about losses during OPFOR engagements.
 - c. **DA Form 7505 (Unit Data Sheet).** On this form, record the status of personnel and equipment.
- 6-5. **Select and Train the Opposing Force.** The selection and training of the OPFOR is crucial to the success of a standardized evaluation. The OPFOR provides one of the control measures that influences the conditions under which the evaluation is administered. The unit should face an opponent that realistically resembles the enemy in strength, weapons, and skill.
- a. **Selection.** Any qualified skill level 1 or 2 Soldier can serve as OPFOR. Ideally, they should be a small cohesive unit under the control of their leader or commander.
 - b. **Training.** The OPFOR must understand the following six major areas:
 - (1) Installation and operation of MILES devices.
 - (2) Rules of Engagement.
 - (3) Enemy small unit tactics.
 - (4) Selected training scenarios.
 - (5) Any available OPFOR weapons or equipment.
 - (6) Safety procedures.
 - c. **Opposing Force Strength.**
 - (1) **Offense.** Using MILES, the unit should outnumber the OPFOR three to one if an attack is to be successful. If the OPFOR is stronger than this ratio, only the most exceptional unit will be successful. They must be armed with weapons capable of defeating any of the unit's assets. As a general rule, the OPFOR should be strong enough to offer the unit a realistic challenge, but one that the unit can defeat when proper tactics are employed.
 - (2) **Defense.** The OPFOR, at a minimum, should have a three-to-one ratio of superiority because anything less will not have sufficient weapons and ammunition to conduct a successful attack. It must be more than merely a series of targets to be destroyed. The OPFOR should be allowed to plan their own attack for each mission and not be forced into a "canned" attack that all units will quickly defeat. Once the OPFOR establishes its plan, it must use the same plan for all other like units for that event in order to maintain the objectivity and standardization of the evaluation.
- 6-6. **Conduct the Evaluation.** Evaluations are divided into three distinct areas. Each area requires a different degree of preparation and coordination.
- a. **Pre-Evaluation.**
 - (1) The senior observer/controller and all other observers/controllers must reconnoiter the evaluation area to know the unit's boundaries, disposition of the OPFOR, and the most likely avenues of approach (AA) throughout the field evaluation site's area of operation (AO).
 - (2) The unit must prepare an OPORD and FRAGO to control the exercise. An order is prepared for each mission in the evaluation scenario.
 - (3) Unit preparatory activities include installation and troubleshooting of MILES equipment, loading vehicles, conducting inspections, and performing other logistics and administrative actions as required.
 - (4) The OPFOR is placed in position and briefed while the unit is conducting its preparatory activities.
 - (5) In this evaluation scenario, the unit is issued a movement order to move to an assembly area. When the assembly area has been occupied, the OPORD is issued. The observers/controllers should make an equipment-functions check after the unit occupies the assembly area and after the unit leaders have issued their instructions.
 - b. **Evaluation.**
 - (1) The evaluation team controls the evaluation in two ways. First, it uses measures established in both the movement order and in paragraphs 3 and 5 in the OPORD or FRAGO. Second, the team controls the evaluation through the team commander (simulated by the senior observer/controller for this evaluation) on the team net. The team does not control in the traditional sense; instead, it accompanies the unit as observers. Only the senior observer/controller has direct verbal contact with the unit commander. All

other observers/controllers do not speak to, aid, advise, point out positions, or in any way influence the unit's performance except for a possible or actual safety issue or emergency. Observers/controllers are neutral throughout the evaluation.

- (2) Once the senior observer/controller issues the OPORD and movement order, the unit commander executes the events and actions prescribed in the first part of the evaluation scenario within the estimated time. From this point on, all successive parts begin with a FRAGO.
 - (3) The senior observer/controller terminates a part when the unit has completed all the events and actions in a particular area or has suffered so many casualties or so much damage that the part cannot be completed. The observer/controller must record the reasons for the termination in the margin of the task summary sheet and report his action to the evaluation control headquarters. In the sample evaluation scenario, "conducting sustainment operations" follow the completion of each event or action. During this period, the senior observer/controller will direct the unit to remain in position while "replacements" (personnel and equipment designated as killed or destroyed), are sent forward to reconstitute the unit. At this time, observer/controller must perform the following actions:
 - (a) Inspect all MILES equipment, record "kill" codes, and reset equipment. Replace any damaged or inoperative MILES equipment.
 - (b) Resolve all casualty data to determine the time, place, number, and cause of casualties. Report this information to the recorder in the evaluation control headquarters.
 - (c) Debrief the unit to resolve questions. Afterwards, the senior observer/controller directs the unit to continue its mission after it receives a FRAGO or OPORD for the next part.
 - (4) The following guidelines should be followed by the observers/controllers.
 - (a) Report major "kills" such as vehicles or groups.
 - (b) Report major weapons fired. Together with reporting major kills, this is the best method for determining direct fire effectiveness. Both significant firings and hits are reported to the evaluation control headquarters.
 - (c) Enforce ROE.
 - (d) Spot and record any action that might have an effect on later performance or mission outcome.
 - (e) Record travel routes and the unit's location.
 - (f) Inform OPFOR controllers of the unit's location, direction, and intent. This is necessary to enable OPFOR action to be controlled in accordance with the desired sequence of events.
 - (g) Enforce safety.
 - (h) Terminate mission at the appropriate time.
- c. **Post-Evaluation.** After the evaluation is terminated, the unit moves to an assembly area and performs the following actions:
- (1) The unit observer/controller debriefs subordinate observers/controllers and compiles all data (evaluator packets) for the evaluation.
 - (2) The unit observer/controller must complete the task summary sheets.
 - (3) The unit observer/controller must turn in all completed observer/controller packets (with the observer/controller scoring system) to control headquarters for recording and analysis.
 - (4) The unit observer/controller must conduct an AAR of the unit's performance.
 - (5) Each element observer/controller should conduct an AAR of his element's performance.

6-7. **Conduct the After-Action Review.** At the completion of each evaluation part, the AAR leader provides feedback to the unit in order to increase and reinforce learning.

- a. **Feedback.** Because all members of the unit participate in an AAR, each member becomes a source of feedback. This provides a richer "data base" for key points. The AAR leader will draw information from each member. This information becomes an important part of the discussion and is the basis for discussing alternate courses of action.
- b. **Prepare the After-Action Review.** The AAR preparation involves five steps:
 - (1) **Review Training Orders and Objectives.** Training objectives are the focus of the discussion of the exercise results. The FRAGOs and OPORDs included in the exercise

design implement these objectives. The observer/controller should be familiar with the objectives, FRAGOs and OPORDs so that he can note orders given by leaders of the evaluated unit and its subordinate elements that either implement these objectives or deviate from them.

- (2) **Observe the Exercise.** This is an active process. The emphasis is on noting those actions that make the difference between the unit's success or failure. The observer/controller does not need to remain close to the unit leader; more can be seen from high ground near the lead element's location or along the unit's route of march. Because unit orders identify important activities and checkpoints, the observer/controller must be present when the commander issues the order. The observer/controller should position himself where he can best observe anticipated critical events. Examples of critical events may include:
 - Conducting a road march.
 - Crossing a radiologically contaminated area.
 - Performing unit supply operations.
 - Responding to an NBC attack.
 - (3) **Select the Site and Assemble the Participants.** After the exercise, select a site for the AAR. If possible, hold the AAR where the majority of action occurred, where most of the critical events took place (normally where the OPFOR was positioned), or where the terrain can be observed. (The OPFOR or unit objective is normally suitable for assembling the players and conducting the AAR.)
 - (4) **Debrief Observers/Controllers.** While the units are moving to the selected site, observers/controllers should be debriefed. The senior observer/controller must understand completely what happened in the exercise. The fourth step in AAR preparation is to get a detailed chronological description of the exercise events.
 - (5) **Review the Events.** After the senior observer/controller understands what happened during the exercise, he ranks events based on their relevance to the training objectives and exercise outcome. Then, he reviews those events. He selects as many events as can be covered in detail during the time allowed for the AAR, and then he places them in chronological order.
- c. **Conduct the After-Action Review.** Conducting an AAR has five steps:
- (1) **Organize the Participants.** When the observer/controller and AAR leader assembles the participants, he groups them according to their organization in the exercise. Each subordinate element's observer/controller is located with the element for which he is responsible.
 - (2) **State the Training Objectives.** The AAR leader makes a brief statement of the training objectives for the exercise. These are described as specifically as possible. He states any additional teaching points that he intends to cover during the AAR. These should be limited to three or four key points in order to keep the AAR focused and prevent it from becoming excessively long.
 - (3) **Lead the Discussion.** The AAR leader guides the discussion of the events in their order of occurrence. Diagrams help players visualize the exercise development. The AAR leader starts by sketching the main terrain features and as the AAR proceeds, he directs the participants to draw routes of advance, objectives, and locations of engagements. Each event is discussed in detail to make teaching points about the unit's performance during the event. In an effective AAR, the AAR leader should--
 - Avoid critiquing or lecturing.
 - Ask leading questions to guide the discussion.
 - Suggest players describe what occurred in their own terms.
 - Suggest players discuss what happened and how, and how to improve.
- d. **Focus the Discussion.** Focus the discussion to ensure that important tactical lessons are made explicit.
- (1) **Steps.** To make this happen, do the following:
 - (a) Relate events to subsequent results.
 - (b) Avoid detailed examination of events not directly related to major training objectives.

- (c) Encourage the participants to use diagrams to illustrate teaching points and to show routes, phase lines, and objectives.
- (d) Prohibit players from offering self-serving excuses for inappropriate tactical actions.
- (2) **Sequence of Events.** Review the sequence of the events associated with the hazards of the risk assessment made prior to the exercise.
 - (a) Were effective controls put in place to avoid accidents?
 - (b) Was training realism reduced through artificial control measures?
 - (c) Were all participants aware of hazards down to the lowest level?
 - (d) Did any hazard present itself that was not identified, and what was done to overcome it?
 - (e) Discuss each incident of fratricide or near fratricide and how it can be avoided in the future.
- (3) **Summarize Key Points.** The AAR leader briefly summarizes teaching points in terms of training objectives covered in the AAR. After the summary, he can have a private conversation with the unit commander regarding his strengths and weaknesses, and what he can do to improve his performance and that of his unit. A good AAR leader:
 - (a) Maintains order and discipline.
 - (b) Reviews the training objectives.
 - (c) Addresses important events as they occurred and how the unit could have done them better. During the discussion, the leader avoids a detailed examination of events not directly related to the training objective.
 - (d) Traces the chain of events so all participants understand the results of mistakes. One mistake is often the partial cause of another.
 - (e) Clearly relates tactical events to teaching points.
 - (f) Involves participants in the discussion.
 - (g) Clearly and concisely gives summary and new training objectives.
 - (h) Reinforces points by using sketches, diagrams, or terrain models in the AAR.
- e. **Reference Materials.** The reference materials (FMs and training circulars [TCs]) for conducting an AAR should be reviewed.

Glossary

Section I Acronyms & Abbreviations

| | |
|---------------|---|
| A2C2 | Army Airspace Command and Control |
| AA | assembly area |
| AAR | after-action review |
| AATF | air assault task force |
| ABCS | Army Battle Command System |
| ABF | attack by fire (position) |
| ACUS | Army Common User System |
| AD | air defense |
| ADA | air defense artillery |
| ADO | Air Defense Officer |
| ADW | air defense warning |
| AFATDS | Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System |
| AI | area of interest |
| ALO | air liaison officer |
| AM | amplitude modulation |
| AMC | air mission commander |
| AO | area of operation |
| AOR | area of responsibility |
| AR | Army Reserve |
| ARTEP | Army Training and Evaluation Program |
| ASAS | All-Source Analysis System |
| ASP | ammunition supply point |
| ATGM | antitank guided missile |
| AUEL | automated unit equipment list |
| avn | (graphics only) aviation |

| | |
|--------------|---|
| BDA | battle damage assessment |
| bde | (graphics only) brigade |
| BF | battle fatigue |
| BFM | battlefield forecast model |
| BFV | Bradley fighting vehicle |
| BHL | battle handover line |
| bn | (graphics only) battalion |
| BOS | battlefield operating systems |
| BP | battle position |
| BUA | built-up area |
| C2 | command and control |
| C4ISR | command, control, communications, computers, intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance |
| CA | civil affairs |
| CADST | civil affairs direct-support team |
| CAS | close air support |
| CATS | combined arms training strategy |
| CCI | controlled cryptographic item |
| CCIR | commander's critical information requirements |
| CCM | cross-country mobility |
| CCP | casualty collection point |
| CDE | chemical detection equipment |
| CFX | command field exercise |
| CFZ | critical friendly zones |
| CHEMO | chemical officer |
| CHS | combat health support |
| CMO | civil-military operation |
| COA | course of action |

| | |
|----------------|---------------------------------------|
| COLT | combat observation lasing team |
| COMSEC | communications security |
| CONPLAN | contingency plan |
| COP | common operational picture |
| CP | command post |
| CPR | cardiopulmonary resuscitation |
| crypto | (graphics only) cryptographic |
| CS | combat support |
| CSC | combat stress control |
| CSM | Command Sergeant Major |
| CSR | controlled supply rate |
| CSS | combat service support |
| CSSCS | Combat Service Support Control System |
| CTCP | combat trains command post |
| CTP | common tactical picture |
| DA | Department of the Army |
| DC | direct current |
| decon | (graphics only) decontaminate |
| DLIC | detachment left in contact |
| DoD | Department of Defense |
| DP | decision point |
| DS | direct support |
| DST | decision-support template |
| DTSS | Digital Topographic Support System |
| EA | engagement area |
| EBA | engineer battlefield assessment |
| EBC | embedded battle command |
| ECCM | electronic counter-countermeasures |

| | |
|--------------|---|
| ECM | electronic countermeasures |
| EOCA | enemy course of action |
| ECTL | essential collective task list |
| EEFI | essential elements of friendly information |
| EFST | essential fire-support tasks |
| ELINT | electronic intelligence |
| EMT | emergency medical treatment |
| EPB | electronic preparation of the battlefield |
| EPLRS | enhanced position-location reporting system |
| EPW | enemy prisoner of war |
| EW | electronic warfare |
| FA | field artillery |
| FAC | forward area controller |
| FARP | forward area rearm/refuel point |
| fax | (graphics only) facsimile |
| FBCB2 | Force XXI battle command, brigade and below |
| FFIR | friendly force information requirements |
| FIST | fire-support team |
| FLOT | forward line of own troops |
| FM | frequency modulated |
| FO | forward observer |
| FPF | final protection fires |
| FRAGO | fragmentary order |
| FS | fire support |
| FSB | forward support battalion |
| FSCM | fire-support coordination measure |
| FSE | fire-support element |
| FSO | fire-support officer |

| | |
|-----------------|---|
| FTX | field training exercise |
| G1 | Assistant Chief of Staff, Personnel |
| G2 | Assistant Chief of Staff, Intelligence |
| G4 | Assistant Chief of Staff, Logistics |
| G6 | division or corps, signal officer or staff section |
| GSR | ground surveillance radar |
| HAZMAT | hazardous material |
| HHC | headquarters and headquarters company |
| HIMAD | high-to-medium-altitude air defense |
| HN | host nation |
| HPT | high-payoff target |
| HPTL | high-payoff target list |
| HUMINT | human intelligence |
| HVT | high-value target |
| IA | information assurance |
| IAW | in accordance with |
| ICV | infantry combat vehicle |
| IEW | intelligence and electronic warfare |
| IFF | identification friend or foe |
| IM | information management |
| INFOSYS | information systems |
| IP | initial point |
| IPB | intelligence preparation of the battlefield |
| ir | (graphics only) infrared |
| IR | intelligence requirements |
| IREMBASS | improved, remotely monitored, battlefield-sensor system |
| ISM | intelligence-synchronization matrix |
| ISR | intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance |

| | |
|---------------|---|
| iv | (graphics only) intervisibility |
| IW | information warfare |
| JAAT | joint air-attack team |
| JCDB | joint common database |
| J-SEAD | joint suppression of enemy air defenses |
| JSTARS | Joint Surveillance, Target-Acquisition Radar System |
| JTF | joint task force |
| LAN | local area network |
| LBE | load-bearing equipment |
| LC | line of contact |
| LD | line of departure |
| LNO | liaison officer |
| LOA | limit of advance |
| LOD | line of duty |
| LOS | line of sight |
| LRP | logistics release point |
| LW | land warrior |
| LZ | landing zone |
| MBA | main battle area |
| MC4 | medical communications for combat casualty care |
| MCOO | modified combined obstacle overlay |
| MCP | maintenance collection point |
| MCS | Maneuver Control System |
| MDA | medical digital assistant |
| MDMP | military decision-making process |
| MDP | management decision package; meteorological datum plane |
| MEDCAP | medical civil action program |

| | |
|----------------|---|
| MEDEVAC | medical evacuation |
| METL | mission-essential task list |
| METT-TC | mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations |
| MI | military intelligence |
| MICLIC | mine-clearing line charge |
| MIJI | meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference |
| MMC | materiel management center |
| MOI | memorandum of instruction |
| MOPP | mission-oriented protective posture |
| MP | military police |
| MRB | motorized rifle battalion |
| MRC | motorized rifle company |
| MRD | motorized rifle division |
| MRR | motorized rifle regiment |
| MSR | main supply route |
| MTF | medical treatment facilities |
| MTOE | modified table of organization and equipment |
| MTP | mission training plan |
| MWR | morale, welfare, and recreation |
| NAI | named area of interest |
| NBC | nuclear, biological, and chemical |
| NCO | noncommissioned officer |
| NCOIC | noncommissioned officer in charge |
| NCS | net-control station |
| NGO | nongovernmental organization |
| NLT | not later than |
| NMC | nonmission capable |

| | |
|------------------|--|
| NSO | Network Security Officer |
| O/O | on order |
| OB | order of battle |
| OBSTINTEL | obstacle intelligence |
| OCOKA | observation and fire, concealment and cover, obstacles, key terrain, and avenues of approach |
| OEG | operational exposure guidance |
| OIC | officer in charge |
| OP | observation post |
| OPCON | operational control |
| OPFOR | opposing force |
| OPLAN | operation plan |
| OPORD | operation order |
| OPSEC | operations security |
| OPTEMPO | operating tempo |
| ORP | objective rally point |
| PA | physician's assistant |
| PAO | Public Affairs Officer |
| PDDE | power-driven decontamination equipment |
| PERSCOM | Personnel Command |
| PIR | priority intelligence requirements |
| PL | phase line |
| PLGR | precision, lightweight, global-positioning system receiver |
| PLL | prescribed load list |
| PMCS | preventive maintenance checks and services |
| POD | port of debarkation |
| POE | port of embarkation |

| | |
|----------------|--|
| POSNAV | position navigation |
| POV | privately owned vehicle |
| PP | passage point |
| PSYOP | psychological operations |
| PVO | private voluntary organization |
| PZ | pickup zone |
| QRF | quick reaction force |
| R&S | reconnaissance and surveillance |
| RAA | redeployment assembly area |
| RCRA | Resource Conservation and Recovery Act |
| RFI | request for information; Reserve Forces Intelligence |
| RFL | restrictive fire line |
| RISTA | reconnaissance, intelligence, surveillance, and target acquisition |
| ROE | rules of engagement |
| ROI | rules of interaction |
| RP | release point |
| RSR | required supply rate |
| RSTA | reconnaissance, surveillance, and target acquisition |
| RTD | return to duty |
| S1 | Personnel Officer (below division level) |
| S2 | Intelligence Officer (below division level) |
| S3 air | Assistant S3 |
| S3 | Operations Officer (below division level) |
| S4 | Logistics Officer (below division level) |
| S5 | Civil Affairs Officer (below division level) |
| S6 | Signal Officer (below division level) |
| SA | situational awareness |
| SATS | Standard Army Training System |

| | |
|------------------|--|
| SBF | support by fire |
| SCATMINE | scatterable mine |
| SEAD | suppression of enemy air defenses |
| SIF | selective identification feature |
| SIGINT | signal intelligence |
| SIGSEC | signal security |
| SINGARS | single-channel, ground-air radio system |
| SIR | specific information requirements; serious incident report |
| SITEMP | situation template |
| SITMAP | situation map |
| SITREP | situation report |
| SJA | Staff Judge Advocate |
| SNMP | simple network management protocol |
| SOEO | scheme of engineer operations |
| SOF | Special Operation Forces |
| SOI | signal operating instructions |
| SOP | standing operating procedures |
| SOR | specified orders and requests |
| SOSRA | suppress, obscure, secure, reduce, and assault |
| SP | start point |
| SPOTREP | spot report |
| SRP | school requirements package; Soldier readiness processing |
| STATREP | status report |
| STP | Soldier training plan |
| STRIKWARN | strike warning |
| STX | situational training exercise |
| SU | situational understanding |

| | |
|-----------------|---|
| SYSCON | system control |
| T&EO | training and evaluation outline |
| TAA | tactical assembly area |
| TAACOM | theater army area command |
| TAC CP | tactical command post |
| TACSAT | tactical satellite |
| TAI | targeted area of interest |
| TAMCA | theater army movement control agency |
| TAMMC | theater army material management center |
| TCS | temporary change of station |
| TDY | temporary duty |
| TEWT | tactical exercise without troops |
| TF | task force |
| TI | tactical internet |
| TIRS | terrain index-reference system |
| TLP | troop-leading procedures |
| TOC | tactical operations center |
| TOE | table of organization and equipment |
| TPFDD | time-phased force and deployment data |
| TRP | target reference point |
| TSOP | tactical standing operating procedures |
| TTP | tactics, techniques, and procedures |
| UAV | unmanned aerial vehicle |
| ULN | unit line number |
| UMCP | unit maintenance collection point |
| UMD | unit movement data |
| USDA | United States Department of Agriculture |
| UTO | unit task organization |

| | |
|---------------|---|
| WAN | wide area network |
| WARNO | warning order |
| WCS | weapons-control status |
| WIN | Warfighter Information Network |
| WIN-MS | Warrior Information Network - Management System |
| WMD | weapons of mass destruction |
| WSRO | weapon system replacement operations |
| XO | executive officer |

Section II Terms

| | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| combat service support | The essential capabilities, functions, activities, and tasks necessary to sustain all elements of operating forces in theater at all levels of war. Within the national and theater logistic systems, it includes but is not limited to that support rendered by service forces in ensuring the aspects of supply, maintenance, transportation, health services, and other services required by aviation and ground combat troops to permit those units to accomplish their missions in combat. Combat service support encompasses those activities at all levels of war that produce sustainment to all operating forces on the battlefield. Also called CSS. See also combat support. (JP 4-0) |
| combat support | Fire support and operational assistance provided to combat elements. Also called CS. See also combat service support. (JP 4-0) |
| command post | (*) A unit's or subunit's headquarters where the commander and the staff perform their activities. In combat, a unit's or subunit's headquarters is often divided into echelons; the echelon in which the unit or subunit commander is located or from which such commander operates is called a command post. Also called CP. |
| command post exercise | An exercise in which the forces are simulated; may be conducted from garrison locations or between participating headquarters in the unit |
| high-payoff target | A target whose loss to the enemy will significantly contribute to the success of the friendly course of action. High-payoff targets are those high-value targets that must be acquired and successfully attacked for the success of the friendly commander's mission. Also called HPT. See also high-value target; target. (JP 3-60) |
| high-value target | A target the enemy commander requires for the successful completion of the mission. The loss of high-value targets would be expected to seriously degrade important enemy functions throughout the friendly commander's area of interest. Also called HVT. See also high-payoff target; target. (JP 3-09) |

| | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| map exercise | An exercise in which a series of military situations is stated and solved on a map. |
| mission-essential task list | A compilation of collective mission essential tasks which must be successfully performed if an organization is to accomplish its wartime mission(s). |
| situational training exercise | A short scenario driven mission-oriented tactical exercise that provides a vehicle to train a group of closely related collective tasks and drills together. Situational training exercises provide preconstructed, bite-sized, short-term exercises that are central to sustainment training for tactical mission proficiency. |

References

REQUIRED PUBLICATIONS

Required publications are sources that users must read in order to understand to comply with this publication.

Army Regulations

AR 25-2 (AR 380-19) Information Assurance 14 November 2003
 AR 380-5 Department of the Army Information Security Program 29 September 2000

Department of the Army Forms

DA Form 1155 Witness Statement on Individual
 DA Form 1156 Casualty Feeder Report
 DA Form 1355-1-R Hasty Protective Row Minefield Record
 DA Form 5032-R Field Artillery Delivered Minefield Planning Sheet
 DA Form 7502 Task Summary Sheet
 DA Form 7503 Environmental Data Sheet
 DA Form 7504 Personnel and Equipment Loss Report
 DA Form 7505 Unit Data Sheet
 DA Form 7506 Unit Proficiency/Evaluation Worksheet
 DA Form 7507 ARTEP Mission Training Plan User Feedback

Department of Defense Forms and Publication

DD Form 1380 U.S. Field Medical Card
 DD Form 2745 Enemy Prisoner of War (EPW) Capture Tag
 DoD 4500.9-R, Part III (FM 55-12) Transportation Regulation, April 1997

Field Manuals

FM 1-100 Army Aviation Operations 21 February 1997
 FM 2-0 (34-1) Intelligence 17 May 2004
 FM 3-0 (100-5) Operations 14 June 2001
 FM 3-04.111 (1-111) Aviation Brigades 21 August 2003
 FM 3-05.30 (33-1) Psychological Operations 19 Jun 2000
 FM 3-06 Urban Operations 1 June 2003
 FM 3-06.11 Combined Arms Operations in Urban Terrain 28 February 2002

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| FM 3-3 | Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance 16 November 1992 |
| FM 3-3-1 | Nuclear Contamination Avoidance 9 September 1994 |
| FM 3-11 (3-100) | Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations 10 March 2003 |
| FM 3-11.4 (3-4) | Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Protection 11 March 2004 |
| FM 3-13 (100-6) | Information Operations: Doctrine, Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures 28 November 2003 |
| FM 3-19 | NBC Reconnaissance 19 November 1993 |
| FM 3-19.30 (19-30) | Physical Security 8 January 2001 |
| FM 3-19.40 (19-40) | Military Policy Internment/Resettlement Operations 1 August 2001 |
| FM 3-21.21 (7-22) | The Stryker Brigade Combat Team Infantry Battalion 8 April 2003 with Change 1, 31 July 2003 |
| FM 3-21.91 (7-91) | Tactical Employment of Antaarmor Platoons and Companies 26 November 2002 |
| FM 3-34 (5-100) | Engineer Operations 2 January 2004 |
| FM 3-34.2 | Combined-Arms Breaching Operations 31 August 2000 |
| FM 4-0 (100-10) | Combat Service Support 29 August 2003 |
| FM 4-01.011 (55-65) | Unit Movement Operations 31 October 2002 |
| FM 4-02 (8-10) | Force Health Protection in a Global Environment 13 February 2003 |
| FM 4-02.25 (8-10-25) | Employment of Forward Surgical Teams Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures 28 March 2003 |
| FM 4-02.6 (8-10-1) | The Medical Company, Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures 01 August 2002 |
| FM 4-02.7 (8-10-7) | Health Service Support in a Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Environment Tactics, Techniques and Procedures 1 October 2002 |
| FM 4-20.102 (10-500-2) | Airdrop of Supplies and Equipment: Rigging Airdrop Platforms 27 August 2001 |
| FM 4-30.3 (9-43-1) | Maintenance Operations and Procedures 1 September 2000 |
| FM 5-33 | Terrain Analysis 11 July 1990 with Change 1, 8 September 1992 |
| FM 5-34 | Engineer Field Data 30 August 1999 with Changes 1 thru 4, 1 March 2001 thru 16 January 2004 |
| FM 5-71-2 | Armored Task-Force Engineer Combat Operations 28 June 1996 with Change 1, 13 November 1997 |
| FM 5-71-3 | Brigade Engineer Combat Operations (Armored) 3 October 1995 with Change 1, 13 November 1997 |
| FM 5-102 | Countermobility 14 March 1985 |
| FM 5-103 | Survivability 10 June 1985 |
| FM 5-170 | Engineer Reconnaissance 5 May 1998 with Change 1, 13 July 1998 |

| | |
|-----------------|---|
| FM 6-0 (100-34) | Mission Command: Command and Control of Army Forces 11 August 2003 |
| FM 6-20-10 | Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for the Targeting Process 8 May 1996 |
| FM 6-20-20 | Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Fire Support at Battalion Task Force and Below 27 December 1991 |
| FM 6-20-40 | Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Fire Support for Brigade Operations (Heavy) 5 January 1990 |
| FM 6-30 | Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Observed Fire 16 July 1991 |
| FM 7-20 | The Infantry battalion 6 April 1992 with Change 1, 29 December 2000 |
| FM 7-85 | Ranger Unit Operations 9 June 1987 |
| FM 7-90 | Tactical Employment of Mortars 9 October 1992 |
| FM 7-98 | Operations in a Low-Intensity Conflict 19 October 1992 |
| FM 8-9 | NATO Handbook on the Medical Aspects of NBC Defensive Operations 1 February 1996 |
| FM 8-10-6 | Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures 14 April 2000 |
| FM 8-10-9 | Combat Health Logistics in a Theater of Operations Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures 3 October 1995 |
| FM 8-51 | Combat Stress Control in a Theater of Operations Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures 29 September 1994 |
| FM 8-55 | Planning for Health Service Support 9 September 1994 |
| FM 9-43-2 | Recovery and Battlefield Damage Assessment and Repair 3 October 1995 |
| FM 10-27-4 | Organizational Supply and Services for Unit Leaders 14 April 2000 |
| FM 11-41 | Signal Support: Echelons Corps and Below (ECB) 18 December 1991 |
| FM 11-43 | The Signal Leader's Guide 12 June 1995 |
| FM 11-50 | Combat Communications Within the Division (Heavy and Light) 4 April 1991 |
| FM 12-6 | Personnel Doctrine 9 September 1994 |
| FM 19-15 | Civil Disturbances 25 November 1985 |
| FM 20-3 (5-20) | Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys 30 August 1999 |
| FM 20-32 | Mine/Countermine Operations 29 May 1998 with Changes 1 thru 4, 30 June 1999 thru 2 February 2004 |
| FM 21-60 | Visual Signals 30 September 1987 |
| FM 24-33 | Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures 17 July 1990 |
| FM 24-35 | Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI" 26 October 1990 |
| FM 34-2 | Collection Management and Synchronization Planning 8 March 1994 |

FM 34-2-1 Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Reconnaissance and Surveillance and Intelligence Support to Counterreconnaissance 19 June 1991

FM 34-3 Intelligence Analysis 15 March 1990

FM 34-5 Human Intelligence and Related Counterintelligence Operations 29 July 1994

FM 34-8-2 Intelligence Officer's Handbook 1 May 1998

FM 34-45 (34-40-7) Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Electronic Attack 9 June 2000

FM 34-52 Intelligence Interrogation 28 September 1992

FM 34-54 Technical Intelligence 30 January 1998

FM 34-60 Counterintelligence 30 October 1995

FM 34-130 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield 8 July 1994

FM 44-8 Combined Arms for the Air Defense 1 June 1999

FM 41-10 Civil Affairs Operations 14 February 2000

FM 44-80 Visual Aircraft Recognition 30 September 1996

FM 44-100 (44-1) US Army Air and Missile Defense Operations 15 June 1995

FM 55-1 Transportation Operations 3 October 1995

FM 55-10 Movement Control 9 February 1999

FM 55-15 Transportation Reference Data 27 October 1997

FM 71-123 Tactics and Techniques for Combined Arms Heavy Forces: Armored Brigade, Battalion/Task Force, and Company/Team 30 September 1992

FM 90-4 Air Assault Operations 16 March 1987

FM 90-7 Combined Arms Obstacle Integration 29 September 1994 with Change 1, 10 April 2003

FM 90-13 River Crossing Operations 26 January 1998

FM 100-14 Risk Management 23 April 1998

FM 100-17 Mobilization, Deployment, Redeployment, Demobilization 28 October 1992

FM 101-5 Staff Organization and Operations 31 May 1997

FM 101-5-1 Operational Terms and Graphics 30 September 1997

FM 101-5-2 US Army Report and Message Formats 29 June 1999

Technical Bulletin

TB 55-46-1 Standard Characteristics (Dimensions, Weight, and Cube) for Transportability of Military Vehicles and Other Outsize/Overweight Equipment (in TOE Line Item Number Sequence) 1 January 1998

Training Circular

TC 7-98-1 Stability and Support Operations Training Support Package 5 June 1997

RELATED PUBLICATIONS

Related publications are sources of additional information. They are not required in order to understand this publication.

Field Manuals

| | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| FM 1-05 (16-1) | Religious Support 18 April 2003 |
| FM 3-05.301 (33-1-1, 33-1, and 33-5) | Psychological Operations Techniques and Procedures 31 December 2003 |
| FM 3-07 (100-19, -20) | Stability Operations and Support Operations 20 February 2003 with Change 1, 30 April 2003 |
| FM 3-5 | NBC Decontamination 28 July 2000 |
| FM 3-7 | NBC Field Handbook 29 September 1994 |
| FM 3-20.12 (17-12-1-1, -2) | Tank Gunnery 1 October 2001 |
| FM 3-22.1 (23-1) | Bradley Gunnery 28 November 2003 |
| FM 3-22.31 | 40-mm Grenade Launcher, M203 13 February 2003 |
| FM 3-22.27 (23-27) | MK 19, 40-mm Grenade Machine Gun, MOD 3 28 November 2003 |
| FM 3-22.34 (23-34) | TOW Weapon System 28 November 2003 |
| FM 3-22.37 | Javelin Medium Antitank Weapon System 23 January 2003 |
| FM 3-22.68 (23-14) | Crew-Served Machine Guns, 5.56-mm and 7.62-mm 31 January 2003 |
| FM 3-23.24 (23-24) | M47 Dragon Medium Antitank Weapon System 30 August 2001 |
| FM 3-23.25 | Light Antiarmor Weapons 30 August 2001 |
| FM 3-23.30 (23-30) | Grenades and Pyrotechnic Signals 1 September 2000 |
| FM 3-25.26 (21-26) | Map Reading and Land Navigation 20 July 2001 |
| FM 3-50 | Smoke Operations 4 December 1990 |
| FM 3-52 (100-103) | Army Airspace Command and Control in a Combat Zone 1 August 2002 |
| FM 3-90.1 | Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team 9 December 2002 |
| FM 3-90.2 (71-2) | The Tank and Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force 11 June 2003 |
| FM 3-90.3 (71-3) | The Mounted Brigade Combat Team 1 November 2001 |
| FM 3-97.6 (90-6) | Mountain Operations 28 November 2000 |
| FM 3-100.2 (100-103-1) | ICAC2 Multiservice Procedures For Integrated Combat Airspace Command and Control 30 June 2000 |
| FM 4-25.11 | First Aid 23 December 2002 |
| FM 4-30.1 (9-6) | Munitions Distribution in the Theater of Operations 16 December 2003 |
| FM 4-30.13 (9-13) | Ammunition Handbook: Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures For Munitions Handlers 1 March 2001 |

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| FM 5-10 | Combat Engineer Platoon 3 October 1995 |
| FM 5-250 | Explosives and Demolitions 30 July 1998 |
| FM 7-0 (25-100) | Training the Force 22 October 2002 |
| FM 7-1 (25-101) | Battle Focused Training 15 September 2003 |
| FM 10-23 | Basic Doctrine for Army Field Feeding and Class I Operations Management 18 April 1996 |
| FM 10-23-1 | Commander's Guide to Food Service Operations 17 March 1992 |
| FM 10-27 | General Supply in Theaters of Operations 20 April 1993 |
| FM 19-10 | Military Police Law and Order Operations 30 September 1987 |
| FM 21-10 | Field Hygiene and Sanitation 21 June 2000 |
| FM 21-18 | Foot Marches 1 June 1990 |
| FM 21-31 | Topographic Symbols 17 June 1961 |
| FM 23-23 | Antipersonnel Mine M18A1 and M18 (Claymore) 6 January 1966 |
| FM 23-90 | Mortars 1 March 2000 with Change 1, 9 December 2002 |
| FM 23-91 | Mortar Gunnery 1 March 2000 |
| FM 24-1 | Signal Support in the Airland Battle 15 October 1990 |
| FM 24-18 | Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques 30 September 1987 |
| FM 34-80 | Brigade and Battalion Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations 15 April 1986 |
| FM 46-1 | Public Affairs Operations 30 May 1997 |
| FM 55-15 | Transportation Reference Data 27 October 1997 |
| FM 63-20 | Forward Support Battalion 26 February 1990 |
| FM 71-100 | Division Operations 28 August 1996 |
| FM 90-3 | Desert Operations 24 August 1993 |
| FM 90-5 | Jungle Operations 16 August 1982 |
| FM 100-60 | Armor- and Mechanized-Based Opposing Force: Organization Guide 16 July 1997 |
| FM 100-61 | Armor and Mechanized-Based Opposing Force: Operational Art 26 January 1998 |
| FM 100-63 | Infantry-Based Opposing Force, Organization Guide 18 April 1996 |
| Training Circular | |
| TC 21-306 (FM 21-306) | Tracked Combat Vehicle Driver Training 10 February 2000 |

ARTEP MISSION TRAINING PLAN USER FEEDBACK

For use of this form, see the applicable ARTEP MTP; the proponent agency is TRADOC.

An important aspect of the MTP is user feedback. To produce the best possible product that meets the needs of the leader and trainer, your opinion of this product is solicited and will be helpful in the development of future products and revisions to this product. Please answer all questions frankly by checking your response or by providing specific comments.

1. MTP NUMBER

2. DATE (YYYYMMDD)

3. MTP TITLE

4. NAME

5. DUTY POSITION

6. ADDRESS

7. PHONE NUMBER

8. FAX PHONE NUMBER

9. E-MAIL ADDRESS

YES NO

10. Do Chapters 1 through 6 and the appendixes aid in the understanding and use of this MTP?

YES NO

11. Are training objectives complete, correct, and clear?

YES NO

12. Is the MTP written so that it is usable by the first-line supervisor?

YES NO

13. Are the conditions and standards realistic?

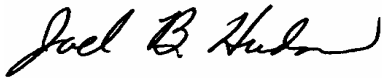
14. COMMENTS

**ARTEP 71-2-MTP
31 AUGUST 2004**

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

PETER J. SCHOOMAKER
General, United States Army
Chief of Staff

Official:



JOEL B. HUDSON
Administrative Assistant to the
Secretary of the Army
0424003

DISTRIBUTION:

Active Army, Army National Guard, and U.S. Army Reserve: Not to be distributed.
Electronic means only.

PIN: 079902-000